

**E V E R Y M A N  
H I S O W N  
G A R D E N E R.**

Being a New, and much more Complete

**GARDENER'S KALENDAR**

Than any one hitherto published.

**C O N T A I N I N G,**

Not only an Account of what Work is necessary to be done in the **HOT-HOUSE, GREEN-HOUSE, SHRUBBERY, KITCHEN, FLOWER, and FRUIT-GARDENS;** for every Month in the Year, but also ample Directions for performing the said Work, according to the newest and most approved Methods now in Practice among the best Gardeners.

In this Edition particular Directions are given with respect to **SOIL and SITUATION;** and to the Whole is added, complete and useful Lists of

**FOREST TREES,  
FLOWERING  
SHRUBS,  
FRUIT TREES,  
EVERGREENS.**

**ANNUAL,  
BIENNIAL,  
and  
PERENNIAL,  
FLOWERS.**

**HOT-HOUSE,  
GREEN-HOUSE,  
and  
KITCHEN GARDEN,  
PLANTS.**

With the Varieties of each Sort, cultivated in the **ENGLISH** Gardens.

---

**B Y T H O M A S M A W E,**  
(GARDENER to his Grace the **DUKE of LEBNS**)  
**A N D**  
**O T H E R G A R D E N E R S.**

---

**T H E T H I R D E D I T I O N,**  
Corrected, Enlarged, and very much improved.

---

**L O N D O N:**

Printed for **W. GILBERT,** at **Garrick's Head,** Catharine  
Street, in the Strand. 1769.

[Price 5s. Bound.]



P. R. H. A. N. C. E.



In a book of this kind, designed to convey a practical knowledge of gardening, to gentle men and young gentlemen, who delight in that useful and agreeable study, our readers will not look for a copious display of studied periods, the manner is clear and comprehensive, the more simple and unadorned the better.

The writers of the following treatise are themselves practical gardeners, and have their knowledge in acquiring that knowledge, which they have attempted to reduce into a short system, and their object was being the plan of doing experience will be less liable to error.

One great advantage which every plan has our Gardeners has over other books of the same kind is that, that whereas other books, in a cursory manner, only let down what should be necessary to be done in every month in the year, without giving sufficient instructions concerning the manner of performing it; here the method of proceeding is minutely explained, and directions given in the several branches of gardening, according to the best modern practice.

We take this opportunity to thank the Public in general, for the very kind reception with which they have been pleased to honour this work; and, at the same time, to return our most grateful acknowledgments to those Gentle men.

---

## P R E F A C E.

**I**N a book of this kind, designed to convey a practical knowledge of gardening, to gentlemen and young professors, who delight in that useful and agreeable study, our readers will not look for chosen phrases or studied periods: if the meaning is clear and comprehensive, the more simple and unadorned the better.

The writers of the following sheets are themselves practical gardeners, and have past their whole lives in acquiring that knowledge, which they now attempt to reduce into a short system, and their observations being the fruit of long experience, will be less liable to error.

One great advantage which *Every Man his own Gardener* has over other books of the same kind, is this; that whereas other books, in a cursory manner, only set down what business is necessary to be done in every month in the year, without giving sufficient instructions concerning the manner of performing it; here the method of proceeding is minutely explained, and directions given in the several branches of gardening, according to the best modern practice.

We take this opportunity to thank the Public, in general, for the very kind reception with which they have been pleased to honour this work; and, at the same time, to return our most grateful acknowledgments to those Gentlemen,

## P R E F A C E.

men, and Gardeners in particular, who have favoured us with hints for its improvement: they will see that we have availed ourselves, as much as possible, of their observations and instructions. And as systems like ours can never be absolutely complete, owing to the many new discoveries which are daily making in the different parts of Europe, we earnestly hope that those persons who are engaged in the cultivation of gardens, will continue to oblige us with such discoveries as may occur in the progress of their employment, which we shall most thankfully receive, and gratefully acknowledge.

The great and necessary additions made to this Third Edition of *Every Man his own Gardener*, have unavoidably swelled it to one fifth part more than either of the former impressions, which has obliged the proprietor to add a shilling to the price. However, nothing has been admitted that is not absolutely useful; and such parts of gardening as are merely botanical are still purposely rejected, as they would have occasioned a still further increase of expence, and been of little or no use to the generality of practitioners.





---

---

EVERY MAN  
HIS OWN  
GARDENER.

---

JANUARY.

*Work to be done in the Kitchen Garden.*

*Cucumbers and Melons.*

**A**S it is the ambition of most gardeners to excel each other in the production of early cucumbers, all necessary preparation should be made this month for that purpose, if not done before.

If the weather is frosty or dry, so that you can use the wheel-barrow, clear your melon ground of the last year's dung, which you may lay on different parts of the kitchen garden, to prevent confusion and interruption in doing the necessary work about the hot-bed.

Those who intend to raise cucumbers or melons early, should now provide about a load of fresh horse-dung, and throw it up in a heap, observing to shake and mix it well together, as you throw it up, and let it remain for eight or ten days; at the expiration of which time, it will be in good condition for a bed: then, according to the size of your one-light frame, mark out the foundation of the bed, which should be done by setting the frame on the place where the bed is to be made; then fix four stakes in the ground, one at each corner of the frame, making an allowance for the bed to be two inches wider than the frame, every way.

B

This

## THE KITCHEN GARDEN. [Jan.

This done, remove the frame, and begin to make the bed according to the extent of the stakes, observing to shake and mix the dung well, as you lay it on the bed, and beat it down with the back of the fork, as you go on; but I would not advise treading it; for a bed which is trodden hard, will not work so kindly as that which is suffered to settle gradually of itself.

By the time the load of dung is all worked up, the bed will be arrived at the height of three feet, or thereabouts; and if it is two or three inches higher, it will not be too much, but let it be full three feet high: as soon as the bed is finished to the intended height, let the frame and glass be put on; keep them close till the heat comes up; when the heat has risen to the top of the bed, raise the glass, that the steam may pass away.

Four days after the bed is made, take off the frame and glass; and if the bed has settled unequally, let it be made perfectly level and the surface quite smooth.

When this is done, set on the frame, then put in as much dry earth as will cover the bed all over about two inches and a half thick: at the same time, fill four or six small pots, with rich dry earth, set them within the frame, put on the glass and keep it close, till the earth in the pots is warm.

When that is effected, sow a few seeds in each pot, either cucumber or melon; cover the seeds about half an inch thick with the same earth as that in the pots.

This done, place the pots in the middle of the bed, and draw some of the earth of the bed up round each pot.

Cover the glass every night with a single mat only for the first three or four nights after the seed is sown; but as the heat decreases, augment the covering. Observing to raise the glass a little at times, to give vent to the steam, which will arise strongly from the bed.

You must be careful that the earth in the pots have not too much heat, for the bed is yet very warm, which is the reason that these seeds are advised to be sown in pots; because if any thing of burning should appear after the seed is sown, you can conveniently raise the pots farther from the dung, from which the danger proceeds, without disturbing the seed or plants in the least; and by that method you may prevent all injury from too much heat, provided you examine the bed every day.



In three or four days after the seed is sown, if proper care is taken, the plants will appear; when it will be proper to admit air to them, by raising the glass a little every day; and if the earth in the pots appears dry, refresh it moderately with a little water that has stood in the bed all night, and continue to cover the glass every night with a mat or two. If you find that the heat of the bed is strong, raise the glass a little with a prop, when you cover up in the evening; and if you nail a mat to the frame, so as to hang down over the end of the glass that is raised, the plants will take no harm, but will receive great benefit: when the heat is more moderate, the glass may be shut close every night, observing to give air to the plants in the day time, and, if windy or a very sharp air, to hang a mat before the place, as above.

On the day that the plants appear, let a little more of the same seed be sown in the same bed, and in the manner above mentioned; for these plants are liable to suffer by different causes at this season. The best way therefore is to sow a little seed at three different times in the same bed; for if one sowing should miscarry, another may succeed.

When the plants of either sowing, have been up about three or four days, they should be planted into small pots, which pots should be placed in the same bed.

Observe to fill the pots, the day before you intend to remove the plants, with some rich dry earth, and set them within the frame, and let them remain till the next day, when the earth in the pots will be warm; then let some of the earth be taken out, to the depth of an inch from the top of the pot; then, in the middle of the earth that remains in the pot, form a little hollow, such as the head of a small watering-pot would make, was it to be pressed therein; then lay the plants on the side thereof, with their roots towards the middle, and cover their stalks near half an inch thick, with some of the earth that was taken out of the pots; observing, if cucumbers, to plant three or four plants in each pot; if melons, two plants in each pot will be sufficient.

When you have finished planting, plunge the pots into the earth on the bed, close to one another: let all the spaces between the pots be filled up with earth; and let every part of the bed within the frame be covered with so



much earth as will prevent the rising of the steam from the dung, which would destroy the plants.

Be careful to examine the bed every day, to see that the plants do not receive too much heat: if any thing like that appears, draw up the pots a little, or as far as you see necessary for the preservation of the plants.

Two or three days after planting, if the bed is in good condition, the plants will have taken root, though that is effected sometimes in twenty-four hours.

When the plants are fairly rooted, give them a little water in the warmest time of the day; and if it can be done when the sun shines, it will be the better for the plants: let the watering be repeated moderately as often as you observe the earth in the pots to be dry; and for this purpose, you should always have a quart bottle or two, full of water, set within the frame, to be ready to water the plants as you see they require it.

If there is now a brisk growing heat in the bed, you should, in order to preserve it as long as possible, lay some straw, waste hay, or fern, round the bed, and up as high on the outsides of the frame, as the earth is within the frame.

This will defend the bed from heavy rains or snow, if either should happen: for these, if suffered to come at the bed, would chill it, and cause a sudden decay of the heat, whereby the plants would certainly receive a great check.

If a lively heat be kept up, you may admit air to the plants every day, by raising the glass in proportion to the heat of the bed.

Do not, however, fail, when there is a sharp air or wind stirring, to let a mat be fastened to the frame, so as to hang down over the place where the air enters; for this will also prevent the wind and cold air from entering immediately into the frame, and the plants will reap the benefit of the air to a greater advantage, than if the place was entirely exposed.

When you find that the heat of the bed begins to decline, remove the straw, hay, or fern, from the front and back of the bed; then apply a lining of fresh horse-dung to both sides, but raise it very little higher than the dung of the bed; and as soon as you have finished the lining, cover the top with earth two inches thick; for this will prevent the rank steam of the dung from coming up,

up, and entering into the frame among the plants, where it would prove very destructive to them.

When the lining begins to work, it will revive the heat of the bed, and continue it in good condition for twelve days or a fortnight to come.

Ten or twelve days after, take the straw, fern, &c. from the other two sides of the bed, and lay a lining of horse-dung, as before-mentioned, to both these sides: this will again enliven the heat, and the dry litter that was laid round the bed may now be laid round the lining, which will protect it from wet, and the whole will keep the bed in a kindly growing heat, for a fortnight longer, or more.

Let the linings be applied in due time, and you may by that means keep the plants in a free growing state, in the same bed wherein the seed was sown, till they are fit to be transplanted into the bed where they are to produce their fruit.

The dung for the purpose of making linings should be the hottest, and you should shake it up in a heap, about eight days before you want to use it; and if you turn it over once in that time, it will be the better.

Make the linings about sixteen or eighteen inches wide, and raise them about two or three inches higher than the dung of the bed, but not more.

#### *Various sorts of Lettuce.*

If you have lettuce plants in frames, you should let them enjoy the open air at all opportunities, by taking the glasses entirely off, when the weather is mild and dry.

But in wet weather keep the glasses over them, observing to raise them a good height, to admit air to the plants; for if they are kept too close, they will be drawn up weak, and will come to little: but let them be close shut every night. In severe weather, keep them close night and day, and cover the glasses with mats, or straw, &c. every night; and even in the day-time, if no sun appears, and the weather is very sharp.

Pick off all dead leaves, as they appear on the plants, and keep them perfectly clear from weeds, or any sort of litter; and if you stir the surface between the plants sometimes, it will be of service to them.

About the first or second week in this month, if the weather is open, you may sow some coss, <sup>x</sup>cabbage, or

*Green Coss Florence B<sup>3</sup> Cabbage (Gard<sup>n</sup> brown Alon. 4*

brown Dutch lettuce, on a warm border, under a wall or pales; and when you dig the border, if you lay it a little sloping to the sun, the seed will stand a better chance to succeed.

It will be necessary to sow a little more of the same seed about the latter end of this month; in order that, if what was sown in the beginning should be cut off, this may succeed: but for the greater certainty of having a few forward lettuce, you may sow a little seed in a dry warm spot, and set a frame over it, and put on the glasses occasionally.

These seeds should now be sown pretty thick, and raked even and lightly into the ground.

#### *Radishes.*

In the beginning or any time in this month, when the weather is open, you should sow some short-topped, and salmon radishes, on a warm border, that lies well to the sun, and under a wall or other fence.

But you should not mix the seed of both sorts together, but let each sort be sown by itself; for the short-topped will come into use sooner by a week than the salmon radish will do, if both are sown at the same time; besides, the latter runs more to leaves than the former.

The surest method is, to sow a little of the same seed, at least twice this month: therefore if you sow in the beginning, sow some more towards the latter end of the month, on the same situation.

There may be mixed and sown with the radish a sprinkling of carrot seed, and if the radish should fail the carrot may stand, and if both succeed there will be a double advantage; for when the radish are drawn off for use there remains a crop of carrots, which will come in at an early season; or, instead of the carrot, you may sow a sprinkling of round spinage and a little lettuce, and when the radishes come off, these also come in. This is the common practice of the London gardeners.

You should sow the radish seeds pretty thick at this season; for when the plants begin to appear, the birds will attack, and, if not prevented, destroy them. The weather too, if it should prove sharp, will cut off some; so that, if good care is not taken, you will have but few left for yourself.

You



You should therefore use means to keep the birds from them, by spreading straw, fern, or mats over the surface about the time the plants are beginning to appear, and to remain till they are fairly up: and if the weather proves frosty after the plants are up, lay also some straw, or fern, &c. lightly over them, which will prevent the frost from destroying them; and if carefully laid on and taken off, it will neither break nor bruise them.

A fork is to be used in spreading it on, and a light wooden rake to draw it off into the allies, where it must be permitted to lay to be ready to throw over the plants when there is occasion, which should always be done when there is an appearance of frost, but to be off in mild weather.

You may also make a slight hot-bed to sow a few short-topped radishes in, for an early crop. The bed should be made the breadth and length of a three-light frame, but very slight; about twelve or fifteen inches thick is sufficient, because the heat is only intended to bring up the plants. When the bed is made, set on the frame; lay in about six or seven inches thick of earth, sow the seed, and put on the glasses: or, for want of frames and glasses, you may fix hoops or poles arch-ways over the bed and cover with mats.

For this purpose, be provided with some of the best early dwarf, or short-topped radish seed.

When the plants appear, give them a large share of air, otherwise they will be spoiled; and after they have been up a few days, thin them regularly with your hand, where they stand too thick, and leave the strongest plants standing about an inch and half asunder.

Some of the same seed may be sown on a warm spot in the common ground, and covered with a frame, &c. these will come in at a very acceptable season, and will sometimes succeed better this way, than when sown in a hot-bed.

#### *Carrots.*

If the weather is open and dry, about the beginning, or any time of this month, when the weather will permit, let a warm spot of ground be prepared for a few early carrots: dig the ground a full spade deep, and break the earth well as you go on.

But this is only intended for a few to come in a little before the general crop; therefore only a small piece of ground should be prepared for this purpose. Choose a dry mild day to sow the seed, sprinkling a few radish therewith, and let it be raked in as soon as sown.

In some families, young carrots are desired very soon in the year, and they may be forwarded by sowing the seed in a moderate hot-bed; if you have no frame at liberty, the bed may be arched over with hoops, and covered with mats occasionally.

The bed to be about eighteen inches thick of dung, and the earth should be eight inches thick on the bed.

#### *Spinage.*

On a small spot of ground you may sow a little spinage, to come in early in the spring; at which time it will be very acceptable in most families. The smooth seeded or round leaved spinage, is the best to sow at this season.

The first seed may be sown about the beginning of this month, and a little more may be sown near the end, in order to have a regular succession.

#### *Small Salleting.*

Make a slight hot-bed to sow the different sorts of small salleting in, that will not now endure the open air; such as cresses, mustard, radish, and rape, and likewise lettuce, to cut while young.

The bed for these seeds need not be more than about sixteen or eighteen inches thick of dung, and must be covered with a frame and glasses; or if these are wanting, fix hoops a-cross, and cover them with mats. The earth must be light and dry, and laid about four or five inches thick on the bed: let shallow drills be drawn from the back to the front of the bed; sow the seeds therein separately and pretty thick, covering each sort not more than a quarter of an inch deep with earth. Or the seed may be sown all over the surface of the bed, each sort separate, and cover it by sifting as much light earth over as will just cover it.

As soon as the plants appear, give them air plentifully, by raising the glasses on props, otherwise they will mould and spoil as fast as they come up.

If you have not dung to spare for this use, let a warm border, near or under a south wall, or other fence, be laid sloping to the sun; observing to raise the border a foot higher on the north side, than it is in the front. Set a frame thereon, sinking the back part of it a little in the ground; sow the salleting, put on the glasses, and you need not fear success, except in very severe frosty weather, when a hot-bed must necessarily be made to raise these small herbs where constantly wanted.

*Mint.*

Make a small hot-bed for some mint, to come in early in the spring. A bed for a one-light box will be sufficient for a middling family: making it near two feet thick of dung; if you have no frame to spare, fix some hoops across the bed, and cover occasionally with mats.

Lay about four or five inches depth of earth on the bed, then get some roots of mint, and place them upon the surface, and cover them with earth about an inch and a half deep, or otherwise draw drills two or three inches asunder, and an inch and half deep; place the roots in the drills, and draw the earth over them.

The mint will appear in about a fortnight or three weeks, and will be in fine order in a month, either to use alone as a sallet, or to mix among other small herbs.

*Parsley.*

Sow some parsley seed, if open weather, about the middle or towards the latter end of this month. Let shallow drills be drawn for this seed in a warm part of the garden. Sow the seed in the drills tolerably thick, and cover it rather more than a quarter of an inch deep with earth.

This seed is generally sown in a single drill round the edges of the quarters, or along the edge of the borders next the paths.

This seed sometimes lies six weeks or two months before it grows.

*Colliflowers.*

Look over the frames, where you have colliflower plants: and where withered or damaged leaves appear, let them be picked off, and suffer no weeds to grow among them. If you can conveniently come at the surface of the



ground to stir it a little, this will be of service to the plants.

In open weather, let the plants have plenty of air every day, by raising the glasses, or by taking them entirely off when the weather is mild and dry: but keep them close down every night, and do not open them at all in frosty weather.

In very severe weather, cover the glasses every night, and, if there be occasion, in the day-time, with mats, straw, or fern: also lay some litter round the outsides of the frame, for this will be very useful if the frame is bad, and will prevent the frost from entering at its sides.

Colliflowers under hand or bell glasses must also have air every mild day, by raising the glasses on the warmest side; in sharp weather keep them close; in severe frosts, lay some long litter round each glass: this will protect the plants greatly. Draw a little earth up round the stem of the plants: the glasses may be taken off every mild dry day, for four or five hours; but they must be kept close every night.

#### *Cabbages.*

When the weather is open, prepare some ground for cabbage-plants: let some rotten dung be laid on the ground, which should be well dug one spade deep, and the dung properly buried in the bottom of the trench.

Towards the latter end of the month, the plants may be removed, observing to plant them about two feet and a half asunder every way.

The sugar-loaf, and early Yorkshire cabbage, is proper for this season; but any of the larger sorts may likewise be planted at the same time.

Make good the plants in the former plantations, that have been destroyed by the severity of the weather and the vermin.

On the ground where cabbages are planted in the spring, there may, if you are scarce of ground, be sown a thin crop of round leaved spinage; which, if sown now, will be fit to gather in April.

#### *Transplant Cabbages for Seed.*

Transplant cabbages for seed: this work should be done generally in November or December; but where it was omitted in these months, it may still be done; if the weather

weather will permit, let it be done in the beginning of the month.

The method of preparing and planting them is this :

For the purpose of bearing seed, let some of the largest and best grown cabbages be marked, and let these be taken up in a mild and dry day, and divest them of the large outer leaves ; then hang them up with their head downwards in some dry place, for five or six days, that the moisture lodged between their leaves may be drained off.

Let a dry piece of ground be chosen for planting them in, and where the wind hath least power, but not under trees, nor too near them, but where the sun and air can freely come.

Let a dry day be chosen for planting them. The best and readiest method, is to plant them in trenches, as you dig the ground ; and the plants should be allowed three feet distance each way.

Dig the ground at least a full spade deep, and keep the trench clear and wide. When you have advanced with the digging about two feet from the end where you began, make the edge of the trench, on the side that is dug, even, and then set the cabbages upright in the trench, and close to the side of the dug ground, and let them be full three feet asunder. The greatest part of their heads should be within the ground.

When you have finished placing one row, proceed again with the digging, laying the ground against their stalks and roots, and raise the same gradually in a hill round each head, so that no part may be seen, but the top. This prevents the lodging of wet about their heads, which would rot them.

When you have dug three feet from the plant, prepare the trench as before, and plant another row in the same manner as before mentioned ; and so proceed till the whole is planted.

#### *Celery.*

When the weather is open, take advantage of a dry day to earth up the celery that requires it.

Let the earth be well broken and laid to the plants lightly, that they may not be crushed down, or the hearts buried.

Raise the earth very near the top of the plants: for if severe frosts set in, they will destroy all such parts of the plants as are above ground; and if much of the plants should happen to be out of the ground in such weather, and be thereby destroyed, it will also occasion a decay of those parts that are within the ground.

In some families, these plants are required every day; but if the ground is frozen hard, you cannot easily take them up: you should therefore, at the approach of severe weather, cover some of the rows with dry long litter, which will prevent the ground from being frozen, and will also protect the plants.

Or, at the approach of severe weather, there may, for the service of a family, be a quantity of the plants taken up in a dry day: carry them into some sheltered place, and there lay them in dry earth or sand, as far as their white or blanched part.

#### *Endive.*

When the weather is mild and dry, some of the endive that was planted out last September, or October, should now be taken up and laid in a ridge of dry earth to blanch. Take up some of the best and largest plants, and hang them up in a dry place, for a day or two, to drain off the moisture lodged between their leaves: for if they are laid in the ground wet, the plants will rot in the heart before the blanching is effected.

Prepare a ridge for them, where the ground is light and driest; and there mark out a trench sideways to the south sun, about two feet or thirty inches wide; dig this trench two spades deep, laying the earth on the north side, and close to the edge of the trench, throwing it up in a high ridge; and making the sunny side, which is next the trench, as upright as possible, that heavy rains may run quickly off, and not rest about the plants.

Then get the plants, and gathering the leaves of each up regularly and close with your hand, make an opening on the sunny side of the ridge, and put the plants sideways into the earth, almost to the tops of their leaves; they may be laid pretty close to one another.

In severe weather it will be proper to cover some of your best endive with peas straw, or other dry long litter.

For the greater certainty of blanching and preserving good endive at this season, there may be laid a quantity of



of dry earth into any dry shed or other covered place, laying it in a high ridge, or round heap, and so bury the endive therein as above: or lay some dry earth, or old tan, in a garden frame, and lay it sloping to the sun, and bury your endive therein almost to the tops of their leaves, as before mentioned. When the weather is frosty or wet, the glasses may be put on, and other covering, if you see it necessary; by this method you may obtain good endive in the severest season, provided care be taken to lay in a quantity at the first approach of hard frosts. One frame will contain a great many plants.

#### Beans.

In the beginning of this month, if the weather is open, let some ground be got ready for a principal crop of Sandwich beans.

*Magazon or early Lisbon.*  
This is an excellent bean, and may be planted the first week in this month, if the weather permits. Let the rows be three feet distant from each other, and set the beans five or six inches asunder in the rows.

A few Windsor beans may be planted about the same time; but the main crop had better be deferred till after the middle of the month, for they are not quite so hardy as the Sandwich. Let the rows be a yard asunder, and plant the beans full six inches apart in the rows. You may plant in this month any sort of garden beans that are most approved of in the family.

For the early crops of beans, see October and November.

#### Peas.

Let some hot spur peas be sown the beginning of this month, for a full crop, on a warm piece of ground, to succeed the same sort which was sown in November or December: sow them in rows a yard asunder.

But if the ground is rich, and you intend to set sticks to them, let the rows be three feet and a half asunder.

At the same time also, you may sow the first crop of marrowfat peas, and they will succeed the hot-spurs; for they will come into bearing as the others go off. This pea is much admired in most families: but the dwarf marrowfat is the properest for sowing at this season.

If you intend to set sticks for these peas to run up, sow them in rows full four feet distant from each other; but

*\* mixed up with gritty sand or Turge if chopped into small pieces to preserve them from muck*  
Gent. Alm. 42

if no sticks are intended, three feet and a half will be quite sufficient.

If you have peas and beans already up to any considerable height, when the surface of the ground is dry, draw some earth up to their stems in a mild day.

This should not be omitted, for it will strengthen the plants, and protect them greatly from the frost.

#### *Artichokes.*

Artichokes, if not earthed up before, should not be neglected any longer, except the severity of the weather prevents. When it will be proper to lay a good thick covering of litter, fern, or straw on them; otherwise you will run the risque of loosing all your plants. Care must be taken to clear away all the rotten or old leaves, quite close to the ground, before the plants are earthed up or covered as above.

But the work of earthing artichokes, should always be performed in the end of November, or beginning of December; for which see the work of these months. And the earthing or landing them up, should never be omitted, for it is the most certain method of preserving the plants in severe winters.

Likewise, if, after landing up, the frost should prove very severe, it will also be proper to lay long litter over the rows; for if the plants are of the true globe sort, too great care cannot be taken to preserve them: for this year (which is 1768) having occasion to buy some to supply what was destroyed by frost, which this year made great havock among these plants, I was, upon demanding the price, asked five guineas per hundred, but obliged to give four.

#### *Mushrooms.*

Mushroom beds should be carefully attended to at this season. They should have sufficient covering to defend the plants from the frost, rain, or snow; which should not be less than twelve inches thick; and if, by accident, the rain or snow should have penetrated quite through the covering, this must be removed immediately, or your spawn will be in danger of perishing. Replace it with a good covering of wheat, or other straw; and if you find

*Onions sown this Month succeed the much better than in Feb. or March.*  
Garden Alm. 42

the wet weather likely to continue, it will be proper to lay some mats or cloths over the straw, which will greatly preserve the beds. x

## The Fruit Garden.

*Apples, Pears, &c.*

**I**N gardens where there are wall or espalier trees that still remain unpruned, that work should be forwarded as much as possible this month. For there are some sorts of fruit trees, which may now be pruned without any danger of their being hurt, even if frosts should set in immediately after they are pruned, or while it is doing.

The hardiest sorts are apples and pears, they require much the same management in pruning: the shoots of both, when intended to be laid in to supply a wall or espalier with bearing wood, must not be shortened.

Therefore, in the pruning these trees, let it be observed, that when you intend to lay in some shoots of the last summer's growth, for bearing branches, let them be fastened up at full length; and as the shoots advance in length, still continue them to the wall, or espalier, without reducing their length, either in the summer or the winter pruning.

If this is practised, these shoots or branches will, about the second or third year after they are laid in, begin to produce short shoots or spurs (as they are generally termed) about an inch or two in length, some not above half an inch; and from these the fruit is produced.

But if the branches of these trees were to be shortened, I would cut off the very part where blossom buds or spurs would first begin to appear; and instead of them they would send forth a number of strong wood shoots. This plainly shews that the shoots which are intended for bearing, must not be shortened; for if that were practised, the trees would not produce one tenth of a crop.

If, indeed, there is a want of wood in any part of these trees, then shortening is necessary, where only one shoot is produced, and three or four are wanting.

For instance, if there is a vacant part of the tree, and, where two, three, or more shoots, are requisite to furnish

*\*Potatoes onion planted in shallow that drills  
earthed up as advancing*



that vacancy, only one good shoot was produced the preceding summer, that shoot, in such case, must be shortened to four or five buds in the winter pruning; and if it is a strong shoot, it will produce three good shoots the succeeding summer.

*Plums and Cherries.*

If the weather is not very severe, you may safely prune and nail plums and cherries, either against walls or espaliers.

These trees are somewhat tenderer than apples and pears, but not so tender as represented by some.

Let it be observed, in the pruning of these trees, that all such young shoots of the last year's growth, as are now intended to be laid in to furnish the wall or espalier with bearing wood, must not be shortened; but every such shoot or branch must be left at its full length; and this should at all times be practised, which is the only way to render the branches fruitful; for the shoots, thus treated, will, in two or three years time, send out many short shoots or fruit spurs, about half an inch or an inch in length, and from these spurs the fruit is always produced. These spurs generally appear first towards the extreme part of the branches; and if shortening were to be practised, that part would consequently be cut away, where the blossom buds would have otherwise first made their appearance.

Therefore, in the course of pruning apple, pear, plum, and cherry trees, never shorten or top the young shoots, that are left for a supply of bearing wood, nor any of the bearing branches; for that practice would in a manner prove the manifest destruction of these trees; and in the places where fruit buds would otherwise naturally appear, there would advance nothing but strong wood shoots; so that the trees would be continually crowded with useless wood, and little or no fruit.

But, on the other hand, shortening some particular branches of the above trees, is, in some cases, most necessary: and the first instance is when the trees are about one year old from the budding or grafting, and newly planted against walls or espaliers. It must be remarked that all the shoots that are produced the two first years after the budding or grafting must be shortened; which should be performed in the spring, cutting them at each time

time to four or five eyes; which is done to cause them to put out lateral branches near the ground, in order that the wall or espalier may be regularly furnished with branches from the bottom; after this the branches are to be trained along at their full length, except it appears necessary to shorten one or two of the middlemost shoots, in order that each may throw out two or three lateral branches, to furnish that part of the tree; training the said lateral shoots also at their full length; but if there appear to be still more branches wanting, let one or two of the most convenient of these last shoots be also shortened, to promote their producing more lateral branches, to furnish the wall; for the great art is to encourage and assist young fruit trees to produce shoots in proper places, so as to cover the wall or espalier regularly with branches, from the bottom to the top.

So that when the trees have acquired branches enough to cover the wall or espalier in regular order, then you are to forbear to shorten any more of the branches, except in cases where wood is wanting: then observe the rule mentioned above, in the article of apples and pears.

It must be observed, that the branches of these trees should be trained, six or eight inches asunder.

There is one thing farther to be observed in pruning apple, pear, plum and cherry trees; and that is, when the trees have acquired branches enough to cover the wall or espalier, at the distance above mentioned, then all those young shoots of the last summer's growth, that are not wanted to lay in, must be cut off quite close to the place from whence they arise, leaving no spurs but what are naturally produced, which every branch will be plentifully furnished with, if the above rules are observed.

Therefore, in cutting out the superabundant wood, cut it quite close, never leaving any spurs.

*Peaches, Nectarines, and Apricots.*

Peaches, nectarines, and apricots, may be pruned and nailed any time in this month, if the weather should prove mild.

These trees are rather tenderer than the sorts before mentioned, and the frost will affect them more at the places that are newly cut, than it can any other fruit tree, except the fig: but by what I ever could observe, it is only

only extreme hard frost, that can any way affect them at that part.

In the pruning of peaches, nectarines, and apricots, little or no difference need be made.

Let it be observed, that the fruit of these trees are always produced from the shoots of the last year; that is to say, always upon year-old shoots; therefore, a due supply of the best of the last year's shoots, must now be left in a regular manner in every part of the tree; and these shoots must be shortened, in order to encourage them to produce a succession of bearing wood in the ensuing summer. The wood which is then produced, will bear fruit in the summer after that.

Before you begin to prune, you should un-nail the greatest part of the tree, by which means you will have room to use your knife properly; and when you have pruned one tree, let that be nailed up again, before you proceed any farther with the pruning.

But in the course of pruning these trees, be sure to select the most promising and best situated shoots; which shoots must be left at regular distances, and in such order as to be as it were coming up in a regular manner, one after another, in every part of the tree, making room for them, by cutting out all the other useless or unnecessary shoots.

For example, you are to observe that these young shoots we now speak of, are, as above hinted, produced only upon those young shoots which were laid in last winter, and which produced the fruit last summer: and we will suppose each of the said shoots, or branches, which were laid in last winter, to have produced three shoots last summer, and that they now remain upon them, but that there may not be room to lay in more than one of the said shoots on each of the above branches; it remains to be considered, which of these three shoots on each branch are proper to be left; whether the uppermost, middle, or lower of the three: there is no rule for this, but we will suppose the middlemost of them; in which case, cut off the lower one, close to the branch, and then that part of the branch which hath the upper shoot upon it, must be cut off close to the middle one; so that there is only the middle shoot now remaining, which terminates or makes the end of the branch: but on the other hand, if it is thought most convenient to leave the uppermost of the three, the middle



middle and lower are to be cut away close to the branch ; so, on the contrary, if the lower one is to be left, cut off the branch with the middle and upper one upon it close to the lower one : and if thought most proper to leave in any place, two out of the three shoots on a branch, then the upper and lower are apparently most proper, provided they be the best shoots ; and so cut out the middle : or if the two lower shoots appear best for your purpose, cut off the upper part of the branch with the top shoot on it close to the next or middle one ; so that there remains that and the lower one. There may not always happen to be just three young shoots on every last year's branch ; but I chose to mention that number that I may be the better able in this small compass, to explain, and convey to the learner an idea of the method, practised in pruning these sorts of trees.

Likewise observe, in the course of pruning old trees of the same kinds, to cut out all old useless wood.

What is to be understood by old useless wood, is such old branches as advance a great length without being furnished with such young shoots as above mentioned ; such branches should be either intirely cut out, or shortened to any young branch proceeding from it, that is furnished with young shoots for bearing.

Next let it be remembered that all, or most of those young shoots as are left to bear, are to be shortened, which is to be performed according to their strength, and also according to that of the tree.

For instance ; if a tree is weak, the shoots should be left about six or seven inches distance from each other, and they should be shortened in proportion to their strength ; some, perhaps, may be left about six inches long, others eight, ten, or twelve inches ; for the shortening should always be performed more or less in proportion to the strength of the different shoots.

When a tree is in pretty good condition, neither very vigorous nor weak, the shoots should be laid in about five or six inches asunder, and should be shortened to about eight or ten, and so to twelve or fifteen inches long, according to their strength.

But where trees are very vigorous, the shoots must be shortened but little, some to the length of ten, twelve, or fifteen inches ; and some of the strongest shoots of a vi-  
gorous

gorous tree may be laid in eighteen inches or two feet long, and some of them also at full length.

In shortening the shoots of these trees, it will be proper to observe, that all shoots should, if possible, be cut to an eye that is likely to produce a leading shoot; such an eye is discoverable, by having two blossom buds, and from between these two buds there will issue a shoot, which is necessary to the welfare of the fruit; for where such a shoot is produced at the extremity of a bearing branch, it draws nourishment to the fruit, and the fruit of such will be finer than in those shoots destitute of leaders.

#### *Vines.*

Vines may be pruned any time this month, when the weather will permit.

In pruning of vines, observe to leave at moderate distance a sufficient quantity of the last year's shoots, so that every part may be properly furnished with them; for it is from these that the bearing shoots are produced, which yield the fruit in the succeeding summer: vines hardly ever produce bearing shoots from any but year old wood.

Let the shoots be shortened to four or five eyes in length; cut them about an inch above an eye, and somewhat sloping from it, and let them be nailed as soon as they are pruned.

The shoots or branches of these trees should be nailed in at least the distance of ten or twelve inches from one another.

In the course of pruning vines, you should always take care to leave every year some young shoots in convenient places towards the bottom of the wall, in order that there may be a constant succession of young wood coming up in regular order, in every part of the tree; and every year some of the most unserviceable old wood should be cut out; for when this hath advanced near the top of the wall, it in a manner becomes useless: so it should be taken off, either quite to the bottom, or to some convenient young branch which it supports, leaving the said young branch to supply its place.

#### *Prune Gooseberry and Currant Trees.*

In pruning gooseberries, the best way is to keep them thin of branches; that is, to let the branches or shoots at their extremities stand at least six or eight inches distance

tance from one another, and keep the hearts of the trees hollow and clear of wood; but do not shorten the last year's shoots too much; for by cutting them very short, they are made to produce a deal of wood and small fruit, and being so full of wood, the fruit cannot ripen well, and it likewise becomes troublesome to get at the fruit, when fit to gather. Never clip the trees with garden shears, as is the practice of some ignorant persons.

But for the particular method of pruning these shrubs, see the work of October.

Currants should likewise be kept thin and regular, not suffering the branches to run promiscuously across each other; for when they are suffered to grow so irregular and thick, they deprive the fruit of the benefit of the sun; for want of which, it will be very sour and ill tasted.

Currants and gooseberries may also be planted; and if the trees are to be placed round the quarter of the kitchen garden, prune them up to one stem, twelve or fifteen inches before you form the head of the tree; for when these trees are suffered to branch away immediately from the roots, they hurt all small crops that grow near them, and render it troublesome to work about them.

#### *Prune Raspberries.*

In pruning these plants, observe that the shoots which produced fruit last year will now be dead, and are therefore to be cut away close to the surface of the ground: clear away also all small shoots in general, and leave standing upon each root three or four of the strongest shoots of the last summer's growth to bear fruit next year, but cut all the rest off, close to the surface of the ground.

Those shoots which are left to bear, must be each of them shortened; in doing which you must cut off about one third, or at least one fourth of the length of each shoot.

The ground should be dug between the rows; and, as you go on, the roots that do not belong to the standing plants should be taken away, and all shoots growing between the rows, dug up.

You may now make fresh plantations of raspberries, leaving at least four feet between the rows, and set the plants a yard distant in the row.

This distance appears a great way at first, but they should never be planted closer, as the advantage of it will



will be seen in two years time; for when planted too close, they will in the summer season form a perfect thicket, insomuch that the fruit will not ripen to have any flavour, nor can you come at them readily, when fit to gather.

These plants should be planted in an open situation: for particulars, see October.

#### *Preparations for Plantations.*

If you intend to make new plantations of fruit trees, either for the wall or for espaliers, the borders should be trenched to the depth of two spits, adding fresh earth, if wanted (loam is best if it can be had) and very rotten dung as you go on, working them well together.

This is only meant where new plantations are to be made. If only a few trees are wanted at different places, this work need not be performed but on such places as are vacant.

If an orchard is to be planted, it will be necessary to put a little very rotten dung, and some fresh loam, in each hole; working the earth, loam, and dung, where the tree is to stand, well together.

#### *Protecting the Roots of, and supporting newly planted Trees.*

If the weather should now prove severe, it will be proper to protect the roots of new planted trees from being hurt by the frost, by laying mulch, or long litter, on the surface of the ground, round the stem of the tree.

Support all new planted standard trees with stakes, and let a hay-band be put round the stem of the tree, at the place where it is to be fastened to the stake.

#### *Prune old Standard Fruit Trees.*

This is also a proper time to examine your old standard fruit trees, to thin them where wanting, and to cut off all dead, or irregularly growing branches, and to clean the trees from moths.

#### *Strawberries.*

Now is a proper time to make a hot-bed to raise a few early strawberries: those which are planted now in a hot-bed, will produce fruit fit to gather in March and April.

About

About the beginning of this month, provide for that purpose as much new horse dung as will make a bed about two feet and a half high.

Let the dung be thrown in a heap, and let it lie about eight or ten days; in that time it will be in good condition to make up in a bed. The next thing to be done, is, to pot the plants, if it has not been done before.

Provide as many pots then as the frame intended for your bed will conveniently contain, when set close together: at the same time get some fresh and good earth: if it is loamy it will be the better, let it be well broken with the spade.

Having brought the pots and earth near to the place where the plants are growing, put some of the earth into each pot, to the thickness of three or four inches; then take up the plants with a ball of earth to their roots, pare the ball neatly round with a knife, and clear the plant from all withered or rotten leaves, and from every thing that appears disagreeable; then place it in the pot, and fill the space between the ball and the sides of the pot, with the above earth, and cover the surface of the ball with the same.

Let them be watered as soon as you have finished planting, and remove the pots to a warm situation, there to remain till the bed is ready to receive them: but if the weather should prove bad before the hot-bed is ready, let the plants be protected by covering them, or removing them into some sheltered place.

When the dung that was thrown in a heap has lain eight or ten days, you may begin to make the bed, observing to beat the dung down well with the fork, as you lay it on.

When the bed is finished, set on the frame and glasses. These will protect it from wet, and draw up the heat, and the bed will be ready for the plants sooner by two days, than if left entirely open.

When the violent heat is over, lay on some earth; then bring in the plants, and plunge the pots into the earth up to their rims, and as close together as can be.

When all the pots are plunged, put on the glasses, and keep them close till the steam arises in the bed, when it will be necessary to raise them a little to let the steam pass off.

When

When the plants begin to push, let them have air at all opportunities, when the weather is favourable; for if they are kept too close, they will produce little or no fruit: and let them be frequently refreshed with a little water, and cover the glasses every night with mats.

N. B. The plants may be taken up with balls, and placed in the earth of the bed without potting them; but when it is intended to force strawberries, either in a convenient hot-bed or in the hot-house, it would be a good method to pot some plants in October, and so place the pot close under some warm wall till the time they are to be placed in the hot bed.

### The Pleasure, or Flower Garden.

**G**REAT care should be taken to protect your choicest flowers, at this unfavourable season.

#### *Ariculas.*

Let your ariculas be well protected from heavy rains, snow, or sharp frosts; all of which would injure them.

These plants should always be removed about the end of October or beginning of November, and placed in frames, or in a bed arched over with hoops in a warm place, where they can be occasionally covered when the weather is unfavourable; but let the covers be constantly off when the weather is mild and dry.

Towards the end of this month, if the weather is mild, it will be time to think of adding fresh earth to these plants.

Let some proper compost be prepared for this purpose. For the proper sort, see the article auricula in August; or clear the plants from dead leaves, and take the old earth away from the top of the pots, as low as you conveniently can without disturbing their roots; fill up the pot with the earth that you have prepared; and when you have finished this work, return the pots to the place intended for sheltering them. Let them always be secured from frost and excessive rains; but a moderate shower will be serviceable to them.

*Care*



*Care of Carnations.*

Take great care of your carnations that are in pots, when the weather is severe, and let them be well secured from frost, heavy rains, and snow, which would greatly injure, if not quite destroy them.

These pots should be plunged in a bed of dry compost, in the beginning of winter, and the bed arched over with hoops at that time; this will be of great advantage to the plants, if you are careful to draw the mats over the hoops when the weather is very wet or frosty.

If the pots were to be placed in garden frames, it would still be better, if you take care to put the glasses over them in bad weather; but when the weather is mild, and not very wet, no covering must be over the plants, but let them have the free air at all such times.

*Care of Choice Hyacinths and Tulips.*

In frosty weather, the beds where you have deposited the choicest kinds of hyacinths and tulips, or any other curious roots, should be covered. Fern, or long litter, will do very well for this purpose: but it must be removed as soon as the severe weather is over.

When any of the above-mentioned plants, of the most curious kinds, begin to appear above ground, let the bed be arched over with hoops; and when the weather is unfavourable, such as in severe frosts, or extreme wet weather, let mats be drawn over the hoops, and fastened down, that the wind may not blow them off; but when the weather is open, let them be constantly uncovered.

The finest kinds of hyacinths, tulips, ranunculuses, and anemonies, in particular, will require this care.

But this practice of covering the bed is only proposed to be done to the most curious kinds.

*Planting Ranunculuses, Anemonies, &c.*

Plant ranunculuses and anemonies, if you have any now out of the ground; these now planted will succeed those which were put in the ground in October or November. Choose a dry mild day for planting these roots, and see that the ground is not very wet, for that would rot them. Lay the beds rounding, that the wet may run off. These beds should be three feet and a half, but not more than four feet wide: plant the roots in rows nine  
C inches

inches distant, and allow six inches distance between plant and plant in the rows; and plant them about two inches and a half deep.

For the particular method of preparing the beds and planting the roots, see the work of September and October.

These flowers make a very agreeable appearance, when they are planted in small patches in the borders among other flowers.

In a small circle of about eight or nine inches diameter, you may plant four or five roots; that is, one in the middle, and the rest round the extreme part of the circle. Let the circles be ten, twelve, or fifteen feet, asunder. This is only meant for the common sorts.

For it is necessary to plant the fine sorts together in narrow beds as above, especially when planted early, in order, that they may be protected in bad weather in winter; and also in the spring, when the plants are in bloom, they can be more readily sheltered from great rains, or too much sun, both of which hasten the decay of the flowers; and as the pleasure of beholding the bloom is the only intention of cultivating, no pains should be spared to protect the more beautiful sorts.

#### *Planting Tulips.*

Tulips, if you have any out of the ground, should now be planted to blow late, and to succeed those planted in last autum.

Let this work be done as soon as the weather will permit, for if these roots are kept much longer out of the ground, they will blow very poorly. If they are to be planted in beds, let them be four feet wide, and lay the beds rounding, that the wet may not be detained on the surface, which would soak down to the roots and injure them; besides, beds always look best when they are raised gradually about two or three inches higher in the middle than they are on the sides.

In a dry mild day, let the roots be put into the ground; plant them in rows, and let them be nine inches distance in the rows, and allow the same distance between row and row, and plant them four or five inches deep. If you plant some of the inferior roots in the borders, they may be put in a row about a foot from the edge, and let the roots be the same distance from each other.

But



But these flowers, when intended to be planted on the borders, make the best appearance when they are planted in little clumps; that is to say, in a circle about nine inches broad to plant four or five roots, and about ten or twelve feet farther to plant another such clump, and so on to the end.

#### *Planting Crocusses.*

Plant crocusses in borders by the sides of the walks. Plant these roots within six inches of the edge of the border; but not in one continued row, for they appear to a greater advantage when they are planted in small patches. Draw a small circle with your finger, about five or six inches diameter; in the middle plant one root; and plant three or four round the edge of the circle: about twenty inches, or two or three feet farther, make another circle, and plant the roots as above; and so proceed to the end of the border, &c. observing, if you have different kinds, to plant each sort separate; that is, if you plant the first patch with yellow crocusses, plant the next with blue, and so on to the end.

#### *Planting Jonquils and other Bulbs.*

Jonquils, narcissuses, hyacinths, bulbous iris, crown imperials, or any other kinds of bulbous flower roots, that yet remain above ground, should now be planted as soon as the weather will permit. Mild dry weather must be chosen to plant these, and all other kinds of flower roots, and see that the ground is not too wet.

When it is intended to plant any of the common sorts of the above, or other kinds of bulbous roots, in the borders, it will be the best way to plant them in little clumps or patches in the manner mentioned above, for the common tulips, ranunculuses, &c. *Anemones & Gladiolus may yet be planted (Cot. Garden.)*

#### *Care of Perennial Fibrous Rooted Plants in Pots.*

Double wall flowers in pots, double stocks and double sweet-williams, also cutting of double chrysanthemums, and any other of the choicest kinds, of perennial plants in pots, should be well secured from severe frost. If these plants are placed in frames, let the glasses, or other covering, be kept over them at all times when the frost is keen, or in very wet weather; but in mild, dry weather, the plants must not be covered.



Take care now also of all the fibrous rooted perennial plants in general, which are in pots, to secure them from frost.

Such as the double rose campion, double scarlet lychnis, and all other such like kinds.

Those plants which are in pots should, where there are not the convenience of frames, be plunged to their rims in a dry and warm border, and in hard weather covered with long litter; but if you do not plunge the pots, they should be moved into some sheltered place at the approach of severe frost. — *Provide Perennials for planting*

#### *Seedling Flowers.*

Boxes of seedling flowers should be covered in frosty weather; peas straw, or fern, or the like, should be laid a good thickness over them, and close round their sides.

Beds of seedling flowers in the common ground, should also be covered in hard frosts, with long litter, but be sure to remove the covering when the weather is soft.

#### *Protecting Flowering Shrubs from Frost.*

If you have hardy flowering shrubs or ever-greens, in pots, you should, to protect their roots from the frost, plunge the pots to their rims in the ground. Chuse a dry spot to plunge them in; that is, where water is not apt to stand.

Protect also the roots of new planted flowering shrubs, and ever-greens, from frost, if it should set in hard. This is done by laying litter on the surface of the ground, round the stem of the shrubs, as far as their roots extend, or rather further.

#### *Support New Planted Shrubs.*

Support such new planted shrubs, or trees, as require it, with stakes, that they may not be displaced by the wind.

#### *Pruning Flowering Shrubs, and digging between them.*

Prune flowering shrubs in the clumps or quarters of the shrubbery, or where they require it. This should be done with a knife, and not with shears, as often practised; all dead wood should be cut away; also, where the branches crowd one upon another, let some be taken out, and all stragglers be cut off.

The shrubs in general should be kept clear of each other, so that each kind can be seen distinctly; and clear away all suckers that arise from the roots.

The ground between flowering shrubs and ever-greens should be dug; observing, as you go on, to shorten all straggling roots, taking care not to disturb the plants. This will do good to the shrubs, and the places will appear neat.

#### *Planting Flowering Shrubs.*

In mild weather you may now plant where wanted several sorts of hardy flowering shrubs.

Such as roses, honey suckles, lilacs, and syringas, althæa and spiræa frutex: gelder rose, and Persian lilacs, may now be transplanted when it is open weather.

You may also remove laburnums, privets and jasmines, the cinquefoil shrub, and bladder senna, the double hawthorn, double blossom cherry, and dwarf almond, with double and single flowers, the mezereon and double flowering peach, with the double and single sweet-briar, flowering raspberry and double bramble; and any other such like hardy kinds of shrubs may at this time be transplanted, provided the weather be any thing mild,

#### *Rules for Planting Flowering Shrubs.*

In planting the various kinds of flowering shrubs, particular regard should be had to the distances between plant and plant, and also to the manner of order in placing them, so as that the different plants can be readily distinguished; for this is of very great importance.

Therefore, in the disposition of the shrubs, let the different heights and manners of growth of the various kinds be considered, and placed so that one plant may not overbear another.

The rule is, the taller the plant, the more backward in the border or clump it must be placed, and the shortest plants should be placed nearest the front, so as the whole may stand in a kind of theatrical order.

The distance which should be allowed between plant and plant is at least four or five feet; this is to be understood when they are to be planted in the clumps or quarters of the shrubbery; but those that are intended to be planted in the common narrow borders must be allowed double that distance at least.

*Transplant Suckers.*

Transplant suckers from the roots of roses, lilacs, spiræas, syringas, and other shrubs, to raise a supply of new plants; for by suckers many sorts of shrubs may be propagated: let these suckers be taken off carefully, and planted in rows fifteen or eighteen inches asunder; they will make good plants in two years time.

*Care of Grass Walks and Lawns.*

Take great care now of the grass walks and lawns in this garden; they should now be kept very neat, by frequently poleing and rolling them. Poleing should be performed in open weather, and is done with a pliable ash pole, fifteen or sixteen feet long, or more, and should be used to break and spread the worm-casts about, whenever they appear on the grass. After this, let the grass be rolled with a wooden roller, which will take the worm-casts up clean, by which means your grass will appear extremely neat, and you will reap the advantage of it in mowing time.

*Making Grass Walks or Lawns.*

Now is also a proper time, when the weather is open, to lay turf, where wanted, for making or mending grass walks or lawns. When you go to cut turf, let them be marked out a yard long and a foot broad: they must be cut about an inch thick.

They should be rolled up as close and as firm as possible, for the more ready carrying, and moving them about, without breaking.

The best turf for gardens is such as is to be met with on commons, or heaths, where there are many sheep pastured.

After the turf is laid, it should be immediately well beaten with a heavy wooden beater, and afterwards rolled with a large stone or iron roller.

*Gravel Walks.*

The gravel walks which have not been laid up in ridges, should be kept clean from litter, and free from weeds; and let them be now and then rolled when the weather will permit.

*Planting Box and Thrift for Edgings.*

Now is a very good time to plant box or thrift, where it is wanted for edgings to beds or borders. These edgings



ings may be planted any time this month, when the weather is mild. Both these make close and agreeable edgings, if neatly planted, and well kept afterwards.

For the method of planting them, see October and November.

*Preparation for Planting.*

Trench and prepare the ground where you intend to plant flowering shrubs, this, or the next month. Also dig those clumps, or quarters, where you intend to plant evergreens, in February or March, that they may be in readiness against planting time.

Dig up such flower borders as are vacant, that they may be ready to receive the plants, or seeds of flowers, the following month. — *Provide different sorts of soils*

The Nursery.

**D**IG the ground, if open weather, between the rows of young trees and shrubs, of all sorts.

In performing this work, let care be taken to shorten all straggling roots of the trees or shrubs, and take care you do not disturb the principal ones. Dig the ground one spade deep, giving every spit a fair turn off the spade, that the weeds on the surface may be buried properly.

*Transplanting and pruning Forest Trees.*

Transplanting may be performed any time this month, if the weather is open, and the ground not too wet.

Particularly forest trees, of the hardy kinds, may be removed any time this month, if mild weather; but this should not be generally practised, except the weather appears also to be settled.

Trim up the stems of forest trees where they require it; this may be done, when little else can be done in the nursery; for if it is performed in frosty weather, the trees will receive no harm by the operation, especially the hardy kinds.

*Pruning and transplanting Flowering Shrubs.*

Prune honey-suckles and roses, and also all other kinds of hardy flowering shrubs that want it, training each with a single stem, and trimming their heads as you shall see occasion;

casion; that is, either to cut out, or shorten, all straggling shoots, in such manner as you shall see necessary to keep their heads somewhat to a regular form.

In open and settled weather, you may now transplant most sorts of hardy flowering shrubs, in a dry soil; but where the ground is apt to lodge wet, there should not be any planted before February.

#### *Planting Fruit Tree Stocks.*

Plantations of stocks for grafting and budding upon may be made towards the latter end of this month, if favourable weather. Let these be planted in rows at proper distances; they should be allowed two feet and a half between the rows, and fifteen or eighteen inches distant from each other in the rows.

#### *Work in frosty Weather.*

In frosty weather carry dung, and lay on such places of the nursery as require it. The dung for this purpose should be perfectly rotten; and if you lay such between the rows of young trees, and dig it in, it will do them service.

In frosty weather, you may wheel in some such dung, as above, and spread it over those quarters that are not yet dug, and where plantations of young trees are to be made the next month, or in March.

#### *Preparing Ground for planting and sowing.*

In open weather, you should, as much as possible, forward the digging and trenching the pieces of ground where young trees and shrubs are to be planted in spring.

Now begin to prepare some ground, where it is not wet, for the reception of stones and kernels of hardy fruits, to raise a supply of stocks, for the purpose of budding and grafting upon.

These, if mild weather, may be sown about the middle or latter end of this month, observing to sow them in beds, four feet wide; cover the stones an inch and a half deep at least with earth, and the kernels near an inch: when the plants appear, they must be kept remarkably clean from weeds, and this must be done by a careful hand-weeding.

These young plants must also be refreshed in dry weather, in summer, with gentle watering.

Some

Some of them to be transplanted in October. See the work of that month.

Get ready also some ground, to sow the seeds or berries of hardy forest trees, and flowering shrubs.

The ground for this purpose, must be chosen in a dry and sheltered part of the nursery. Let it be neatly dug, and divide it in beds three or four feet broad. The seed may be sown, if open weather, about the last week in the month. Let these seeds, mast, or berries, be sown tolerably thick, and covered with earth about an inch deep.

The surface of the beds wherein the above seeds are sown, should be very well cleared from stones.

#### *Care of tender and young Seedling Trees.*

Take great care now of all the tenderer kinds of seedling trees, shrubs and other plants raised from seed last year; many kinds will, in hard frost, need some shelter.

Particularly the young seedling plants of the cedars of Lebanon, &c. the arbutus, or strawberry tree, and also the tenderer kinds of pines or firs, and the seedling plants of cypress, and such like kinds of young seedling evergreen plants, will stand in need of some shelter in time of severe frosts.

Therefore, at the approach of the first frost, the pots, tubs, or boxes, wherein the young cedars, or others of the like kind of seedlings are, should be placed under a common garden frame, and in the time of hard frosts the glasses put on, but they must be constantly open in mild weather.

But such seedling plants as are growing in beds, and require shelter in time of frost, should be covered at such times with mats.

First erecting some hoops a-cross the bed, and the mats to be drawn over them occasionally for the defence of the plants.

Likewise some of the more hardy kinds of young plants may be sheltered in bad weather, by laying some peas-straw, or other long litter, lightly over them; this will protect the tender tops and roots from the frost.

But this covering must not be suffered to remain longer than necessary to defend the plants.



*Propagating by Layers.*

You may also still make layers in open weather of such trees or shrubs as you desire to encrease.

This work of laying down the branches of shrubs or trees to propagate them is very easily performed; and there are a great many kinds of trees and shrubs to be encreased by this operation, the manner of performing which is this:

In the first place it must be remarked, that the young branches that were produced last summer, are the most proper parts to be layed, for these will put out roots much freer than the branches that are a year or two older. The ground must be dug about the tree that is to be layed, and as you go on bring down the branches, and fasten them in the ground with hooked pegs, observing to lay all the young wood on each branch into the earth, covering them three or four inches deep, and fastening each also with a peg.

Those which are layed in this or next month will be tolerably well rooted by next Michaelmas, and must then be separated from the tree, and planted in the nursery to get strength.

*Propagating Flowering Shrubs, &c. by Cuttings.*

Plant cuttings of honey-suckles in open weather, to raise some new plants.

Cuttings of many other kinds of flowering shrubs and trees, may also still be planted; and there is a vast number of plants, that may be raised by this method.

There is hardly any tree or shrub but what may be encreased either by this method, or by layers, or by suckers from the root.

But the manner of propagating trees and shrubs by cuttings is this:

The cuttings must be young shoots of the last year's growth, which must be cut with a sharp knife from the tree or shrub you desire to propagate; they must be from about six to ten or twelve inches long, according to their strength and manner of growth; let them be planted in a shady situation, and in rows a foot asunder, and little more than that distance from one another in the row.

Observe to plant every cutting near half its length in the ground.

*Plant Cuttings of Gooseberry and Currant-Trees, to raise a Supply of New Plants.*

This is the only method of propagating these shrubs so as to have the fruit in its true perfection : for those raised from cuttings, produce much larger and better tasted fruit, than those from suckers ; for those raised from suckers, always run much to wood, and the fruit is generally very small.

Therefore, when it is intended to raise a supply of these bushes, let them be raised by cuttings.

These cuttings must be shoots of the last summer's growth, and should be cut from healthful trees, and must be about ten, twelve, or fifteen inches in length, according to their growth. They must be planted in rows, twelve or fifteen inches asunder, and each cutting must be put full half way into the ground.

Note, these cuttings should be planted in a shady border ; they will make good shoots the following summer, and the third year from planting will bear fruit.

---

### The Green-House.

**G**REEN-HOUSE plants will require fresh air, at all times when the weather will permit.

In mild days, when the air is any thing clear, and the wind still, let the windows be opened a little about ten or eleven o'clock, and about two or three in the afternoon let them be shut down again. But the time of opening and the time they should be kept open, must always be determined by the weather ; for there are many changes of weather, sometimes, in one day, at this season.

In frosty weather, the windows must be kept constantly shut, and, if very severe, let the window-shutters, if any, also be shut, every night ; and even in the day time, when the frost is extremely severe. If the frost still threatens the plants, let mats be nailed up against all the windows, and remove the tender plants in front, as far from danger as possible.

Keep the plants perfectly clear from decayed leaves, and keep the floor and every part of the house clear and free from litter of every sort.

When the weather is foggy, or very wet, it will be proper to keep the green-house close.

Water must be given to such plants as you see require it, but let that be given in very moderate quantities, and always, if possible, take the opportunity of a mild day, and if sunny the better.

But very little water must be given at this season of the year, to any of the aloes, sedums, or any other of the succulent plants.

Let it likewise be observed, that such of the woody kind, as oranges, myrtles, &c. as you shall see necessary to water, should have but a very moderate quantity given them at any one time, at this season.

---

### The Hot-House.

#### *Pines.*

**T**HIS month the hot-house requires good attendance, for some of the pines will now, towards the end of the month, begin to shew fruit, and your assistance is at no time more necessary than when the fruit first appears; for if the heat of the bark-bed is not kept up at that time, the young fruit will receive a check more than many imagine. Notwithstanding the air of the house can be sufficiently warmed by the flues, yet these plants also require a brisk but moderate growing heat to their roots, but especially when the fruit is young, and without that, they will be much inferior in size to what they otherwise would have been.

Examine therefore the heat of the bark carefully, at this time; and if you find it very faint, take up all the pots, and let the bark be stirred up to the bottom. But before you proceed to this, let the bark be first well examined, and if found to be much wasted, that is, if much of it is become very small, or earthy, it will be adviseable to add at the same time a little new tan, working both well together. When that is done, let the pots be plunged again to their rims, in a regular manner as before. This will enliven the heat greatly, and if done in proper time, the young fruit will grow freely.

Let the fires be made very regular every evening and morning, and take care that they are not made too strong, for that would be of very bad consequence.



Water should be given to the plants about once a week, if there is good heat in the tan; but give them this article moderately, and let as little as possible fall into the heart or between their leaves at this season.

For the conveniency of watering the pines and other plants that are plunged in the bark, you should have a pipe made of tin: this should be in three parts, or different pieces, in order that it may be shortened or lengthened, as you see it convenient; one of these joints, or pieces, should have a funnel made at the largest end; for by pouring the water out of a handy watering pot, into the funnel, the water is conveyed to any of the pots in any part of the bed, with great ease to the gardener, and without pouring it into the heart of the plants, or in the least disturbing them.

A tub or cistern should be placed in the hot-house, to hold water; for the water should be in the house at least a night before you use it.

All other tender exotick plants in the hot-house or stove, should be supplied with water as they require it.

The woody kinds will require it often, but those that are of the succulent kind will require it but seldom, or, at least, but very little must be given them at a time.

Every plant in the hot-house or stove should be kept perfectly clean from dust or any sort of foulness; if any thing of that nature appears on their leaves, let them be washed with a sponge, or soft rag.

#### *Kidney-Beans raised in the Hot-House.*

Those who have the conveniency of a hot-house, may raise early kidney-beans with little trouble.

The method is this: fill some large pots or boxes with rich dry earth, and place them on the top of the wall that encloses the bark bed; but boxes are much the best for this purpose; they should be three feet and a half, or four feet long, nine inches deep, ten inches wide at top, and eight at bottom.

Draw a drill along the middle of the box, an inch deep; drop the beans in the drill, three inches a-part, and cover them a full inch.

If you use pots for that purpose, plant four beans in each pot, and plant them the same depth as in the boxes.

When the beans have sprouted, sprinkle the earth with a little water, which will help the plants to rise; when they

they are up, water them frequently. The speckled dwarf, and the liver-coloured kidney-bean, are the best for this purpose.

*Of Cucumbers in the Hot-House.*

Cucumbers may also be raised and brought to great perfection in the hot-house.

Prepare for that purpose some boxes, the same length and depth as for kidney-beans, but they should be a foot or fifteen inches broad: fill these with rich earth, and place them over the back or end flues, observing to place the bottom of the boxes a foot or more above the top of the flue.

But the best situation for these boxes, or troughs, for cucumber plants, is to place them, by means of supports, within about fifteen or eighteen inches of the top glasses, erecting them nearly under, or rather behind the place where the upper end of the glass and the back roof joins.

The seed may be sown in the boxes, observing to sow six or eight seeds in a small patch; and in a box of four feet long, there may be two or three patches; and when the plants are up, they may be thinned out, leaving three or four of the strongest plants in each place.

But some people raise the plants first in pots, plunged in the bark bed, and afterwards transplant them into the boxes.

When the plants have advanced to the outside of the boxes, you may fix up some laths to support the vines, which should be fastened to them. Let them have water frequently, for they will require it every other day at least.

*Of Strawberries in the Hot-House.*

Strawberries may be brought to perfection in the hot-house; and if a few early ones are desired, this is the time to begin.

The scarlet strawberries are the sort that will succeed best; they should be planted in pots, observing to rake them up with a ball of earth about their roots, but this should be done some time before you place them in the hot house.

If the plants for this purpose were to be potted at Michaelmas, or thereabout, it would be better.

Place the pots towards the front of the house, and let them have water frequently, especially when they are in bloom, and the fruit young.

*Of Flowering Plants in the Hot-House.*

In the hot-house you may likewise bring many kinds of flowers to blow at an early season, by placing pots or boxes with the plants therein, any time this month.

Particularly such as pots of roses and honey-suckles; pots of carnations, sweet williams, wall and stock, July flowers, &c. or pots or boxes of any kinds of bulbous roots.

**FEBRU.**



## F E B R U A R Y.

*Work to be done in the Kitchen Garden.**Cucumbers and Melons.*

**I**F the cucumber and melon plants, which were raised the beginning of the last month, have not suffered by any of the accidents that are attending on them at this season, you may make a new hot-bed to transplant them into for good. Provide for that purpose, the beginning of this month, as much new horse-dung as will make a bed for one or more frames, three feet and a half high.

The necessary quantity, is one tolerable cart load to every light; so, if for a three light frame, three load is requisite; about forty, or five or six and forty, large barrowfulls, are needful.

The dung being procured, let it be thrown up in a high heap, and let it lay eight, ten, or twelve days, according to the condition of it, or quantity you intend to use. If possible, let the heap be turned over once in the time, which will let the rank steam and strong stench of the dung off; and by mixing the parts together, it will mellow, and prepare the dung well, by which means it will work kindly, when made up in the bed; the heat will be steady and lasting, and not apt to burn.

The dung being thus prepared, proceed to making the bed: begin the bed by shaking some of the longest dung into the bottom, then take the dung as it comes to hand, and shake it equally on every part, and beat it down with the fork, from time to time, as you go on. In this manner let the bed be carried up neatly and even on each side, to the height of forty inches at least.

The bed being finished, put on the frame and lights, which will defend the bed from wet, and bring up the heat the sooner; raising the lights a little, that the steam may pass off. In a week after the bed is made, if it has settled unequal, take off the frame, and make the bed level, then immediately put on the frame again for good.

After

After this let the state of the bed be examined with good attention, and when you find the violent heat is over, you may lay in the earth, but be sure let the burning heat be over first.

The earth for this purpose should be rich, and it should also be quite dry; for that is a material article to be regarded at this season.

The earth proper for cucumbers, may be taken from any of the quarters, or pieces in the kitchen garden, provided it be naturally light and dry, and well enriched with dung; but this earth should be prepared three or four months before you want to use it; it should in a dry time, about Michaelmas, be brought in and thrown up in a heap, in a dry place where the sun comes, mixing it at the same time with good rotten dung, breaking and blending both well together: a due quantity of this should be carried into some shed, or other sheltered place, but open in the sun, at least a month before you want it, that it may be preserved perfectly dry.

The bed being in order, lay about half a bushel, or rather more, of earth, just in the middle of each light, raising each parcel of earth in a round hillock, twelve inches high: then let the spaces between the hillocks, and quite to the sides of the frame, be covered with the same sort of earth, two or three inches thick.

The reason for laying the earth in little hills, is because, if the bed should burn after the plants are in, you can more readily prevent the earth, and also the roots of the plants, from being burnt thereby, by drawing the earth away round the bottom of the hills as it burns, and supply the place still with more fresh mould; so that if the bed was to be moulded at once all over to the intended depth, the above precaution could not be practised.

When the earth is in, put on the glasses; and by the next day, the hillocks of earth will be warm: if they be, level the top of each a little, so that they may be about ten inches thick, or thereabouts; then begin to put in the plants.

Previous to this, having, last month, directed the plants to be pricked into small pots; then having some pots of the strongest plants ready, lay your hand on the surface of the pot, taking the stems of the plants carefully between your fingers; then turn the mouth of the pot downwards, and strike the edge gently on the frame; the plants with the

the ball of earth to their roots, will come out intire: then, making a hole in the middle of each hillock of earth, place one pot of plants, with the ball entire, in each hole, closing the earth well round the ball; and let the top of each ball be covered about an inch, laying the earth close round the stems of the plants.

The next day, about eleven or twelve o'clock, give the plants a little water, observing to use such as have stood in the bed long enough to take the chillness off; and let as little as possible touch their leaves and stems at this time.

The plants being now ridged out, the great article to be regarded, is, to keep up a constant growing heat in the bed, that the plants may be kept continually moving.

To do this, that is, to preserve the heat, it will, in about five or six days, or a week, after ridging out the plants, provided the heat of the bed is moderate, be very proper to lay some kind of dry long litter, such as waste hay, fern, straw, &c. round the bed, laying it near a foot thick, and as high as five or six inches up the sides of the frame; but this should be particularly practised if it is very wet weather, but more especially if driving rains, or snow, as also if there be cold piercing winds, all of which would chill the bud, and without the above precaution, would sometimes occasion such a sudden and great decay of the heat, as to prove the manifest destruction of the plants; whereas the above lining of litter will defend the bed, and preserve a fine heat till the dung begin naturally to decline, or decay of it self, which is generally in a month or five weeks after the bed is made, when the warmth of it must be renewed by adding a lining of fresh hot dung close to its sides.

Air must be admitted to them every day, when the weather is any thing favourable, by raising the glasses less, or in proportion to the sharpness or mildness of the outward air.

In giving the plants air, it is a good method, at this season, to fasten a mat across the ends of the lights, and let it hang down over the place where the air enters the frame; the mat will break the wind, and sharp air, before it reaches the plants, and yet there will be a due portion of air admitted, without exposing them directly to it; and there will also be full liberty to let the steam off.

Cover the glasses every night with mats; and if there be a strong heat, and great steam in the bed, let the lights be raised a little when you cover up, and let them remain.



so all night, and use the mat as above mentioned, to hang down before the place where the glasses are raised.

But for the first week or ten days after the plants are ridged out into this bed, you must mind that their roots have not too much heat, for it sometimes happens that a bed, after the mould and plants are in, will begin a fresh to heat so violently, as to burn the earth at the bottom of the hills; and, without some precaution is taken, the burning will soon reach the roots of the plants; therefore, for the first week or ten days, let the bottom of the hillock, be at times examined, by drawing away a little of the earth; and if any burning appear, remove the burnt earth, replace it with new, and, by drawing some of the earth away quite round, let the hills be kept as narrow as they will just stand, so as to support the plants; and so let them remain till the danger of burning is over; and then put the earth round them again.

When any of the roots of the plants begin to appear through the sides of the hillocks, you must lay some earth round them; about three days after, you may lay some more; and in two or three days after that, you may earth the bed all over, to the full thickness, so as to be equal with the tops of the hillocks.

But before you lay the fresh earth to the sides of the hills, let it first be a night in the frame, laying it up towards the sides, that it may acquire an equal degree of warmth with that in the bed; then it will not be in danger of chilling the roots of the plants.

#### *Lining the Beds.*

When you find the heat of the bed begins to grow faint, let a lining of good hot-dung be applied in due time to the back or front of the bed, or to both, if the heat is very low. The dung for this purpose should be prepared in the same manner as in making the bed.

Remember that if there was a lining of dry litter laid round the sides of the bed, to defend it from wet, &c. as before directed, this must first be removed, before you apply the lining of dung, for this must be piled up close to the sides of the bed.

The linings should be made eighteen inches wide, and should be raised about four or five inches higher than the dung of the bed; lay some earth on the top of the lining to keep the steam of the dung from coming up that way, which,

which, if it did, would be apt to enter the frame, at the place where the lights are raised to admit air, and prove of bad consequence to the plants.

*Of Stopping or Pruning the Plants.*

The plants should be stopped, if not done before, at the first joint; this will cause them to send out fruitful runners.

This operation should be performed when the plants have two rough leaves, and when the second rough leaf is about the breadth of a shilling before it is fully expanded; for the sooner it is done, the sooner the plants acquire strength, and put out fruitful runners.

It is to be done in the following manner:

You will see arising at the bottom of the second rough leaf, and as it were enclosed within it, the end of the runner. This appears like a small bud; which bud, or runner, we call the top of the plant, is now to be taken off close, and may be done either with the point of a pen-knife, or small scissars, or pinched off carefully with the finger and thumb; nay, when it is very small, it may be picked off with the point of a pin or needle; but, which ever way you take it off, be careful not to go so close as to wound the joint from whence it proceeds.

Having thus pruned, or stopped the plants at the first joint, they will by that means very quickly get strength, as will plainly appear in a few days; and in a week, or ten or twelve days after being thus treated, will each send forth two or three runners; which runners will probably shew fruit at their first, second, or third joints; for if the main or first runner was not to be stopped as above, it would perhaps run half a yard, or two feet, in length without putting out more runners to fill the frame, or without shewing a single fruit; so that it is upon these latteral shoots or runners, produced after stopping the plants, that the fruit is most likely first to appear in any tolerable time in the season: but let it be also observed that when the said latteral shoots have three joints, and that if any of them do not then shew fruit at either of the joints, it will be proper to pinch off the tops of such shoots at the third joint; which will promote their putting forth a supply of two or three new shoots; some or all of which will most likely be fruitful; and after this let the plants take their own course of growth.

For the further management of the bed and plants, see next month.



*Of sowing Cucumber and Melon Seed.*

As there may be many persons who did not begin last month to sow cucumbers for an early crop, it will here be proper to take notice, that the beginning of this month is still a good time to begin that work.

Those which are sown at that time, will, with good management, produce fruit in the end of March, or beginning of April; and those sown in the middle or the latter end of that month, will have fruit the end of April, and will bear plentifully in May.

The beginning of this month, is a very good time to begin to sow melons for a good crop in the frames.

The seed-bed which is to be made now, either for cucumbers or melons, must be made, and the seed sown, and the plants managed as directed last month.

But, in October, to be well supplied with either cucumber or melon plants, either to plant in new beds, or to have a reserve in case of accidents to any already planted out, it will be very proper to sow some seed at three different times this month.

These may be sown each time, in such beds or ridges, as are already made; and when fit to prick in, to be pricked in small pots, and plunged also in the back part of the same bed.

They may be kept there till wanted, either for new, or to supply any deficiency in the present, beds.

*Asparagus.*

Hot-beds for early asparagus may yet be made where required. Get some good dung for that purpose, and shake it up in a heap, and in eight or ten days after, it will be fit for making the bed. Make the bed a yard, or three feet and a half high; let the top be made level and smooth; then lay on the earth, observing to let it be six or seven inches thick in every part, making the surface even; but the frame is not yet to be put on; for the warmth of the bed being at first very strong, it might occasion it to heat too violently.

The bed being thus prepared, begin and place the roots on the surface, first raising a ridge of earth five or six inches high, at one end, to place the first course of roots against; then place them, one against another, as close as can be, till you have filled the bed, observing not



to lay the roots to the full extent of the bed, but leave a clear space of at least two inches on each side, to receive a wall of earth against the outside root.

The whole being planted, then get some pretty moist earth, and let this be banked up close against the outside roots, arising an inch or two above their crowns; this done, cover the crowns of the roots all over with light earth, about two inches thick; which concludes the work till the buds begin to appear through the surface.

When the buds appear through the earth, lay on three inches depth of more earth, and, by this time, there will be five inches of earth over the top of the roots, then bank up a little more moist earth against the outsides as above. This being done, then prepare to put on the frame and lights.

Before you put on the frame, let a quantity of sharp pointed stakes, about two feet long, be procured; and also some thick bands, or ropes of straw or hay. These hay or straw bands, are, by means of the stakes, to be fixed and carried quite round the top of the bed, from the surface of the dung to that of the earth, and are for the frame to rest upon, to secure the earth which was banked up against the outside roots, fixing the bands properly with the above stakes, thrusting them down at due distances into the bed so far as the top of the stakes to be level with the surface of the earth. This done, set on the frame, resting it upon the band of straw, and put on the the glasses.

The upper part of the straw, or hay, must be level with the surface of the earth.

The roots for this purpose should be three years old, and never more than four; a frame will contain in each light, three or four hundred roots, and upwards, if properly placed.

Let it be observed that during the time the bed is without the frame, if there should happen to fall much rain or snow, to cover it all over with a good thickness of straw, or mats, or otherwise to put on the frame and lights.

It must be remarked that for the first week or ten days after the bed is made and the roots planted, that the state of its warmth should be every day carefully examined; for that purpose thrust two long sticks down betwixt the roots into the dung, in different parts of the bed; when upon drawing up the sticks, two or three times a day, and feeling the lower end, you can readily judge of the degree

of heat: when it is found to be so violent as to threaten to burn the earth and scorch the roots, it will in that case be adviseable to pour a large quantity of water all over the top of the bed, sufficient to penetrate considerably down into the dung; and it will be likewise proper to bore with a long thick stake several wide holes in the dung on each side of the bed to let in the air, and to let the rank steam and burning quality of the dung pass off more freely; but when the heat is become moderate, the holes must be closed again.

Likewise observe when the heat is moderate, it will be very proper to lay a quantity of dry long litter round the sides of the bed, which will preserve a fine kindly growing heat, and will defend the bed from being chilled by heavy rains, snow, &c.

In the next place observe when the heat of the bed begins to decline or fall off, you should prepare to renew it as soon as possible, which is to be done by applying a lining of hot dung to the sides of it, as directed for cucumber or melon beds.

When there happens at any time after the frame is on, to be much steam in the bed, the lights should be now and then raised about an inch, to let it pass freely away.

Continue to cover the glasses every night, and in bad weather with mats or straw.

The bed, if made and managed as directed, will begin to produce asparagus very thick in four or five weeks; and provided the heat be kept up, will continue producing buds in great plenty for about three weeks. A bed for a three light frame will for that time produce three or four hundred buds a week.

The method of gathering the asparagus in hot-beds, is to thrust your finger down gently into the earth, and break the bud off close to the roots, which they will readily do; but the cutting them with a knife, as practised in the natural ground, would, by reason of the buds coming up so very thick one under another, destroy as many or more than you gather.

When it is intended to have a constant supply of asparagus in the winter and spring season, till that in the natural ground comes in, you should make a new hot-bed every three weeks.

A quantity of fresh plants must also be procured for every new bed; for those which have been once forced in a hot-bed, are not fit for any use afterwards, either in a hot-bed or natural ground.



Those persons who would raise plants for forcing, should sow some seed every year, observing when the plants are one year old, to transplant them into an open spot, in rows, nine inches asunder, and about the same distance in the row; when they have two summers growth, they are then fit to be taken up for forcing: but if they stand three years before you take them up, they will produce much larger buds.

It is necessary to have three different pieces of ground always employed at the same time with asparagus plants for the above purpose; that is, one piece for the seed-bed with seedling plants, which should never stand longer than one year before transplanted; the other two pieces to be with transplanted plants; one to be a year's growth from the time of planting before the other; by which method of sowing a quantity of seed, and planting a quantity of plants every spring, you will, after the first three years, obtain a fresh piece of plants every year, fit for forcing.

The season to sow the seed is the last week in February, or first fortnight in March; it should be sown in a spot of light rich ground; sow it tolerably thick and tread it in, and spread some earth upon the alley, over it; and then rake the surface of the bed smooth.

The season to transplant the plants from the seed is in March, observing the method as directed in that month.

The season to begin to make hot-beds for forcing these plants, is according to the time you desire to have the plants fit for use; for instance, if you desire them at Christmas, to begin in the second or third week in November.

Such persons as do not choose to raise the plants themselves for forcing, or such as desire to be furnished with plants for that purpose till their own is ready, may in either case be furnished with them, at most of the kitchen gardeners near great cities, but particularly those near London, many of which raise great quantities purposely for sale, and at a fit age for forcing.

They sell them generally by the rod, and about ten or twelve shillings is the price; there are generally between three and four hundred roots in a rod, and two and a half, or three rods at most, is sufficient for a three light frame.

These plants, if properly packed up in hampers or boxes with straw, may be conveyed to a great distance; I have had them come sixty miles in the winter season for



forcing, when they have come very safe, and produced buds plentifully.

#### *Mushrooms.*

Take care that the mushroom-beds are well defended from heavy rains and frost; both of which would destroy the spawn.

The covering of straw should never be less than twelve or fifteen inches thick, on every part of the bed. If the wet at any time has penetrated quite through any part of the covering, let the wet straw be removed, and replaced with some that is clean and dry.

For the particular management of these beds, see September.

#### *Kidney-Beans.*

The beginning of this month you may make a hot-bed for some early kidney-beans.

Prepare for that purpose, some new horse-dung, as directed for cucumber and other hot-beds; then let the beds be made about two feet and a half high, and long enough for one or more frames. Make the surface of the bed even and smooth, and put on the frame. When the heat is moderate, let the bed be covered with rich light earth, seven or eight inches thick; then draw drills from the back to the front of the frame, a foot asunder, and an inch deep. Drop the beans therein, about three inches a-part, and cover them an inch.

The best for this purpose, is the yellow, or liver-coloured kidney-bean, because they come earlier, and do not run so strong or rampant as the other sorts; you may also plant the speckled dwarf kind, which will continue longer in bearing than the other sorts. When the plants begin to appear, raise the lights every day, to admit air, which will strengthen them. When they are up, let them have moderate sprinklings of water at times.

For their further management, see the article kidney-beans in the work of March.

#### *Small Salletting.*

Sow the different sorts of small-salletting once a week, or ten days, such as oresses, mustard, radish, rape, and lettuce, &c.

These small herbs, if open mild weather, may now be sown in beds or borders of natural earth, in the common

grounds; but, provided you have the conveniency, it will, notwithstanding, be proper to shelter the bed with a frame and lights, or with bell or hand-glasses; or, where these are wanting, you may sow the seeds on warm borders, and shelter them at night, and in bad weather, with a covering of mats.

Choose for these seeds a spot of dry, light, ground, and in digging it, let the earth be well broken, and also well raked, to make the earth fine, and the surface smooth: then draw shallow drills from north to south, about three inches asunder; sow the seed pretty thick, and cover it about a quarter of an inch deep with the earth; and if it is intended to cover with glasses, let them be put on; and when the plants come up, give air by raising the lights, or by taking them off in fine days.

But if the weather should now prove very cold, such as frost, snow, or cold rains, and that a constant supply of these small herbs are wanted, or that they are wanted in a hurry or at any particular time, it will, for the greater certainty of procuring them, be still proper, where it can be obtained, to raise them in a slight hot-bed.

Make the bed with fresh horse-dung, about fifteen inches high, set on the frame, and cover the bed with earth, four or five inches thick.

Sow the seed on the surface, each sort separate; and sift as much earth over as will just cover it; put on the lights, and when the plants appear, give plenty of air.

About the middle of the month, if open and mild weather, you may begin to sow small-salleting on warm borders, in the open ground; and if the weather continue mild, it will succeed tolerably well without any covering.

When these plants, both under cover and in the open ground, begin to come up, they sometimes raise the earth in a kind of cake upon their tops, which consequently retards their growth; they may be greatly assisted by brushing or whisking the earth lightly with your hand, or with the end of a small slender birch broom, which will break, separate, and scatter the earth; after which the plants will shoot freely, and rise regularly in every part.

#### *Colliflowers.*

Colliflower-plants in frames, should have the free air every mild day, by taking the glasses entirely off.

About



About the end of the month, you may transplant some of the strongest plants, into the place where they are to remain. Plant them in a rich spot of ground, allowing them thirty inches, or a yard distance each way.

Colliflowers under hand or bell-glasses, should also be thinned out, when there are too many; that is, if there are more than one plant under each glass, let all above that number be taken away.

Observe to take up the weakest, and let one of the strongest remain under each glass, and draw some earth up round their stems at the same time. The plants which are taken up should be planted in another spot of ground, allowing them the same distance as above.

In transplanting colliflowers, it is the custom with such gardeners as are obliged to make the most of their ground, to sow, on the same piece, a crop of spinnage and radishes, which turns out to good account, without in the least retarding the growth of the colliflower-plants; for by the time they begin to advance any thing considerably, the radishes and spinnage will all be cleared off for use.

Sow colliflower-seed the beginning of this month, to raise some plants to succeed the early crop; but in order to bring the plants up soon, and to forward them twelve days or a fortnight in their growth, it will be proper to sow these in a slight hot-bed.

Make the bed about twenty inches thick of dung, and put a frame on; then lay four or five inches thick of rich earth over the bed.

Sow the seed on the surface, cover it with light earth, about a quarter of an inch thick, and then put the glass on.

When the plants appear, let them have air every day, by raising the glass a considerable height; and in mild weather the lights may be taken entirely off in the day-time, for they must not be kept too close, for that would draw them up weak.

But where there is not the convenience of a frame for the above bed, you may cover it on nights, and in bad weather with mats, fixing hoops, long sticks, or poles, arch-ways a-cross, and over these draw the mats.

Sprinkle them with water frequently, if moderate showers of rain do not fall.

Transplant



*Transplant Cabbages.*

Early sugar-loaf cabbages, and other cabbage-plants, should be transplanted this month where they are to remain. If your plants are pretty strong, they may, if mild open weather, be planted out the beginning of the month; but if they are weakly, or much cut by the frost, do not put them out before the end of this month, or beginning of March.

Choose a piece of good ground for these plants, in an open situation, and let some rotten dung be dug in. Put in the plants in rows, two feet and a half asunder, and allow the same distance between the rows.

*Sow Cabbages and Savoy.*

Sow a little cabbage-seed, about the middle or latter end of the month, for autumn use. These will succeed the early plants, for they will be fit to cut in August and September.

But if the winter has been severe, and destroyed many of the plants which were sown last August, to stand the winter for an early crop, it will, in that case, be proper to sow some of the early seed, as soon in the month as the weather will permit; and if forwarded by sowing them in a slight hot bed, it would be a great advantage.

Savoy-seed may be sown, for the first time, about the end of the month.

Those which are sown now, will be ready in September, and they will be finely cabbaged by October, and will continue good till the end of November.

Cabbages and savoy for seed may be planted this month, if not done before.

Take up the plants in a dry day, and hang them up in a dry place, with their heads downwards, for three or four days, to drain the moisture off; then clear off all the large leaves, and plant them three feet asunder each way: plant them so deep that no part but the crown of the head may appear.

*Celery.*

About the middle, or towards the latter end of the month, prepare a small bed of light rich earth in a warm border, to sow some celery-seed in, for an early crop.

Break the earth very fine, and rake the surface smooth; sow the seed therein, but not too thick, and cover it with light earth, near a quarter of an inch.

But those who desire to have the plants come in pretty forward, should sow the seed in a slight hot-bed, covering it with glasses, or, where these are not, with mats, every night; at other times occasionally.

The plants from this sowing come in for use in July.

There should not be many of these early sown plants planted out, but only just a few to come in before the general crop; for they will soon pipe and run up for seed.

#### *Radishes.*

Dig a warm border, the beginning of this month, to sow some radish-seed in. Let some of the short-topped radish-seed be sown now, to succeed those of the same sort, that were sown last month.

Dig another piece at the same time, and sow it with salmon radish-seed; they will succeed the short tops. About a fortnight or three weeks after, let some more of both sorts be sown, that there may be a regular supply of these roots in their proper season.

You may sow among the radish a sprinkling of spinnage and lettuce seed; the spinnage will come in after the radish, and the lettuce after the spinnage.

#### *Spinnage.*

Sow spinnage about the beginning of this month, if mild weather; let some good ground be got ready for this seed, and sow it thin and regular, and rake it in.

Spinnage may be sown between rows of cabbages, and beans, or the like, if ground be scarce. The smooth seeded kind is the best to sow now, and if desired to have a constant supply, let the sowings be repeated every fortnight or three weeks.

#### *Lettuces.*

About the beginning of this month, if the weather is mild, you may sow several sorts of lettuce-feed, on warm borders. The Coss and Silesia are the best kinds to sow now; you may also sow some of the cabbage and imperial Lettuces: let the seeds be sown tolerably thick, and rake them in lightly as soon as sown.

If the weather should be cold, at the beginning of the month, you may sow coss, or other lettuce-seed, in a frame, and cover them occasionally; observing that when they are of due size to be transplanted, in the full ground.

But in order to have a few come in pretty forward for transplanting, there may be a little green coss sown on a gentle hot-bed, which will be ready to transplant a fortnight sooner than those in the open ground.

The green coss lettuce is the hardest, and comes in soonest for use, and is the best sort to sow early.

Lettuces which have stood the winter in warm borders, or in frames, should, about the end of this month, be thinned out where they stand too close; they should be thinned regularly, leaving them a foot distant each way; for they will require so much room to grow to their full size: the plants which are drawn out, should be planted in an open spot of rich ground, a foot distant every way.

#### *Carrots, and Parsneps.*

Prepare some ground, about the middle, or latter end of this month, to sow carrots, and parsneps.

These roots grow largest in light ground, and the farther from trees the better; for they thrive best in an open exposure. Let the ground be trenched one full spade deep, at least, and a shoveling; let the clods be well broken, and lay the surface even.

Sow the seed in a dry, calm day, with an even hand, each on separate pieces, and not too thick; as soon as sown tread them even in with the feet, pretty close together; then rake the ground.

Plant carrots, parsneps, and beets, for seed; let them be planted in rows two feet asunder.

#### *Beets.*

This is now the time to sow beets, both of the red, green and white kind.

Beet-seed being pretty large, it will, in order that it may be properly buried, be best to sow it in drills.

The manner of sowing it is to draw with a hoe, drills about an inch deep, and ten or twelve inches asunder; sow the seed in the drills thinly, and draw the earth over it about an inch thick.

The



The red and white sort must be sown separate, for it is the root of the red sort that is only used, and the leaves of the white and green kinds.

But if you do not chuse to sow the seed in drills it should be sown in a piece of ground, whose surface lies pretty rough, then tread it all over, and rake it with a large rake; the seed may be buried that way, although not so regular as above.

### *Onions and Leeks.*

About the middle, or latter end of this month, you may get some ground ready for sowing onions and leeks.

Choose a piece for each where the ground is good, and not too wet; and if you dig some good rotten dung in, it will be of great advantage to the plants. Sow these seeds as equally as possible, and each sort separate, and rake them in.

There may be a thin sprinkling of leek-seed sown with the onions, the onions being generally at their full growth and drawn off in the beginning of August; the leeks will then have full scope, and grow to a large size.

But when it is intended to sow leeks, in order to be afterwards transplanted into another spot, they should be sown separately, and pretty thick, in beds about four feet broad.

The plants are generally fit to transplant in June and July. Observe the directions there given.

In sowing onions and leeks, let the same rule be observed now as directed in March; that is, with regard to the necessity of treading and not treading in the seed, and of the necessity in particular cases of dividing the ground into beds, &c.

### *Beans.*

Dig an open spot of ground the beginning of this month for a crop of beans. Windsor and Sandwich, and other large beans, are the properest to plant at this season. Plant these large beans in rows a full yard asunder, and plant them six inches distant in the row.

You may also plant any of the smaller kinds of beans, if required in families. The mazagan is a small but sweet bean, and a great bearer, and may be planted now either in the garden, or in the field.

*Peas.*

Sow a principal crop of peas the beginning of this month, in an open piece of ground. If you intend to sow the marrowfat, and other large peas, you should draw drills for them, three feet and a half asunder; but if you intend to set sticks for these large kinds of peas to run up, you must draw drills four feet asunder, to sow them in.

Hottspur, and other smaller kinds of peas, should be sown in drills a yard asunder; and if you intend to place sticks for them to run upon, allow forty inches between the rows.

Beans and peas which are up, and advanced any considerable height, should have earth drawn up to their stems, which will strengthen them, and protect them from frost. Let this be done in a mild dry day.

*Scorzonera, Salsify, and Hamburg Parsley.*

The latter end of the month, you may sow scorzonera, salsify, and Hamburg parsley.

These plants are in some families much esteemed for their roots, which are the only part of those plants which are eaten.

The roots run pretty deep in the ground, in the manner of carrots and parsneps, and are boiled and eaten either alone or with meat, like young carrots, &c.

These are fit for use from July till March.

Dig a piece for each where the ground is light, and in an open situation. Sow the seed thin and even, on separate spots, and rake them in equally.

*- Burage, Burnet, Loveage, Angelica, &c.*

You may sow burage, burnet, clary, and marigolds, about the middle, or any time of this month, when the weather is open.

Angelica, loveage, and cardus, may also be sown at the same time.

But the angelica and loveage, grow more certainly when sown in Autumn; that is, in August or September; then they will not fail to come up in the Spring; but, if sown in the Spring, they are apt to come up thin and straggling.

These plants thrive best in moist ground.

Sow the above seeds thin, and each sort separately, on small spots, and rake them in evenly.

*Thyme,*



*Thyme, Marjoram, Savory and Hyssop.*

Thyme, marjoram, hyssop, and savory, may be sown about the latter end of this month. Let these be sown on a warm spot of light rich ground, and where it is not wet.

*Parsley, Coriander, and Chervil.*

Parsley, coriander, and chervil, may be sown any time this month, when the weather is open. Draw some shallow drills, and sow the seeds in thin, and cover them rather more than a quarter of an inch with mould, especially the coriander-seed.

*Garlick and Shallots.*

Prepare some beds to plant garlick and shallots in. Let the beds be four feet wide, and plant the roots in rows length-wise in the beds; nine inches should be allowed between the rows: the roots should be planted six inches distant from each other in the row, and about three inches deep.

They may be planted either with a dibble, or in drills drawn with a hoe.

*Potatoes.*

Potatoes may be planted, about the middle, or latter end, of this month, if open weather.

These roots are propagated by planting their roots either whole, or in pieces. It will be best to procure tolerable large roots, and divide, or cut each into two, three, or more pieces, minding that every piece be furnished with one or two buds, or eyes.

They are to be planted in rows, eighteen inches or two feet asunder; and let them be a foot or fifteen inches distant from each other in the row, and plant them about five or six inches deep.

Potatoes may be planted as you dig or plough the ground, by placing them in the trenches, or furrows, allowing them the distances above-mentioned; or they may be planted with a dibble, after the ground is dug. But for the particular method of planting these roots, see the Kitchen Garden for March.

*Plant Horse-Radish.*

This root is propagated by planting pieces or cuttings of the old roots; or otherwise by planting the tops of the roots.



The method is this: the ground must be dug or trenched, at least fifteen inches deep; and, if the ground is quite light, so as it will in digging readily fall to pieces, you may plant the sets as you proceed in digging the ground; that is, open a trench at one end, fifteen inches wide, and one good spade deep, and one shoveling; then either get some knotty roots, and cut them into pieces, about an inch or two in length, observing that each piece be furnished with one or two eyes or buds; or if you can procure tops or crowns enough, it will still be better. These may be cut from the tops of small off-sets, which arise from the sides of the main roots, and also from the tops of the old roots, when you take them up for use.

These off-sets and crowns, should be cut off about two inches long, preserving the top of each intire.

Being furnished with a quantity of cuttings and crowns, place or stick them with the crowns upwards in the earth, in a row along the bottom of the trench, at six inches distance; then dig the next trench the same width and depth, throwing the earth into the first trench, over the plants; then mark out another trench, as above, and pare off the top into the open trench; place the roots upon that, and cover them as above, and so on to the end.

But, as above hinted, if the ground be stiff, or is not quite light and mellow, so as it will readily fall to bits on digging, it will be better first to trench the ground as above, and then to plant the sets with a dibble, in the following manner.

The ground being trenched, and laid level, range your line; and then, having a long dibble, with this to make holes, about fifteen inches deep, being careful to make the holes all an equal depth; which you may readily do, by making a mark upon the dibble, fifteen inches from the lower end, so thrusting it always down to that mark, making the holes six inches asunder, dropping as you go on, one set or cutting in each hole, taking care to fill or close the holes up properly with the earth.

By practising either of the above methods of planting horse-radish, the root will be long, perfectly straight, large and smooth.

When the whole is planted, the ground may then be sown with spinnage, which will come off time enough to give the radish full room to grow; for these will not come

up till the beginning or middle of May, when the spinage will be mostly all gathered.

They must be kept clean from weeds; for about a month or six weeks after that, the leaves will cover the ground, and prevent the growth of weeds.

In the Autumn after planting, that is, about Michaelmas, you may begin to take up some of the roots for use; but it will be advisable to let the principal part stand to have another summer's growth, when they will be very fine and large.

When you take up these roots, it should be done regularly, not digging up a stick or root here and there, as we often see practised in private gardens, but beginning at the first row, and proceeding from row to row, according as you want it; observing to throw out a trench along, close to the row of roots, and as deep as the root goes, but not to loosen the bottom, which is called the stool. Having thus cleared the earth away quite to the stool, or bottom of the root, then with a knife, cut the root off level, close to where it proceeds from.

This stool must be left in the ground undisturbed; for these yield a supply of fine roots the succeeding year, and when these are dug up, and the old stool remaining produces another supply the year after; and so, if permitted to stand, continue as often as the produce is gathered, to produce a fresh supply the succeeding season, and in that manner continue producing a full crop of fine roots for many years.

But care must be taken when taking up the roots, always to clear the stool likewise from all straggling or small roots whatever, and, in the summer season, to draw up all small plants rising between the rows.

## The Fruit Garden.

### *Pruning.*

**P**RUNING of peaches, nectarines, and apricots, should be forwarded as much as possible this month, before the blossom-buds are far advanced. When the buds of these trees are much swelled before they are pruned and nailed, many of them will be unavoidably rubbed off in performing that work.



Examine these trees well, and cut away all such parts as are useless: that is, such as have advanced a considerable length, and produce no young shoots, nor support branches that do.

The best of the last year's shoots, must be left at due and equal distances, in every part where possible: for these bear the fruit to be expected next summer. Five or six inches asunder is a proper distance. They must be shortened, each according to its strength.

Shoots of a vigorous growth should be shortened but little; that is, you may cut off about one fourth of its original length: those of a moderate growth should be shortened more in proportion; that is, cut off about one third; for instance, a shoot of eighteen inches may be shortened to twelve, or thereabouts; and observe the same in proportion, according to the different lengths of the shoots.

Nail the shoots or branches straight, and close to the wall, at the distance of five or six inches from each other.

For the more particular method of pruning these trees, see the work of the fruit garden, in January.

And for the method of pruning and ordering young trees of these sorts; that is, such as are one, two, and three years old, from the budding; see the work of the fruit garden, both in January and March.

#### *Prune Dwarf Apples, Pears, &c.*

Prune apples, pears, plums, and cherries, against walls, or on espaliers, and, if possible, let the whole of them be finished this month.

In pruning these trees, observe, as directed last month, that the branches, in general, should be trained close and straight to the wall, or espalier, not shortening their ends, but still continue training each at full length, and laying them about six inches asunder.

In the next place, observe for one thing, that if the branches be any where much crowded (that is, if the bearing, or principal branches, lie closer than five or six inches from one another) some should be taken out; observing in this case, to take off such as are worst situated; and particularly such as appear to be the most unlikely to bear, by being either too old, or, at least, not well furnished with fruit spurs and studs, as mentioned last month, or not supporting branches furnished with such spurs. Such, I say, where the trees are crowded on the branches, should



should now be chinned out; likewise observe, that when you want to make room in any particular part of the tree, to train more regularly one or more branches, which are evidently well adapted for bearing, room must be made for them, by cutting out such old or barren branches as above described.

If the branches, in general have been laid too close, let some of the worst, as above directed, be here and there taken out.

When any old or large branches are to be taken out, let them be cut off close to the place from whence they arise, or to any convenient branch which they support, and which you shall think convenient to leave; for in cutting off old or young branches, never leave any stump.

After taking out any large branches, let such of those which remain near that part, be unnailed, &c. in order to be brought higher or lower, as you shall see necessary, to train them all at equal distances; or when there are several large branches to be taken out in different parts, the whole tree should be unnailed, then you can readily train the whole in exact order.

Next, let it be observed, that where a supply of wood is wanting, leave some of the best situated of the last summer's shoots, such as directed to be left in the summer pruning, to fill up the vacancies. Where the last year's shoots are not wanted for the above purpose, let every one that is more than two or three inches long, be cut off close to the place from whence they proceed, leaving no spurs but what are naturally produced. The proper fruit spurs are such as are described last month, being produced on the sides of the branches, and are from about half an inch to two or three in length.

Observe, that all such fruit spurs, which are more than three or four inches long, and particularly those which advance in a foreright direction, should be displaced, taking them off close.

The shoots or branches, of these trees, must not be shortened, but left at full length: in that manner let each be trained close, and even to the wall, &c. at six inches distance from each other.

For the management of young trees of these sorts, see the work of the fruit garden, in January and March.

Pruning

*Prune Standard Fruit-Trees.*

Standard fruit-trees, in the orchard or garden, may be pruned any time this month; observing to cut from these trees all dead wood, and such very old branches as do not promise to bear well, and crowd the others, and all such as grow in a rambling manner a-cross the others. Where the branches in general are crowded, let some be cut away in a regular manner, so that the principal branches may stand clear of each other. Take care that all the branches are cleared from moss, if there be any on them.

*Prune Vines.*

Vines may be pruned now, but the sooner that work is done the better. In pruning of vines, observe to cut out the old naked branches, to make room for the bearing wood.

The last year's shoots are properly the bearing wood; that is, they produce shoots the ensuing summer, and these shoots bear fruit the same season: care must therefore be taken to leave a proper supply of the strongest of the last year's shoots in every part of the tree; and take care always to have a succession of young wood coming up regularly from and towards the bottom of the wall.

Leave the branches or shoots in general at equal distances, at least eight or nine inches, from each other.

Every shoot must be shortened according to its strength, some to three, four, or five eyes long, and let the cut be made sloping about an inch above and behind the eye.

Let every branch and shoot be trained strait and close to the wall, &c. at equal distances from each other, none closer than the distances above mentioned.

But for the particular method of the winter ordering these trees, see the work of March and November.

*Prune Gooseberry and Currant-Trees.*

Gooseberries and currants should be pruned now, if that work was omitted in the former month. In pruning these shrubs, observe to cut away all ill growing branches; that is, such as grow a-cross, or advance in a straggling manner from the rest.

Where the branches in general stand so close as to interfere with each other, let them be thinned out to proper and equal distances, so that every branch may stand clear

of the other. Leave the branches in general seven or eight inches from each other, at least.

Let these shrubs be always trained with one stem, at least a foot from the ground, as directed the former month.

Gooseberry and currant-trees may be planted any time in this month, where required. Seven or eight feet asunder, is the proper distance, and they should never be planted closer.

For the method of propagating these, see the work of the nursery in this, or some other of the winter and spring months.

### *Raspberries.*

Raspberries, where they remain unpruned, should, if possible, be pruned this month. In pruning raspberries, observe to clear away all the old or dead wood which bore the fruit last year, and to leave three of the strongest of the last year's shoots, standing on each root, to bear fruit the next summer: all above that number, on every root, must be cut away close to the surface of the ground, and all straggling shoots between the rows must also be taken away.

Each of the shoots which are left, should be shortened, observing to cut off about one third, or one fourth, of their original length.

The shoots of each root may be afterwards plaited together, and in that method they support one another, so as not to be borne down in summer by the weight of heavy rains, or violent winds.

When you have finished pruning, dig the ground between the plants, observing, as you dig, to clear away all straggling roots, and leave none but such as belong to the shoots which are left to bear.

New plantations of raspberries, may be made this month where wanted. Let them be planted in rows, four feet asunder, and let the plants be three feet distant from each other in the rows.

### *Strawberries.*

Strawberries should now be cleaned, and have their spring dressing. First pull or cut off all the strings or runners from the plants, and clear the beds from weeds and litter of every sort; then loosen the ground between, and about the plants, and at the same time add a little fresh earth between the rows, and close round every plant: this will



will strengthen them, and make the plants flower strong, and produce large fruit.

Strawberries may be planted now, but the best time is in August, or beginning of September; then they bear fruit the summer after; not but those planted now will take root freely, but will not bear any fruit to signify till next year.

Prepare for these plants a piece of good ground; if loamy the better, and let some good rotten dung be dug in.

Divide the ground into beds four feet wide, with alleys at least eighteen inches wide, between them. Plant the strawberries of the scarlet kind in rows, one foot three inches asunder, and allow the same distance between plant and plant in the rows.

But the large kind of strawberries, such as the hautboy and chilli, &c. should be planted eighteen inches distance every way.

The alpin, or prolifick strawberry, should likewise be planted fifteen or eighteen inches distance every way, that there may be room for their runners to spread and take root; for this kind of strawberry is different in its manner of bearing from the others; for the runners which they send forth in summer take root at every joint, and each of the said joints produce blossom and ripe fruit the same season, as these runners generally yield the largest and fairest fruit, which are generally in their utmost perfection in August and September.

But this strawberry generally begins to bear in June, with the other sorts, but it continues bearing from that time till November, and sometimes till Christmas, provided the weather continues open till that time.

If you have strawberries in hot-beds, let the glasses be raised a little every day, when the weather is any thing favourable, to admit air to them, and let the plants have a moderate watering every other day.

If the heat of the beds fall off much, you should renew it, by applying a lining of hot dung to one or both sides of the bed, as you see it necessary. Cover the glasses every night with mats, or other covering.

#### *Planting Fruit-Trees.*

Fruit-trees of all sorts, may be planted any time this month, when the weather is open.

Let every kind be planted at proper distances, so that they may have room to grow without interfering with each

other, in the space of a few years, which is often the case in many gardens.

Peaches, nectarines, and apricots, should never be planted closer than fifteen feet from each other, and not more than sixteen feet asunder.

Apples, and pears, for walls or espaliers, should be planted eighteen feet asunder, but twenty will not be too much. And some people plant apple and pear trees twenty-five feet asunder; but twenty feet at most, will do tolerably well.

But plums, and cherry trees, need not be planted more than fifteen or sixteen feet asunder; but eighteen feet at most, is a sufficient distance.

The above distances appear a great way when the trees are first planted; but in seven years time, the advantage in allowing them proper room will appear.

For the particular soil and situation proper for the different kinds, see the work of the fruit-garden in November.

Standard fruit trees should be allowed full thirty feet distance, and let none be planted closer than that in a garden.

If an orchard is to be planted, let the trees be thirty feet distant from each other, at least, every way.

The rule which we advise, is to plant standard apples and pears at thirty or thirty-five feet distance, every way; and standard cherries, and plums, twenty-five feet apart; and quinces and medlars, twenty feet.

Walnuts and chesnuts, should be planted thirty-five or forty feet apart.

Pilberts and almonds, to be set fifteen feet asunder.

Mulberry trees, twenty-five feet distance.

In planting fruit trees of any kind, let care be taken that they are not planted too deep, for that is a more material article than many gardeners imagine. Open for each tree a hole, wide enough to receive the roots freely, without pressing against the sides.

Then, having the trees ready, let the ends of their roots be pruned, and cut off such roots as are broken or bruised; then set the tree in the hole, and see that all the roots spread freely as they should do.

Break the earth well, and throw it in equally about the roots, and shake the tree gently that the earth may fall in close between the roots and fibres; when the earth is all in, tread the surface gently, to fix the tree properly.

*Support.*



*Support all new planted Trees.*

Support all new planted standard trees with stakes, as soon as they are planted, that they may not be rocked about by the wind, which would greatly retard their taking root.

For the method of propagating mulberry, quince, medlar, chesnut, walnut, almond, and filbert trees, see the fruit garden and nursery, in November.

Dwarf trees must also be secured from the power of the wind, by fastening them to the wall; and if espaliers, fasten them to the rails.

*Dressing Fruit-Tree Borders.*

Let all the fruit tree borders be neatly dug, when you have finished pruning and nailing; or if they have been dug before, let the surface be loosened, where it has been trampled in doing the necessary work about the trees.

This will be of service to the trees, and the borders will appear clean and neat, and they will be ready to sow or plant with what you think necessary.

*Grafting.*

Grafting may be begun about the latter end of the month, if mild weather. Plums, pears and cherries, may then be grafted, and you may also graft apples. For the method of grafting, see the work of the nursery for this month.

## The Pleasure, or Flower Garden.

*Tender annual Flowers.*

**A**BOUT the middle, or towards the latter end of this month, it will be time to begin to prepare for sowing some of the more curious kinds of annuals.

The choicest kinds are the double balsams, cockscombs, and tricolors, the globe aramantus, marvel of Peru, diamond ficoides, orice plant, egg plant and China asters, all these require the assistance of a hot-bed to bring them forward, in order that they may blow early, and in some tolerable perfection.

Therefore, about the middle of this month, provide some new horse-dung, and let this be thrown up in a heap, and



and in eight or ten days it will be in good condition to make the bed.

Let the bed be made about two feet and a half thick of dung, making the top level, and then set on the frame and glass.

When the burning heat of the bed is over, lay on the earth, observing that the earth for this use must be rich, light, and perfectly dry, and must be broken pretty small by rubbing it between the hands; the depth of earth on the bed must be about five or six inches, making the surface level and smooth.

The seed must then be sown on the surface, observing to sow each sort separate, and cover them about a quarter of an inch deep with light earth that hath been sifted; or you may draw some shallow drills from the back to the front of the bed, and sow the seeds therein, and cover them as above.

When the plants appear, admit fresh air to them every day when the weather is any thing mild, and let them have now and then little sprinklings of water. Mind to cover the glass every night with a mat.

The further management of these plants may be seen in the work of the pleasure garden in March.

#### *Sow Ten Week Stocks.*

The ten week stock is a pretty annual, none make a more agreeable appearance in the borders or clumps, and it continues a long time in bloom. It is now time, towards the latter end of this month, to sow a little of the seed, to raise a few plants to blow early in the summer.

This seed may either be sown in a slight hot-bed, or in a warm border or bed of natural earth, for the plants are tolerably hardy; but by sowing the seed at this time in a moderate hot-bed, it will bring the plants on much forwarder, and the blow will be stronger and earlier by three weeks or a month than those sown at the same time in the natural ground.

But where a hot-bed cannot be readily procured, then, in the last week in this month, let a small spot of a warm border be neatly dug, and there mark out a bed about three feet broad; sow the seed tolerably thick on the surface, and rake it in neatly; then arch the bed over with hoops, and cover them with mats every night, and in bad weather.

But

But if the above bed of natural earth could be covered with a frame and glass, or with hand-glasses, it would be a great advantage to the plants.

When the plants have been up about a month or six weeks, they should be transplanted where they are to remain.

But if your plants stand thick in the seed-bed, some of them, when they have been up about three weeks, may be pricked out either in a slight hot-bed, which will forward them, or upon a warm border of three inches distance, and when they have stood a month, to be planted where they are to remain.

#### *Hardy Annual Flower-Seeds.*

About the end of this month, if the weather be mild and dry, you may sow many sorts of annual flower seeds in the borders, and other parts of the pleasure garden.

The sorts proper to sow at that time are lark-spur and Hos-adonis, convolvulus, lupines, sweet scented and Tangier-peas, candy-tuft, dwarf-lychnis, Venus-looking-glass, fobels catchfly, Venus-navel-wort, dwarf poppy, dwarf annual sun-flower, oriental-mallow, lavatera, and hawk-weed, with some other sorts.

All the above seeds must be sown in the place where you intend the plants shall flower; they must not be transplanted, for these sorts will not succeed well by that practice. The following is the best method of treating them:

Dig with a trowel some small patches at due distances, each patch being eight or nine inches over, breaking the earth well, and making the surface even: draw a little earth off the top to one side, then sow the seed thin, and cover it with the earth that was drawn off, observing to cover the smallest seed near half an inch; but the sweet-peas, and such like large seed, must be covered an inch deep.

When the plants have been come up some time, they should, where they stand too thick, be regularly thinned, observing to allow every kind, according to its growth, proper room to grow.

For instance, the sun-flower to be left one in a place, the oriental mallow, and lavatera, not more than two or three; the lupines, four or five in a patch; the convolvulus or sweet peas, the same number; the rest may be left thicker.

*Plant*



*Plant hardy Fibrous rooted Flowering Plants.*

Now you may plant, where wanted, most sorts of hardy fibrous rooted flowering plants; such as polyanthus, primroses, London pride, violets, double-daisies, double-chamomile, thrift, gentianella, hepaticas and saxifrage.

Plant also rose-campion, rockets, campanula, catchfly, scarlet-lychnis, double-severfew, batchelors-button, carnations, pinks, sweet-williams, columbines, Canterbury-bells, monkshood, Greek-valerian, tree-primrose, fox-glove, golden-rod, perennial asters, perennial sun-flower, holly-hocks, French honey-suckles, and many others.

In planting the above, or any other sorts, observe to mix them regularly, so as there may be a variety of colours, as well as a regular succession of flowers in every part during the flowering season.

*Dress the Auricula Plants.*

Now dress the auricula plants in pots, and add some fresh earth to them, provided it was not done the latter end of January. Let this be done in the manner directed last month, and the sooner it is now done the better.

The choice kinds of auriculas in pots must now be treated with more than ordinary care, for their flower-buds will soon begin to appear; therefore the plants should be defended from frost and cold heavy rains.

This must be done by a covering of mats, canvas or glass; but every mild and dry day, the plants must be entirely uncovered.

*Sow Auriculas and Polyanthus Seed.*

Auricula and polyanthus seed may be sown any time in this month; they will grow freely, and the plants from this sowing will rise well. These seeds may be sown in a warm spot in the common ground, or in boxes or pots filled with light rich earth; but the pots or boxes are for that use by some people preferred, because they can be readily removed to different situations as the season may require.

These seeds must be sown tolerably thick, and covered with light earth about a quarter of an inch deep.

Place the boxes in a situation well defended from northerly winds, and open to the morning and mid-day sun; in two months or ten weeks time they must be removed to a more shady place.



In June they will be fit to transplant; for which, see the work of the flower garden in that month.

*Transplant Carnation Plants.*

Transplant the carnation plants, which were raised last year from layers, into the pots where you intend them to remain to blow; let this be done about the latter end of the month, which will be time enough.

Fill for that purpose some pots with light rich earth, then take up the plants with as much earth as will readily hang about their roots; set one plant in the middle of each pot, and close the earth well about the body of the plants, giving them immediately a moderate watering, which will settle the plants well in their places.

When all is planted, set the pots in a situation well sheltered from cold winds.

*Tulips, Hyacinths, &c.*

Defend the beds of fine tulips, hyacinths, anemones and ranunculuses, from frost and excessive rains; the beds wherein the finest of these flower roots are planted should now, if not done before, be arched over with hoops; and in frosty, or extremely wet weather, let mats or canvas be drawn over them.

This should not now be omitted, particularly the beds wherein the choicest kinds are planted.

*Dress the Borders and Beds, &c.*

Now let the flower beds and borders in general be thoroughly cleared from weeds and from every kind of litter, for neatness in those parts of the garden is agreeable at all times, but more particularly at this season, when the flowers and plants of most kinds are beginning to push.

Therefore, let the surface of the beds and borders be lightly and carefully loosened with a hoe in a dry day, and let them be neatly raked, which will give an air of liveliness to the surface, and the whole will appear neat and very pleasing to the eye, and will be well worth the labour.

*Prune Flowering Shrubs.*

Finish pruning flowering shrubs and evergreens where they want it.

In doing this work, observe to cut out all dead wood; and where any of the branches are too long or grow straggling,

gling; let them be shortened, or cut off close, as you shall see it necessary; and likewise, where the branches of different shrubs interfere or run into each other, let them be cut shorter, so that every shrub may stand singly and clear of one another; then all the different shrubs will shew themselves distinctly and to the best advantage.

When the shrubs are pruned let the cuttings be cleared away, and then let the ground be neatly dug between and about all the plants, observing to take off all suckers arising from the roots: nothing looks better in a garden than to see the ground neat and fresh between flowering shrubs and evergreens.

#### *Planting Flowering-Shrubs.*

Most sorts of flowering shrubs may now be safely removed any time in this month when it is open weather.

But particularly the geldar-rose, syringas, laburnums, lilacs, honey-suckles, roses, spiræas, althæa-frutex, hypericum frutex, Persian-lilac, double blossom-cherry, double flowering-peach, almonds, flowering raspberry, double bramble, cornelian cherry and double hawthorn: you may likewise plant bladder-sena, scorpion-sena, privet, Spanish-broom, jasmines, sumach, cyttisuses and acacias, with many other sorts of hardy plants, which may now be safely transplanted, for most sorts will take root very freely and soon at this season.

#### *Planting Evergreens.*

About the middle, or any time in this month, if mild weather, you may transplant phillyreas, yews, evergreen-oaks, junipers, hollies, firs, cypresses, cedars, laurustinus, pyracanthas and arbutus, with most other kinds of evergreen shrubs and trees.

#### *Directions for planting the various Sorts of Shrubs.*

In planting and decorating the clumps and quarters in the shrubbery, care should be taken to dispose the most curious sorts of flowering shrubs and plants, in such a manner as that they may be easily seen from the walk or lawn near where they are planted. They should not be planted so close together as is commonly practised, nor should they be suffered, as they grow up, to interfere with each other, for that would deprive you of the pleasure of seeing the most valuable shrubs to advantage.

When

When shrubs of any kind are to be conveyed to any great distance, great care should be taken to pack them well; they should be tied in bundles, and their roots well packed round with straw, and every bundle packed up in mats.

#### *Mow Grass Walks and Lawns.*

Grass walks or lawns should be kept extremely clean. Now the season for mowing begins to approach, pole and roll them once or twice every week: a wooden roller is best to take up the worm-casts; and when the grass is clean and free from worm-casts, it should be rolled with an iron or stone roller, to make the bottom firm and smooth.

The edges of the grass walks or lawns, should be all neatly cut with an edging iron about the end of this month, which will be a vast addition to the neatness of them.

#### *Turf.*

Turf may be laid any time this month, when wanted, either to make new, or mend old work; for it will grow freely with little trouble; observing to beat it well, and roll it with a heavy roller now and then, to make it firm and even.

#### *Gravel Walks.*

Keep the gravel walks perfectly free from weeds, moss, and litter of any sort, and let them be well rolled once or twice every week in dry weather.

#### *Plant Box.*

Box, when wanted for edgings to borders, may be planted any time in this month, it will take root in a short time, and there will be no fear of its success; likewise, where there are gaps in any former planted edgings, let the deficiencies now be made good, for nothing looks worse in a garden, than ragged box edgings by the sides of the walks.

For the method of planting box, see the flower garden for October.

#### *Thrift for Edgings.*

Thrift makes a very compact and beautiful edging, if planted properly, and well kept. This may be planted any time this month; and, if you give it two or three good



good watering in dry hot weather, it will grow away freely.

*Daisies and Pinks for Edgings.*

Daisies and pinks make also tolerable good edgings, provided they are of the true double kinds, and will make a pretty appearance in May and June.

These should for that purpose be planted separate, about three or four inches asunder in the row.

Thyme, hyssop, winter savory, and lavender, are sometimes planted for edgings to borders, but these do not continue long in good order, but there is nothing makes so neat and durable edgings as box.

### The Nursery.

**F**INISH digging the ground between the rows of all kinds of young trees and shrubs.

This work should now be completed as soon as possible, for it will not only render the ground neat and agreeable to be seen, but will be also of very great advantage to the growth of the young trees and shrubs of every kind.

*Propagating by Cuttings.*

Plant cuttings of gooseberries and currants, by which method you may propagate the finest sorts in their kinds, which is far preferable to propagating them by suckers.

The cuttings for this purpose must be of the last year's shoots, observing to take such as are strong, and let them be from about ten or twelve, to fifteen inches in length; plant them in rows not less than twelve inches asunder, and put each cutting about half way into the ground.

Such of these trees as are raised from cuttings, always produce remarkable large and well tasted fruit; but the trees raised from suckers never produce so good fruit, for they are generally but very small, and not well flavoured; and besides, are very apt to run much to wood, both at top, and by suckers from their roots.

Be careful to train these trees always with a single stem a foot or fifteen inches high, before you form the head.

Plant also cuttings of honey-suckles, and other hardy flowering shrubs and trees. There are many sorts that may be propagated by that method, and this is still a good time to plant most kinds.

The cuttings must be shoots of the former year's growth; choose such as have strength, and they must not be shorter than six inches, nor longer than twelve. Plant them in a shady place in rows a foot asunder, at six or eight inches distant in the row, putting each cutting half way into the earth.

Most kinds of cuttings which are planted now, will be well rooted by next October.

#### *Propagating by Layers.*

Propagate exoticks by layers, this being the best season to lay down the branches of all kinds of foreign trees and shrubs.

Make layers also of all such hardy shrubs and trees as are increased by that method; the best time to do this is some time between Michaelmas and Christmas; but where it was omitted at that time it may now be done, and many kinds will still succeed.

In making layers of any kind of trees or shrubs, observe to dig round the plant that is to be layed, and as you go on bring down the shoots or branches regularly, and lay them along in the ground, fastening them securely there with hooked pegs, and then let all the young shoots on each branch be neatly layed, and cover them three or four inches deep with earth, leaving the top of each three or four inches out of the ground.

Most kinds of layers which are now layed, will be tolerably well rooted and fit to be transplanted by next Michaelmas.

#### *Transplanting Layers.*

Take off the layers of such trees and shrubs as were laid down last year; that is, where it was not done the former months.

Let the layers, as soon as they are taken off, be trimmed and planted in rows in an open situation; let the rows be about eighteen or twenty inches asunder, and put in the plants about twelve or fifteen inches from one another in the row.



*Sow Plum-stones, &c. to raise Stocks.*

Sow plum and cherry stones, &c. and also the kernels of apples and pears, to raise a supply of stocks to bud and graft upon.

They may be sown any time this month in mild weather, but the sooner the better, observing to choose a spot of perfectly clean and light ground to sow them in; let them be sown in beds, about forty-two inches wide, covering the stones an inch deep with earth, and the kernels half an inch or thereabout.

The plants from this sowing will be fit to transplant next Michaelmas and spring.

*Sowing Seeds of Shrubs and Forest Trees.*

Sow likewise the seeds and berries, &c. of hardy forest trees and shrubs. These must be sown the beginning of the month, provided the weather be mild; prepare beds for this purpose three feet and a half broad; let the seed be scattered or placed thereon as regular as possible, and cover each kind a proper depth with earth; none less than half an inch, nor any much more than an inch, or inch and half deep.

The largest seed or berries, &c. to be covered about two inches deep.

*Transplant flowering Shrubs.*

Flowering shrubs of all kinds may be now safely transplanted any time when the weather is open, and if the weather will permit, this work should be fully completed by the latter end of the month.

*Pruning and trimming flowering Shrubs.*

Finish pruning or trimming flowering shrubs where they want it.

In doing this work observe to train the plants with a single stem; and where their heads grow very regular, let them be reduced to some order and form, by cutting out or shortening with a knife such shoots as may appear necessary to form a handsome head.

All suckers that arise from the roots of the shrubs of any kind, should also wherever they appear be taken carefully off, and the best of them may be planted out at pro-



per distances, and they will make good plants in two or three year's time.

*Transplant Hardy Forest Trees.*

Transplant hardy forest trees where it is necessary to be done. All kinds of these trees may be removed any time this month.

Fruit-trees of any kind may also be removed now, and there is no time in the planting season in which they will succeed better than in this, provided they are transplanted soon in the month; but all kinds of these trees may with great safety be removed any time in this month when mild weather.

*Transplanting Stocks to bud and graft upon.*

Make new plantations of stocks, to bud and graft the different kinds of choice fruit upon.

Those raised from the seed, &c. last year, will now be ready for this practice.

Let these be planted out as soon in the month as the weather will permit; plant them in rows thirty inches asunder, and let them be planted at least fifteen inches distant from one another in the row.

The above distance is to be understood of the largest plants that are to be planted, where they are to remain to be grafted; but the smallest plants should be planted out first in beds of three feet and a half or four feet wide, planting five or six rows in a bed; they may be planted with a dibble, or otherwise to cut out trenches by line, such as is practised in planting edgings of box, placing the whole therein five or six inches asunder, turning the earth in upon their roots, and tread it gently to them.

When these have had one years growth in the above bed, they are to be planted out where they are to remain to be grafted.

*Heading down budded Stocks.*

The stocks that were budded the last summer should now be headed down; let this be done with a sharp knife, observing to cut the head off about four inches above the place where the bud was inserted. See the work of budding and inoculating in June and July.

*Grafting.*

Grafting may be begun any time after the fifteenth or twentieth of this month, provided the weather be mild.

The

The sorts proper to begin with, are pears, plums, and cherries; and these kinds generally succeed best when grafted some time in the last fortnight of this month.

Apples may also be grafted at the same time, or they may be deferred a fortnight longer.

It should be observed that where grafting is to be done, you should begin to prepare for it the beginning of this month.

The first thing to be done towards that work is to collect the grafts; and it must be observed these must be young shoots, such only as were produced last year, for those that are more than one year's growth never take well. These shoots or grafts should be cut from the trees in the first or second week in this month, but do it in mild weather; soon as they are cut off lay them in dry earth in a warm border till the grafting time, and if severe weather should happen, cover them with litter.

The reason for cutting the grafts so soon, is, because the buds will now begin to swell fast, and if the grafts were not to be cut off in proper time, the buds would be too far advanced, and the grafts would by that means not take kindly with the stock, or, at least, not shoot so freely.

Before we proceed to the methods of grafting, it will first be necessary to mention what stocks are proper to graft the different kinds of fruit upon; for instance, apples should be grafted upon stocks raised from the kernels of the same kinds of fruit, for the grafts or buds of these trees will not take well upon any other stocks.

It should be observed, that for dwarf apple trees, for walls or espaliers, they generally succeed best when grafted upon codlin, or Dutch paradise apple stocks, raised either from suckers from the root, or by cuttings or layers, for the stocks raised from either of these trees, are never so luxuriant in growth as those of other common kinds of apple trees; and consequently trees grafted upon such stocks, will be slower in growth, and can more easily be kept within due compass, so will answer the purpose for dwarfs, for espaliers, &c. much better than those grafted on any other stocks.

The time for sowing the kernels of apples for stocks, is either in November or February; but if not sown till February, they must be kept in sand till that time.



These are to be sown in beds three feet and a half wide, observing to sow them moderately thick, and cover them a full inch at least with earth.

The plants will come up in five or six weeks, and in the Autumn or Spring following some of the largest plants, should be drawn out and planted in nursery beds; and in the second and third year after, they will be in order to graft upon for dwarfs; but, for standards, let them be four or five years old, particularly if you intend to graft them at the height of four, five, or six feet, but some graft their stocks intended for standards, as low as is commonly practised for dwarfs, and so training up one strong shoot from the graft, till it is five or six feet high, then top it to make it put out branches to form the head.

Pears are generally grafted or budded upon stocks, raised also from kernels of any of these kinds of fruits; and are by the nursery men termed free stocks. Pear trees are also propagated by grafting them upon quince stocks, which stocks are generally raised by cuttings, layers, or suckers, which will grow freely; the pears grafted or budded upon these stocks, are very proper for walls or espaliers.

Some people also graft pears upon white-thorn stocks, but this is not so commonly practised, as these stocks having an ill effect on several sorts of the fruit, by rendering them hard at the core.

The season for sowing the kernels of pears to raise stocks, and the transplanting and time of grafting is the same as mentioned above for apples.

Cherries are propagated by grafting or budding them upon stocks, raised from the stones of the common black or red cherry, or upon stocks raised from the stones of any other kind of these fruit; but these two first are for that purpose most esteemed, because they generally shoot much freer than any other.

The season for sowing the cherry stones for raising stocks, is October or November, or in the spring; but when not sown till spring, they must be laid in boxes of sand all winter, and must be sown in February.

The stocks will be ready to transplant the first or second year after sowing, and the second year after that will be fit to graft or bud, if for dwarfs, for walls or espaliers, but if for standards, they must be at least three or four years old from sowing; for standard cherries are generally grafted or budded at the height of five or six feet.



Plums are also grafted or budded upon plum stocks; that is, stocks raised by sowing the stones of any of the common sorts of the same fruit; but the best stocks for this purpose, are those raised from the stones of the muske and common white pear-plum.

The time for sowing the stones to raise these stocks, is either in autumn or the spring; but when they are not sown till spring, they must be preserved in sand till that time, and the middle of February is a good time to sow them.

These stocks will be fit to bud or graft upon in the third, fourth, and fifth year after sowing. It must be observed the stocks must be transplanted, some of the largest of them in the autumn or spring after sowing, and in two or three years after will be fit to bud or graft upon.

*The Method of performing the Work.*

There are several methods of grafting; but we shall only take notice of three or four, which are practised with the greatest success.

First, to begin with whip-grafting, which is practised with the greatest success. This kind of grafting is generally performed upon small stocks; that is, the stocks for this purpose should be about half an inch in diameter, or perhaps a little more or less; and the method of performing the work is this:

Having your cions or grafts, knife, bandages and clay ready, then begin the work, by cutting off the head of the stock at a convenient height, so as to answer in bigness nearly with the graft or cion; this done, fix upon a smooth part of the stock, and there pare off the rind with a little of the wood in a sloping manner upwards, about an inch, or near an inch and a half in length; then prepare the cion, by cutting it also in a sloping manner, so as to exactly fit the cut part of the stock, as if cut from the same place, that the rinds of both may join in every part; then cut a slit or tongue about half an inch in length upwards in the cion, and cut a slit the same length downwards in the stock to receive the said tongue; in that manner fix the graft in the stock, taking care that the sap or rind of both may meet, or join as exact as possible in every part. Having thus fixed the graft, let it be immediately tied with a string of soft bafs, bringing it in a neat manner several times round the graft and stock, taking

care to preserve the graft in its due position, and let the bandage be neatly tied, and immediately cover the place with some grafting clay, observing to bring the clay near an inch above the top of the stock, and a little lower than the bottom part of the graft, leaving a due thickness on every side of the graft and stock; making it in a round or globular form, and take care to close it well in every part, that no wet, wind or sun can enter; to prevent which, is the whole intention of the clay, for without that precaution, the operation would prove fruitless.

In performing the operation of whip-grafting, some people first cut and prepare the cion, and then cut and fit the stock to that; but it is not material which, provided it be done in an exact and somewhat expeditious manner.

Next it must be noted, that the grafts must be now and then examined, to see if the clay any where falls off or cracks; if it does, it must be renewed with fresh clay.

By the last week in May, or first week in June, the grafts and stocks will be well united, and then take off the clay and untie the bandages.

#### *Cleft Grafting.*

The next general method of grafting is that in the cleft, which is commonly called cleft or slit grafting; because the stock is cleft, and the graft put into the cleft part; and is performed in the following manner.

The stocks or trees this kind of grafting is performed on, are generally about an inch, or an inch and a half, and even two inches or more, in diameter. First, with a strong knife or saw, cut off the head of your stock, and pare it very smooth; this done, fix upon a smooth part of the stock to place your graft; and then on the opposite side to that cut away part of the stock, about an inch and a half deep, in a sloping manner upwards, so that the crown of the stock may not be more than about half an inch broad. This done, prepare your graft or cion, which is done in this manner: observe to cut your grafts into due lengths, leaving four or five eyes to each; then take your sharpest knife, and pare away the bark and some of the wood at the lower end of the graft, in a sloping manner; about an inch and a half or near two inches in length; and then cut the other side in the same manner, making it to have a wedge-like shape; but observe, that that part of the cion which is to be placed outwards in the stock, must be



be left near double the thickness of the other side ; therefore always take care to make one side thicker than the other. The graft being prepared, take your strong knife, and place it on the middle of the stock crossways the slope part, and with your mallet strike the knife to the stock, observing to cleve it no farther than what is necessary to admit the graft readily ; then drive the grafting chissel, or some instrument, a little way into the cleft, at the back of the stock, to keep it open for the reception of, and more readily fixing the graft. The graft must be placed with great exactness ; that is, it must be placed as far as it is cut into the stock, with the thickest edge outwards, and placed so that the rind of the graft may meet exactly even every way with the rind of the stock. The graft being placed, then remove the grafting chissel, taking care not to displace the graft ; this done, let it be tied and well clayed in the manner directed as above, in the work of whip or tongue grafting.

But in this cleft grafting some people choose to put two grafts in a stock ; and when that is practised they only cut off the head of the stock, and so pare it quite smooth, and then cleave it quite a-cross, and put in two grafts, one on each side the stock, preparing and placing them as above directed.

And in some trees or stocks that are not less than two or three inches in thickness, I have put in four grafts ; but the stock for this practice must be twice cleft, but the clefts must not be a-cross, but parallel to each other, and so fix two grafts in each side of the stock, observing to bind and clay as above.

This kind of grafting may likewise be performed on the branches of trees that already bear fruit, if you desire to change the sorts.

The grafts will be united with the stocks by the last week in May, or the beginning of June, and then take off the clay, and loosen the bandages.

#### *Crown Grafting.*

There is another kind of grafting known by the name of crown grafting.

This way of grafting is commonly practised upon such trees as are too large and stubborn to cleave, and is often performed upon the branches of apple and large pear trees,



&c. that already bear fruit, when it is intended to change the sorts, or to renew the tree with fresh bearing wood.

The manner of doing this sort of grafting is as follows :

First, to cut off the head of the tree or stock level, or of any particular branch of a tree which you intend to graft, and pare the top perfectly smooth; then prepare your grafts, which is done by cutting one side flat and sloping about two inches in length, making a kind of shoulder to rest on the head of the stock, and pare off only a little of the bark towards each edge of the other side of the graft: then, having a small wedge of hard wood, or rather iron, let one side of it be somewhat roundish, the other flat: let this instrument be driven down gently between the bark and wood of the stock or tree, observing to place the flat side towards the wood, driving it far enough to make room for the graft; then drawing out the wedge, slip down the graft, placing the cut or sloping side towards the wood, thrusting it down as far as it is cut; and in this manner you may put four, five, or six grafts, or as many as may seem convenient, upon each stock, tree, or branch.

When the grafts are all thus fixed, you must then immediately apply a good quantity of well wrought clay, bringing it close about the stock and grafts, observing to raise at least an inch above the top of the stock in a proper manner, so as to throw the wet quickly off, and not lodge and get into the work, which would ruin all.

Those trees which are grafted this way, will take, and shoot very free; but there is, for the first year or two after grafting, an inconvenience attending them, and that is the grafts being liable to be blown out of the stock by violent winds; but this must be remedied by tying two or three sticks to the body of the stock, or branch that is grafted, and the grafts may be tied to the sticks.

The best time for performing this kind of grafting, is in the last week in March, or first week in April; for then the sap will begin to be in motion, which renders the bark of the stock much easier to be separated from the wood to admit the grafts.

These grafts will be pretty well united with the stock by the end of May or beginning of June, and the clay is then to be taken away.

*Inarching.*

*Inarching.*

Another way of grafting is still in practice, which is generally called inarching or grafting by approach; but this is not near so commonly practised as the three ways before mentioned, and this way was chiefly invented for such trees or shrubs as are not easily to be propagated by any other method.

The method of performing the operation is this:

When it is intended to propagate any kind of tree or shrub by this manner of grafting, it must be observed that the stock you would graft upon, and the tree from which you would take the graft, must stand so near, or can be placed so near, that the body of the branch you would inarch, can as it grows be brought to join readily to any part of the body of the stock; for the graft is not to be separated from the mother plant, till some months after performing the operation; nor is the head of the stock to be cut off till that time, except you cannot otherwise conveniently fix the graft.

For instance, suppose you want to inarch some branches of trees, &c. and we will suppose the said branches to be three, four, or five feet or more from the surface of the ground, and suppose the stocks you would graft upon to be in pots; in that case there must be a kind of slight stage erected, close to and as high as the branches of the tree: upon this stage the pots which contain the stocks must be placed: then take one of the branches you desire to inarch, and bring the body of the said branch to touch that of the stock, at such a convenient height, where the stock and graft is nearly of a size, and mark the parts, where the graft and stock will most readily join together: then in that part of the branch pare away the bark and wood, about one third of its thickness, and about three inches in length, and in the same manner let the rind and wood be pared off that side of the stock where the branch is to be joined, the same length and breadth, so that both the cut parts may exactly join rind to rind: then cut a slit or thin tongue upwards in the branch, and make a slit the same length to receive it downwards in the stock; then let them be joined, slipping the tongue of the graft into the slit made in the stock, and see that the cut parts join in an exact manner, and let them be immediately tied together with some bass, and afterwards



cover the place with a due quantity of well wrought clay, being careful the part be regularly and well covered, and let the clay be very well closed, that no air or wet can penetrate.

After this let a stout stake be driven into the ground, and that part of the stock and graft must be fastened to it, which prevents the graft from being displaced by the wind.

Remember that the stock and graft are to remain in that position for at least fifteen or sixteen weeks, when they will be well united; the graft is then to be separated from the mother plant; being careful to do this with a perfect sharp knife, cutting off the branch with a slope downwards to the stock; and at the same time the head of the stock to be cut close to the graft. The old clay, and bandage are at this time to be taken off; and at the same time it will be adviseable to tie them again gently, and also to put some fresh clay, which will still be of great service, and let them remain so for a month or five weeks.

By this kind of grafting you may raise almost any kind of tree or shrub; and it is often practised by way of curiosity to ingraft a fruit-bearing branch of a fruit tree upon one of the common stocks; by which means there is raised a new tree bearing fruit in a few months: this is sometimes practised upon orange trees, &c. by grafting fruit branches on stocks raised from the kernels of the same kind of fruit.

Note, I mentioned the having the stocks for this operation in pots, but this is only meant where the branches of the trees you would propagate are not near enough the ground, or for orange and other green house trees and shrubs; but as for such trees and shrubs as grow in the common ground, and whose branches are favourably situated for that work, there may be stocks planted in the ground near them, or it may be performed upon stocks or trees that grow accidentally near.

---

### The Green-House.

**T**HE Green-house should have good attendance at this season, the plants will require water now and then, but all will not require it alike, nor all at one time.



Examine therefore the tubs and pots separately, to see which want water, and which do not; then let water be given to such as you see in want thereof, but give it moderately; a little will be serviceable, but too much will be of bad consequence especially to the tender kinds.

Oranges, lemons, and myrtles, and most other of the woody plants, will require water frequently, but never give them much at a time, and to none but where absolutely necessary.

Air should be admitted to the plants in the Green house, at all times when the weather is favourable, for that is a necessary article, and the plants cannot thrive without it. Every day, when the weather is open, and any thing mild, let some of the windows be opened a little way, for the admission of air, and take care that they are shut again in due time: that is, about three, four, or five in the evening, according to the temperature of the air; if calm and mild, leave them open till about five o'clock; if a cold sharper air, shut them sooner in proportion.

Another thing to be regarded, is to keep the plants of all kinds free from decayed leaves, for those are more hurtful to the plants while in the house, than many people are aware of; therefore, when ever such leaves appear, let them be constantly taken off; and also let the tubs or pots, and Green-house floor, be cleared from the same, if any has dropt from the plants.

There is another thing which will be of great service to the oranges, lemons, and to the plants in general; that is, to loosen the earth in the top of the pots or tubs, and take a little off, and add some fresh in its stead; this will certainly help the plants, and whoever will bestow that little dressing upon them, will see the advantage of it in a short time.

#### *Oranges and Myrtles.*

Where oranges, lemons, and myrtles, &c. have naked or irregular heads, you may now begin to reduce them to the form you desire. The branches or head may be cut close, or otherwise shortened to the place where you desire shoots to rise to form the head regular, for they will break out in the old wood.

Then, when the trees are thus headed down, it will also be an advantage to shift them, in order to add a little fresh earth about their roots, and the method is this:

Let

Let the tree be taken out of its tub or pot, but being careful to preserve the ball of earth entire, and then pare off all the matted roots round the outsides, and also at the same time pull away a good deal of the old earth from the bottom and sides of the ball; then, having some fresh compost ready, put some into the bottom of the pot or tub; fix the tree, fill it up round the ball with fresh earth, and give it a little water.

But in heading down any of the green-house plants, if time will not permit you to shift them as above directed, do not, however, fail to treat them in the following manner; which is, to loosen the earth in the top of the tub or pots, and down round the sides, and draw all this loose earth out; then fill up the tub again with new compost, and give some water.

But such orange or lemon-trees, as are in a very weak and sickly condition, should be shifted into entire new earth; that is to say, the plant must be taken out, all the old earth shaken entirely from its roots, and all mouldy and decayed roots cut off; then let the whole root be washed in water, and plant it again immediately in a tub or pot of new earth, taking care not to place it too deep.

After this, it would be a great advantage to the plants, if you have the conveniency of a glass-case, to make a hot-bed of tan or dung, but tan is much the best; and in this bed the trees are to be plunged; by which means they will shoot sooner, and more freely, both at top and root.

---

### The Hot-House.

**A** DUE degree of heat must now be preserved in the bark-bed, in the hot-house, wherein the pines are plunged, for many of the plants will shew fruit; and to make them swell freely, there must be a lively heat in the bed.

Nothing can contribute so much to the free growth of these young fruit, as a moderately brisk heat in the bark-bed, where the plants are plunged; for if there be not a proper heat about the roots of the plants, it is impossible to make the fruit swell to any tolerable size.

There

Therefore, where the bark was not stirred up the former month, it should now be done, for the heat will consequently begin to be very faint; but by stirring up the bark almost to the bottom, it will bring on a fresh fermentation in it; by which means the bark will again recover a lively growing heat, and the good effect of it will soon appear both in the plants and fruit, provided it be done in due time.

It should, if possible, be done in the first week in the month: for if it is delayed much longer, the plants and fruit will certainly, for want of a due portion of heat, be much checked in their growth.

In doing this work, observe in the first place to take all the pots up out of the bark, then begin at one end of the bed, and open a kind of trench by taking out some of the bark, and carrying it to the other end; this done, begin at the trench, and with a fork dig and work up the bark quite to the bottom, taking care to break the cakes or lumps, and mix the parts all well together.

When this is done, let the top be made level, and then immediately plunge the pots again to their rims as before.

This work is so very necessary, that it should not on any consideration be omitted at the time above mentioned; that is to say, if the bark has much declined its heat.

The bark-bed being thus treated, it will soon renew its heat, and retain the same well for six weeks to come, or thereabouts.

At the expiration of that time, or about the middle or some time in March, the bark will require to be stirred up again, and then refreshed with about one third, or at least one fourth part of new tan; the bark-bed after this will retain a proper degree of heat till the fruit are ripe.

The bark-bed wherein the succession pine plants are plunged, should also be examined now with good attention; and if the heat is found to be much decreased, the bed should be treated in the manner above directed.

#### *Watering the Pines.*

The fruiting pine-apple plants should now be often refreshed with water, provided there be a good heat in the bark; and when there is a proper degree of heat and moisture together, it will make the young fruit swell very fast.



But in watering these plants, be careful to give it moderately at each time. The rule is this, let the earth in the pots which contain the plant, be kept just a little moist; that is, in a middling degree; and if this is observed, the plants and fruit will thrive.

The succession pine plant, that is, those which are to fruit next year, must also be refreshed now and then with water; in watering these let the same rule be observed as just mentioned above.

Remember also to give water as times to the last year's crowns and suckers.

In watering the pine plants in general, let particular care be taken to let no water fall into the hearts of them; for that, at this season, would prove detrimental to these kind of plants.

To prevent this, let such a pipe as mentioned in the former month, be always used at this season when there is occasion to water the plants; by the help of which the watering may be performed with great exactness and expedition.

No hot-house should be destitute of such a pipe as this, for without it there is no such thing as watering the pines and other plants that are plunged in the bark with any degree of readiness and certainty.

#### *Of various Kinds of Plants in the Hot-House.*

In some hot-houses there are kept many kinds of curious exotick plants, both of the succulent and woody kinds; and where such plants are, they should be treated with a proper share of attention.

All these kinds of plants should be kept remarkably clean from dust or any sort of filth that may at any time gather upon their stems, shoots, or leaves, and such should always be washed off as soon as it appears.

There is nothing more necessary than cleanliness to preserve the health of all these tender plants; and where any sort of foulness is permitted upon any of them, it will not only close up those small pores which are so necessary to the growth of all vegetables, but will also promote insects, and render the whole plant unhealthy.

These plants must also be kept very free from decayed leaves; that is, when any such appear let them be immediately taken off, for they would injure the plants.

Water

Water should also be given to all of these plants at times: some will require but very little and seldom, and others will need it pretty often.

Therefore let good care be taken that every plant according to its nature be properly supplied with that article; but be sure never to give any sort too much at a time, and in giving it always make a distinction between the succulent and woody kinds.

That is, the woody plants will need water oftener, and more at a time than the succulent kinds; for some of these require very little moisture about their roots, and too much would rot the plants.

Let the woody kinds in general be moderately watered, not less than twice a week, and it will be serviceable to sprinkle water sometimes all over the head or branches of these plants, especially the coffee-trees. The pimento, or all-spice, and all the tender acacias, and mimosa, &c.

But the succulent kinds, such as the torch thistles, melon thistles, cereus, ficoides, aloes, euphorbiums, and the like, must not be watered oftener than once a week, or thereabouts.

In watering these kinds let great care be taken to give but little at each time, just as much as will reach the bottom roots.

It will be an advantage to all these tender plants, both of the succulent and other kinds, to stir the earth a little on the surface of the pots now and then.

*Admit Air to the Pines, &c.*

Fresh air should now be admitted to the pines, and all other plants in the hot-house, at all times when the weather will permit.

But this, however, must never be done but when the sun shines warm, and the air is quite calm and clear; then it will be proper to slide some of the glasses open a little way in the warmest time of the day.

The best time of the day to do this, is from about ten or eleven to two or three o'clock; but from the time of opening and shutting the glasses let the weather be the guide.

*Of Kidney Beans in the Hot-house.*

Now plant some more kidney beans in pots or boxes, and place them in the hot-house to succeed those planted last month.

They

They are to be managed in the manner mentioned last month.

Do not forget to refresh, with water, those kidney beans which were planted last month; they will require it at least three times a week.

*Of raising Honey-suckles and Carnations, &c.*

You may now, in the beginning of this month, set pots of roses and honey-suckles in the hot-house, or pots of carnations, pinks, and double sweet-williams, or pots of any other flowering plants, either of the shrub or herbaceous kinds which you desire, by way of curiosity, to bring to an early bloom.

*Making the Fires in this Department.*

The fires must still be regularly made in the hot-house every evening, and also in the mornings when the weather is any thing cold.

In hard frost the fire must be kept up moderately, night and day.

In very severe frost the glass of the hot-house should be covered every night with mats or canvas.

*Of Cucumbers in the Hot-House.*

Where it is desired to raise cucumbers in the hot-house, some seed may now be sown as directed last month, or planted therein, from any common hot-bed. See the hot-house for January.

**MARCH.**



(1791)  
M A R C H:

*Work to be done in the Kitchen Garden,  
in March.*

*Cucumbers and Melons.*

**E**XAMINE the state of the cucumber and melon hot-beds, and see if they are of a proper degree of heat, so as to preserve the plants in a state of free growth.

You must let the heat be lively but moderate, by which means they will shew fruit plentifully, and these will swell freely, and grow to a handsome size.

This must be done by applying a lining of new horse-dung to the back or front side of the bed, as you shall see occasion; but if the heat is not very much declined, it will be proper to line only one side at a time, but line the opposite side in ten or twelve days after. Make the linings about eighteen inches wide, and as high as five or six inches up the sides of the frame; lay two inches of earth over the top, to keep the steam down, for the reason mentioned last month.

Let the plants have fresh air every day, by raising the upper end of the glasses from about an inch, to two or three in height, in proportion to the heat in the bed, and warmth of the weather.

Refresh them now and then with water; let this be given very moderately, and in a mild sunny day; the best time for doing this is, from ten to two o'clock.

Cover the glasses with mats every night, and let them be uncovered in the morning about an hour, or thereabout, after sun rise; or if a sunny morning, as soon as the sun shines fully on the frames.

*Sow Cucumber and Melon Seed.*

Sow in the above on any new made beds, the seeds of cucumbers and melons at the beginning, and also about the middle and towards the latter end of this month, to have a supply of young plants in readiness either to plant into

into new beds, or to supply the place of such plants as may fail.

The sorts of cucumbers are,

The early short prickly.

The long green prickly.

The white prickly.

The long green Turkey.

The long white Turkey.

The Smyrna.

But the two first sorts are what are most commonly cultivated for the general crop, the short prickly being the earliest, and is therefore often sown for the first crop in the frames, but the long green prickly is the best to sow for a main crop, either for the frames or hand-glasses, or in the natural ground.

The white prickly, and the Turkey and Smyrna kinds, are commonly sown only by way of variety.

*Making new Hot-beds to transplant Cucumbers, &c.*

Make hot-beds the beginning of this month, to plant the cucumber or melon plants upon, which were sown the end of January, or beginning of February.

Let the dung for this purpose be well prepared, in the manner directed in the former month, before you work it up into a bed; this should never be omitted, for a great deal depends upon it; make the bed three feet high, or thereabouts, beating the dung well down with the fork, as you lay it on the bed, but do not tread it, for a bed which is trodden hard is rendered so compact, that it seldom comes to a kindly warmth, but is apt to heat too violently, to the destruction of the plants. When the bed is finished, put on the frame and lights, and let it be managed, in every respect, as directed in the former month, and let the plants, either cucumbers or melons, be planted and treated in the manner there directed.

There are many gardeners, and others, who cannot conveniently procure dung to begin to make hot-beds for cucumbers or melons at an early season. Where that is the case, it is not too late to begin now; a hot-bed may be made the beginning, or any time of the month, and the seeds of cucumbers and melons may be sown therein; the cucumbers from this sowing will be fit to cut by the middle or latter end of May, and the melons in July.

*Cucumbers*



*Cucumbers and Melons for the Bell or Hand Glasses.*

About the eighteenth or twentieth of this month, is the time to begin to sow the cucumbers and melons which are to be planted under hand or bell glasses.

*Transplanting and sowing Colliflowers.*

Transplant the colliflower plants which have stood in frames, or on warm borders, all winter, if not done last month.

Let these be planted in a rich spot of ground. The ground should be well dunged with some good rotten dung, and afterwards neatly dug or trenched one spade deep; taking care to bury the dung in a regular manner in the bottom of the trench. Observe to plant the colliflowers in rows thirty inches asunder, allowing them the same distance between plant and plant in the rows.

The ground where this crop of colliflowers is planted, may be sown with spinage and radishes, as mentioned last month.

Draw some earth to the stems of the colliflower plants, which are under hand or bell glasses; it will strengthen them and promote their growth,

The glasses may still be continued over the plants, but must be kept continually raised, at least, a hands breadth high on props; or in mild days the glasses may be taken off, and let them enjoy the benefit of warm showers of rain.

If there are more than one or two plants under each glass, let them be removed the beginning of this month; for two plants at most, under a glass, is sufficient; but if the glasses are small, one plant under each will be enough.

Plant those which you take from under the glasses, into an open spot, at the distances abovementioned.

Where colliflower plants were raised from seed sown the last month, they should now be pricked out into a bed of rich earth, in a warm situation; but where it can be obtained, it will be most adviseable to prick them into a slight hot-bed, which will forward them greatly. Make the bed about fifteen or eighteen inches high, and put a frame on, or arch it over with hoops; lay on six inches of rich earth, prick the plants therein, two or three inches a part, and give them a little water. Put the glasses or  
other



other covers on every night, but take them off every mild day.

By pricking out the plants on a little warmth, will bring them forward to be fit to transplant for good the middle of next month, and they will produce their heads in July.

Colliflower seed may be sown the beginning of this month, if it was not done in February; observing to sow them in a slight hot-bed, as was then directed; it will bring the plants up soon, and forward them greatly.

N. B. These seeds may be sown in a bed of rich earth, in a warm situation in the natural ground; they will grow freely, but the plants will not be so forward by ten or twelve days, or a fortnight, as they would be if the seed was sown on a little heat.

The plants from this sowing produce flowers or heads for use in August.

#### *Broccoli.*

For the time of sowing broccoli, see the kitchen garden for May.

#### *Transplanting and Sowing Cabbages.*

Transplant cabbage plants of all kinds, in the places where they are to remain to cabbage; it may be done the beginning, or any time this month, but the sooner it is now done the better. Let them be planted in good ground, at two feet and a half distance each way.

This distance is to be understood of such plants as are to remain to grow to their full size; but such as are to be cut young, may be planted closer; and eighteen or twenty inches a-part will be sufficient.

Sow the seeds of cabbages, of any sort, the beginning or middle of this month, for autumn and winter use: let them be sown in an open spot of ground, each sort separate.

The plants raised from this sowing, will, many of them be well cabbaged in September, and continue good all winter.

Red cabbage seed should also be sown about the middle, or latter end of this month, to raise some plants for winter service; they will be fit for use in September, or about Michaelmas, and continue good till the spring.

The red cabbage seed should be of the true Dutch kind.

In sowing the different sorts of cabbage seed, it will be most adviseable to sow them in open ground, distant from trees,

trees, fences, or buildings, for when sown in such a situation as is very often practised, the plants are drawn up weak and long shanked, and are liable to be eaten by vermin.

*Sowing Savoys.*

Savoy seed, for a principal crop, to serve the family from about Michaelmas to Christmas, should be sown about the middle, or towards the latter end of the month, in an open situation.

But if it is desired to have savoys well cabbaged earlier in autumn, that is, in the end of August, or any time in September, they should be sown in February, or at latest the first week in this month.

Sow this seed in an open spot, and not in narrow borders under walls, &c.

The sorts of savoys are the green, yellow, and Dutch, but the green kind is to be preferred for the main crop.

*Transplanting and sowing Lettuce.*

Transplant some of the lettuce plants from the beds or borders where they have stood all winter; that is, if they stand too close. In doing this, observe to draw the plants out regularly, and let the strongest remain in the bed or border, at ten or twelve inches distance; then loosen the earth between them with a hoe, and clear away weeds and litter.

The plants which are drawn out should be planted in an open spot of rich ground, at about twelve inches distance each way.

But it must be observed, that such plants as have stood all winter in frames, should be in general transplanted into an open spot, at the distance above mentioned.

Lettuce seed, of different sorts, should be sown the beginning of this month; and to have a regular supply, let some more be sown about the middle, and a third sowing about the end of the month.

The proper sorts of lettuce to sow at this time, are the white and green coss, for the principal crop, and is also proper to sow a little of the filecia, common cabbage, and brown and white Dutch, but any other sorts will succeed from this time of sowing.

Dig for these seeds a spot of rich ground in an open situation, and let the earth be well broken. Sow the seeds on



on the surface, with an even hand, and rake them in lightly, taking care not to draw the earth in heaps.

### *Spinage.*

Sow spinage to succeed that sown last month, the sowings should be repeated once a fortnight, or thereabouts, to have a regular supply; for one sowing will not continue fit for use, longer than that time, before it well run. Let the seed be of the round leaved kind; that being the most proper sort to sow at this season, its leaves being considerably thicker, and every way larger than the prickly seeded kind.

This seed may at this season, be sown either on a spot alone, or with some other crops, such as between rows of beans, or on the ground where you plant cabbages or colliflowers, observing, that either alone, or with other crops. Spinage seed should be sown pretty thin, and in broad cast, and may mix a little radish seed and sow with it; when the seed is sown, tread the ground all over equally with the feet tolerably close, taking pretty short steps, then let it be evenly raked.

Let it be observed that spinage should not, but especially at this season, be sown where the ground is much shaded with trees, or bushes, for in such situations the plants would be drawn up to seed before they arrive to half their growth.

Hoe, or hand weed, the early crops of spring spinage, thinning the plants at the same time, to five or six inches distance.

The crop of winter spinage which was sown last autumn should now be kept clear from weeds, and the earth between the plants stirred with a hoe.

### *Plant Onions for Seed the Beginning of 2<sup>d</sup> Month.*

Onions or leeks for the main crop should be sown the beginning of this month, provided it was not done in the latter end of February.

This seed should be sown on rich ground, and where it is not stubborn and wet.

Having fixed on a proper spot, it will be of great advantage to spread a good quantity of rotten dung thereon, and dig it in one spade deep; this will greatly promote the growth of the plants, and their roots will grow to a large size.



The seeds of the onions and leeks may either be sown together, or on separate pieces or beds, observing the rules for that mentioned last month.

The ground being dug and laid level, particular care should be taken to sow the seed at such a time when the ground will readily rake. Most ground will rake best immediately after it is dug, and some require to lay a day or two; and some require, after it is dug, to lay to have a shower of rain before it will rake; but the rule is, let the seed be sown when you find the ground will readily break or fall to pieces under the rake, and let it be observed, that the sooner any seed is sown after the ground is dug, the quicker it will grow.

The ground where they are to be sown, may either be divided into beds, or they may be sown all over it in one continued plat, but by sowing in beds, with alleys between, it will be more convenient to go in to weed, hoe, and thin the plants.

The beds should be four feet and half, or five feet broad, allowing about a foot for an alley between bed and bed.

In sowing these seeds, either in beds or otherwise, it will be adviseable, as soon as the seeds are sown; first, to tread the ground all over with the feet almost close together, and then rake it smooth, and this is done in order that the seeds may be all regularly buried an equal depth, for by thus treading in the seed, it in a manner fixes them just where they fall from the hand, and the treading also settles the ground equally in every part, that when you come to rake it, you may stand upon any part of it, without your feet sinking in holes; whereas, if it was not to be trodden as above, your feet, when you rake it, would sink, at every step, in deep holes, and in raking, the seed would be unavoidably drawn into them, and the plants would thereby rise stragling and in clusters; whereas, in the other method, they will rise regularly together, and equally in every part.

And if the ground is to be in beds, with alleys between, you may, if you please, after it is trodden, pare the alleys an inch or two deep, and strew the earth over the beds, which will help to bury the seed more effectually.

But let it be observed, that where the ground is naturally wet, and apt to bind, it will not be so proper to tread in the seed as above, but to divide the ground in beds four, five, or six feet wide, with alleys twelve inches

wide between, and to stand in the alleys to sow the seed, and also to rake it into the ground; or, after the seed is sown, and before you rake the ground, you may first pare the alleys as above mentioned, and spread the earth over the beds, and then rake them.

Those who would make the most of their ground, may sow a thin sprinkling of lettuce seed with that of the onions and leeks.

Many of the Kitchen Gardeners about London, sow their onions constantly in beds five or six feet wide, with alleys eighteen or twenty inches wide between bed and bed, and in these wide alleys sow their pickling cucumbers about the middle or latter end of May, or beginning of June; and by the time the onions are full grown and gathered, the cucumbers are in full bearing, and if spread out, will cover the ground where the onions grew.

#### *Sowing Borecole.*

About the middle, or towards the latter end of this month, you may sow some borecole for the service of winter and next spring.

There are two sorts, the green, and the brown, both very hardy plants.

But for a particular account of them, see the work of next month.

#### *Radishes.*

Sow more radish seed, to raise a supply of radishes to succeed those sown last month.

There should be some of this seed, both of the salmon and short top kind, sown at three different times this month; that is, at the beginning, middle, and latter end; by which means there will be a due succession of young radishes for the table. Let this seed be sown now, in an open spot, and where the ground is good and somewhat moist.

In sowing these seeds, observe the method mentioned in the two former months.

Thin the crops of early radishes, where the plants stand too close, pulling up the worst, and leaving the best plants standing at about two or three inches distance, and clear them from weeds.

In dry weather, let the early crops of radishes be frequently watered, otherwise they will not swell freely, and will be sticky and hot.



*Carrots and Parsneps.*

Sow carrots and parsneps the beginning of this month, for the principal crop; that is, if they were not sown the latter end of February.

A spot of light ground, in an open situation, should be chosen for these seeds, for the roots thrive considerably best in such a soil and situation.

The ground should be trenched one good spade deep at least, and a shoveling. Observe in digging, to take but thin spits, and be careful to break all clods, that the roots may have full liberty to run long and straight; for if the earth is not well divided or separated, the roots are apt to grow both short and forked.

Immediately after sowing, if the ground be light and dry, let the seed be trodden in: in doing which take care to tread the ground over regularly, with the feet pretty close together; then let the surface be immediately raked even; by this method the seed will be buried equally in every part, and the plants will also come up regularly.

But in sowing those seeds it will be proper to observe, that where the ground is inclinable to be wet, or apt to bind, it will in that case be proper to mark the ground out into beds five or six feet wide, with narrow alleys, about nine inches wide between: then sow the seed. Do not, however, tread the ground as above, but only stand in the alleys, and rake the seed in regularly, taking particular care not to draw the earth in heaps.

*Of forking and dressing the Asparagus Beds.*

This is now the time to begin to spring dress asparagus beds, which is done by forking or slightly digging them with a three pronged fork.

This work should be begun about the middle, or latter end of the month.

For the purpose of digging or forking these beds, you should be provided with a proper fork, it should have three tynes about nine inches long, the tynes should be perfectly flat, and about an inch broad, and pretty thin, and the ends of them should be round and blunt.

In forking the beds, be careful to loosen every part to a little depth, but taking great care not to go too deep to wound the crowns of the roots.



The above work of forking these beds is most necessary to be done every spring, not only to loosen the ground to give free liberty for the buds to shoot up, but also to give free access to the sun, air, and showers of rain.

The beds being forked, they must afterwards be raked even, observing, that if you do not rake them immediately after they are forked, to defer it no longer than the end of the month, or at farthest the first week in April, for by that time the buds will begin to advance towards the surface.

#### *Planting Asparagus.*

New plantations of asparagus may now be made, this being the proper season to remove these plants; but it may be done any time in the month, when the weather is mild.

In making plantations of these plants, one great article to be considered is, to make choice of a proper soil; it must not be wet, nor too strong or stubborn, but such as is moderately light and moist, so as it will readily fall to pieces in digging or raking, &c. and in a situation that enjoys the full sun.

The ground where you intend to make new asparagus beds, should be regularly trenched, and a large quantity of good rotten dung buried equally in the bottom of each trench. The trenches should be so deep that the dung may be buried at least twelve or fifteen inches below the surface of the dug ground.

The ground being dug, and laid level, divide it into beds four feet wide, with alleys two feet wide between bed and bed.

Four rows of roots to be planted in each bed, and ten or twelve inches distance to be allowed between plant and plant in the row, and observing the two outside rows of each bed to be six inches from the edge.

Next let it be observed, that the plants for this plantation must not be more than two years old, but most good gardeners prefer those that are only one year, which are what I would choose to plant; as, from experience, I have found they generally take root much freer, and succeed every way better than two year old plants. If you choose to raise the plants yourself, it is done by sowing the seed any time this month in a bed of rich earth; or if you do not choose to lose a year in waiting for your own plants,

you

you may purchase them at most Kitchen Gardeners near large towns. They are commonly sold at eighteen-pence or two shillings per hundred.

The method of planting them is in the following manner :

Strain your line lengthways, the beds six inches from the edge, and then with a hoe or spade cut out a trench close to the line, about six inches deep, making that side next the line nearly upright ; and when one trench is opened, to plant that before you open another, and in that manner to proceed with every row, placing the plants the distance as above.

In placing the plants, observe they must not be placed so as to lie flat in the bottom of the trench, as by some people practised, but must be placed nearly upright against the back of the trench or drill, and so that the crown of the plants may also stand upright, and to be between two or three inches below the surface of the ground ; and let them be all placed, as near as possible, in an equal depth, spreading their roots somewhat regular, against the back of the trench, and at the same time drawing a little earth up against them with the hand, just to fix the plant in its due position ; and when one drill is thus planted, immediately, with a rake, draw the earth into the drill over the plants, and then proceed to open another drill, and plant it as above, and cover it, and so on till the whole is planted. When they are all planted, let the surface of the beds be raked smooth, and clear them from stones.

At each corner of every bed, let a firm stake be driven into the ground, to serve as a mark for the alleys.

Many of the kitchen gardeners about London, plant five rows of asparagus plants in four feet wide beds ; that is, allowing no more than the distance of nine inches between row and row.

It is the custom with such people as are obliged to make the most of every spot of ground, to sow a thin crop of onions the first year, on the new asparagus beds, and this may be done without hurting the asparagus, provided the onions are not suffered to grow just about the plants.

The asparagus being planted, the next care is, when the plants come up, which will be about the end of next month, to keep them clean from weeds, which must be well attended to during the summer season. For this further management, see the work of October and November,



ber, and the article of dressing and forking the beds in this month.

Let it next be observed, that it will be three years from the time of planting, before the asparagus plants produce buds large enough to cut for use. I have indeed sometimes cut a few of the largest buds the second spring after planting, but I advise to let it be the third or fourth before you make a general cutting.

A plantation of asparagus, if the beds are properly dressed every year as directed in the spring and autumn months, will continue to produce good buds ten or twelve years.

In making new plantations of asparagus, it is the custom of some gardeners, instead of putting in young plants as above directed, to sow the seed at once in the beds, where the plants are to remain; and it is not a bad way; for by that practice the plants are not disturbed by removal, and consequently cannot fail of producing a regular crop.

But it must be observed, that if two pieces of ground are to be laid down the same year in asparagus, and suppose one piece to be planted with young plants, the other sown above with seed, that piece which was planted will be ready to cut a year before that sown with seed.

However, to such as choose to raise a plantation of asparagus at once from the seed as above, the method is this:

The beds to be four feet wide, and prepared as before directed for the plants; then mark out four, or if you please five lines lengthwise the beds; then along these lines, at the distance of every nine or ten inches, put in a few seeds, covering them half an inch deep. When the plants have been come up some time, they must be thinned, leaving only two or three of the strongest in each place; and after a while thinned again, leaving but one of the best plants in each hole.

A plantation of asparagus thus raised, will produce buds fit to cut the fourth spring after sowing, but will be very large and fine the fifth year.

As the method of cutting asparagus may not be familiar to every one, I will here explain it. You should be provided with a knife, whose blade is about eight or nine inches long, and about an inch and half broad at the hase, but not above half an inch at the point, which should be rounded



rounded off from the back, and made somewhat blunt, and the edge should be made full of small teeth like a saw; then observing when the buds are about three or four inches high, they should be then cut, observing to slip the knife down close to the bud, and cut it off about three or four inches within the ground, taking great care not to wound or break off any young bud coming up near it from the same roots, for there are always several buds in different stages of growth, advancing at the same time from the same root.

*Sowing Asparagus Seed.*

This is now the season to sow asparagus seed, to raise plants to make new plantations as above, or to raise plants for forcing in hot-beds.

This seed should be sown in the beginning or middle of the month, on a bed of rich earth. Sow it broad cast all over the bed, then tread it in, and then cast some of the earth out of the alleys evenly over the bed, and then rake it smooth. The plants will come up in a month or six weeks, when they must be kept very clean from weeds by a careful hand-weeding at different times in the summer. If the weather be very dry when the plants are first come up, it will be proper to refresh them now and then with water, which will forward them in their growth.

They will be fit to plant out for good next spring. See the article planting asparagus in this month.

When asparagus is to be planted out for forcing, see that article in the work of February.

*Dressing and planting Artichokes.*

Make a general dressing of artichokes the beginning or middle of this month.

Where the ground has been trenched up, and laid over these plants, to protect them from frost, let it now be leveled down, if not done in February, and dig about the plants. As you proceed, observe to let two or three of the strongest shoots remain upon every root, and slip off the others with your hand.

In doing this, being careful to open the earth deep enough about each stock or root that you may readily get to, slip the superabundant shoots off clean from the place from whence they arise; minding, as above, to leave two good shoots, but never more than three, upon each root or stock, closing the earth in again about the root, and also

about the young plants, pressing it close about them with your hand.

The shoots which are slipped off, will do to make fresh plantations, where wanted; for artichokes are encreased by planting the young shoots, and by no other method; and this is the season to do it.

Therefore, where a plantation of artichokes are wanted, let them be planted as soon in the month as you can procure good plants.

They should be planted in an open situation, and in good ground; also let a good quantity of rotten dung be spread over the piece, and dig it in.

These plants must be planted in rows a yard and a half asunder, and not less than two feet, nor more than a yard distant from one another in the row. Give them some water immediately after they are planted, to settle the earth properly about the plants.

The above plantation, if kept clear from weeds, and now and then watered in dry weather, in the beginning of the summer, will not fail to yield good artichokes the following autumn.

But it will be proper to observe, that you may sow a thin crop of onions, lettuce, radishes, or spinage, the first year, between the rows of the artichokes.

A plantation of artichokes will continue to produce good heads five or six years, and sometimes longer; but it must be observed, that such persons as desire to have a succession of these fruit for four or five months in the summer, should make a new plantation every spring; for the old stocks which have been planted a year or two, produce heads in June or July, and those planted now, produce heads in August, September, and October.

#### *Broad Beans.*

Plant beans of any kind, for all sorts succeed well from this time of planting.

This being still a proper time to plant the Windsor and Sandwich, and also the long podded bean, which is a very great bearer. Any of the smaller kinds of beans may also be planted any time this month, particularly the white blossom, it being a great bearer, and eat exceeding sweet, and is by some preferred to all others.

There should be some of the most approved of these sorts put into the ground every fortnight, which will afford you  
a re-



a regular supply of young beans during the principal season of them.

Plant the large kind of beans in rows a yard asunder, and the lesser kinds thirty inches between the rows. But if it is intended to plant favoys or cabbage plants between them, the rows should be three feet and half asunder.

#### *Marrowfat Peas, &c.*

Sow marrowfat peas once a fortnight, or thereabouts, by which means you will have a constant supply of young peas for the table.

Any other of the large, or smaller kind of peas, as are mentioned in October, may be sown now, allowing the distance of a fortnight, or thereabouts, between each sowing. Draw drills for the different kinds of peas at the distance mentioned in the former month, and sow them regularly, and cover them with earth about an inch and a half deep.

All the sorts of peas should now be sown in open situations, not under trees, or near buildings.

Draw earth to the stems of such peas and beans as are now up some height; it will strengthen the plants greatly, and will encourage their growth.

#### *Turneps.*

Sow turneps about the middle, or towards the latter end of this month, in an open situation, and where the ground is light.

Note, Turneps may be sown at the beginning of the month, if required; but those which are sown so early, are apt to run up for seed before they apple, or at least before they arrive at any considerable size.

The proper seed to sow is, that known by the name of Dutch turnep, it being the best sort to sow in gardens, but especially for the first and second crops.

#### *Celery.*

If celery was not sown the last month, let some seed be sown the beginning of this, for an early crop; sow some more of the same seed about the middle or towards the latter end, for the principal crop. The seed should be sown in a warm spot of rich earth; covering it but lightly, not more than a quarter of an inch; or you may rake it in



with a light and even hand. Sprinkle the bed with water frequently in dry weather.

Let it be observed there are two sorts of celery; one known by the name of Italian or upright celery; the other called celeriac, or turnep-rooted celery. The first is that which is most commonly cultivated, being generally planted in trenches for blanching its stalks, which are the principal part of it; but the celeriac is generally planted on level ground; the roots of it swell like a turnep, and is that part of the plants which is used.

#### *Small Sallading.*

Small sallading, such as cresses, mustard, radish, rape, and turnep, should, when a constant supply is wanted, be sown once a week at least, in a warm border, observing to draw some shallow drills three inches asunder; sow the seeds therein, each sort separate, and cover them lightly with earth.

For the particular method of sowing these seeds, see the work of last month; and when the plants begin to come up; and if the earth cake, so as they cannot rise freely, let the earth be lightly whisked with the hand, as is there mentioned.

#### *Purslane.*

Purslane, if required early, should be sown the beginning of this month, in a hot-bed. Make the bed slight, eighteen inches high will do; put a frame on and cover the bed with earth four or five inches thick: sow the seed on the surface, and cover it about a quarter of an inch with light earth.

This seed may be sown in a bed of rich earth, in the natural ground, at the end of the month.

#### *Sowing Parsley, Chervil, Basil, and Coriander.*

Sow parsley, chervil, and coriander seeds; draw some shallow drills for these seeds eight or nine inches asunder; sow each sort in separate drills, and cover them about half an inch deep with earth.

These herbs are all to remain where sown, and the chief culture they require is to be kept clear from weeds.

Parsley may be sown in a single drill at the edge of the quarters, or borders of this garden: it will make a useful, and also a neat edging, if not suffered to grow rank.

Basil

Basil is in some families used as a kitchen herb, it is propagated by seed, and this is the season to sow it.

But for the greater certainty of success, it will be adviseable to sow it in a slight hot-bed, and in dry earth; or the seed will rot; and be careful to defend it from wet till the plants are come up.

They are to be managed as directed for capsicums.

*Sowing and planting various Sorts of Pot and Physical Herbs.*

The seeds of fennel, dill, borage, burnet, (cortis), marigold, and fever-few, should be sown the beginning of this month, if not sown in February.

Clary, smallage, orach, and bugloss, may be sown at the same time, and the seeds of all other herbs of the same kind.

Plant slips of balm, burnet, tarragon, tansy, penny-royal, fever-few, and chamomile.

In taking off the slips be careful to preserve some roots to each, plant them nine or ten inches distance from each other, in beds of rich earth.

Sow hyssop, thyme, savory, and sweet-marjoram, at the beginning, but they succeed very well if sown any time in this month. These seeds should be sown separately in spots of rich light earth, and raked in; or, these seeds may also be sown in shallow drills along the edges of borders or beds, where the plants will make neat and useful edgings.

These plants may either remain where sown, or may be transplanted, for which practice they will be fit in June; but if they are to remain where sown, should at the above time be thinned to five or six inches distance, and those which are drawn out may be planted in another spot six inches asunder.

But those which are sown for edgings, need not be thinned.

Plant slips or cuttings of sage, hyssop, thyme, and savory, any time this month.

These slips or cuttings should be the last year's shoots, about five, six, or seven inches long; observing to slip or cut them off close to the place from whence they arise; but there are sometimes to be found slips, or suckers rising from the bottoms of the old plants; and these are often furnished with roots; these slips or suckers are rather to be chosen than cuttings.

Plant them in a shady border five or six inches apart; they will take root in a short time, and will make good plants in three or four months, if you water them in dry



## 108 THE KITCHEN GARDEN. [Mar.

weather; they may be taken up about the end of September, when they will be strong and well rooted, and planted at proper distances in beds of rich earth.

*Rosemary, Rue, Southernwood, &c.*

Plant slips or cuttings of rosemary, rue, southernwood, wormwood and lavender; let these be planted in a shady border, six inches apart; they will take root freely, by observing to water them in dry weather; they may be transplanted into a more open situation about Michaelmas, when they will be well rooted and have got strength.

It must be also observed in planting the cuttings of these plants, that the shoots which were produced last year are to be chosen for planting; they should be from about five or six, to eight or nine inches long, according as you can find them, observing to slip or cut them off close to the part from whence they proceed.

Put each slip or cutting about two parts out of three into the ground.

But sometimes there are also slips or suckers to be met with, which rise immediately from the roots of the old plants; these should also be chosen, because they are often well furnished with roots.

*Sowing Nasturtiums.*

Nasturtiums are often used in families; their flowers for sallads and to garnish dishes, and their seed to pickle.

This is now a good time to sow them, and the sooner in the month the better.

Drills must be drawn for them as is practised for peas; the seeds must be dropped in the drills two or three inches asunder, and to be covered an inch deep with earth.

When the plants are come up about six inches high, they should have sticks placed for them to run up upon, for these plants are of the running or climbing kind.

*Chives.*

Chives are useful in a family, and this is the time to plant them: the method is to part or take off some slips from the old roots, and plant them in beds, where they are to remain, at about eight inches distance.

In slipping or parting the above roots, observe to preserve eight or ten of the small bulbs together in a cluster, and in that manner to plant them.

They



They are to be planted with a dibble, making holes for them at the distance above mentioned; putting one cluster of roots as above in each hole, closing the earth well about them, they will soon take root, and increase very fast.

*Mint.*

This is now a good time to make new plantations of mint.

This plant is propagated either by slips or by parting the roots; but encreasing it by slips is most generally practised, and the method is this:

In the third or fourth week in this month, have recourse to such old beds of mint as are well stocked with young plants, and there slip or draw up a due quantity of the best of the young plants, observing to slip and draw them up with roots; to do which, you must draw them up gently, and with the help of your knife at times, to raise or separate them; by which care, every plant will rise with tolerable good roots.

Having procured the plants, let them be planted in rows about six inches asunder, and set them five or six inches distant in the rows, and let them have immediately a tolerable watering to settle the earth close about their roots.

The method of propagating mint by roots is this; get a quantity of roots, and let these be parted in a proper manner; then draw drills with a hoe six inches asunder; place the roots in the drills, cover them about an inch deep with earth, and then rake the ground.

But when the above method is to be practised, the roots should be procured and planted either in February or the beginning of this month, or in October or November.

These plants will thrive in almost any soil or situation.

N. B. Observe, that all the sorts of mint, such as spear mint, pepper mint, orange mint, &c. may all be propagated by the above method.

*Capficum.*

Sow capficums: the seed-pod of these plants are much esteemed for pickling: let this seed be sown in a hot-bed, about the middle, or towards the latter end of this month; and when the plants appear, let them have a large portion of free air, and water them frequently. In the mid<sup>d</sup> of

latter

latter end of May they will be fit to transplant, which must be into beds of rich earth in the common ground.

But if they were first pricked out from the seed bed, about the middle, or towards the latter end of next month into another slight hot-bed, three or four inches asunder, or into a bed of natural earth, in a warm place; observing to arch either bed over with hoops and cover them on nights and bad weather with mats, will forward them greatly.

#### *Sowing Love Apples.*

In the third or fourth week in this month, is the time to sow some tomato, or love apple seed; the fruit or apples of these plants, are in some families much used in soups, and are also often used to pickle, both when they are green, and when ripe.

The fruit when ripe, is of a beautiful red colour.

The seed must be sown in a slight hot-bed, treating the plants as directed for capicum.

For the further management of them, see the kitchen garden for May.

#### *Garlic, &c.*

Plant garlic and shallots; let these be planted in the manner mentioned in the former month, and the sooner they are planted now, the better.

#### *Scallions.*

The dry onions which begin to shoot in the house may be planted in a small spot in the garden, four or five inches asunder, where they will soon take root, and shoot up freely, and will serve to pull up for scallions.

#### *Scorzonera and Salsafy.*

Sow scorzonera and salsafy where required, and also skirrets: let these seeds be sown thin on separate beds, in an open situation, and raked in; they may be sown any time this month.

They are to remain in the places where sown, observing to thin them to six or eight inches distance each way.

Note, the scorzonera and skirrets, may also be propagated by slips from the sides of old roots, planting them six or eight inches distance.

#### *Large rooted Parsley.*

Sow the seeds of Hamburg or large rooted parsley if they were not sown the former month; let this seed be sown



thin and equally, on beds of rich earth in an open situation, and rake them in : when the plants are up and have got a little strength, they must be thinned to six inches distance, that the roots may have room to swell ; for it is the root of this plant that is to be eaten.

*Kidney-Beans.*

Kidney-beans may be planted about the end of this month, if the weather is dry, and the ground not too wet; they must be planted close under some warm wall, or they will not succeed well.

Draw some drills for them in a warm border, about two feet, or thirty inches asunder.

Place the beans in the drills about two or three inches apart, and cover them with earth about an inch deep.

For the different sorts of kidney-beans, see the kitchen garden for April.

*Cardoons.*

Sow cardoons ; dig a bed of light earth for them in a free situation ; let the seed be sown thin, and water the bed frequently in dry weather.

These plants, after having six or eight weeks growth in the seed-bed, are to be transplanted out for good into an open spot four or five feet asunder.

But observe when the plants have been come up in the seed-bed about a fortnight or three weeks, they should be thinned where they are too thick, leaving them five or six inches asunder, that they may have room to grow without drawing each other up weak.

They will be pretty strong and fit to plant out in June. See the work of that month.

*Potatoes.*

Potatoes may be planted any time this month, but in dry ground : the sooner this is done the better.

These roots thrive best in a moderately light or loose soil, and where it is not wet ; and if you add some dung, it will be a great advantage.

In planting potatoes, be careful to procure some good sets ; that is, to pick a quantity of the best kinds of potatoes, choosing such as are perfectly sound and of a tolerable large size : these are to be prepared for planting by cutting or quartering them ; that is to say, each root to be cut into two, three, or more pieces, minding particularly



## 112. THE KITCHEN GARDEN. [Mar.]

ticularly that each piece be furnished with at least one or two eyes.

Being thus prepared, they are to be planted in rows not less than eighteen inches, nor more than two feet asunder, and to be set twelve or fifteen inches distant in the row.

They may be planted either as you proceed in digging or ploughing the ground, placing them as you advance, in the trenches or furrows; and it would be a great advantage, to add at the same time to every trench, &c. a moderate quantity of dung, laying it over the potatoes, and then turn the earth over that, and so on to the end.

Or you may, if thought more convenient, first dung, dig, or plough the ground, and afterwards plant the potatoes with a dibble; or otherwise draw, with a hoe or plough, drills or trenches about six or seven inches deep, and so place the potatoe-sets in the drills, and cover them in.

Those persons who plant large quantities, and practise planting them with dibbles, have dibbles made for that purpose; they are about three feet long, with a cross handle at top, to take hold on with both hands, and the lower end shod with iron, about a foot up, having a foot or shoulder of iron fixed at about six inches from the bottom, to put your foot upon to help to thrust it into the ground, thrusting it always as far in the ground as the above shoulder, by which means the holes are made all an exact depth.

One person is employed in making the holes, and another to follow after to drop in the potatoes, which work of dropping them may be performed by women, or girls or boys.

### *Jerusalem Artichokes.*

Plant Jerusalem artichokes where required.

These roots will thrive in almost any soil; but observe it is not easy to clear the ground of them again, for the least bit will grow.

Let them be planted in rows two feet asunder, and about fifteen inches distant in the rows.

Observe the same method in planting them, as directed for potatoes.

The

Mar.]

( FIG )

## The Fruit Garden.

### *Pruning Fig-Trees.*

**P**RUNE fig-trees, this being the best time of the year for performing that work.

Some prune figs the latter end of autumn, but that is wrong; the young bearing shoots being tender, many of them are liable to be killed by the frost in severe winters; and therefore, if they were to be pruned in autumn, and no more shoots left than what will just furnish the wall, and severe frost after destroy many of the shoots, you have then no recourse left for shoots to supply these vacancies.

The best way, therefore, is to let these trees remain unpruned till this season; then, if severe frosts should happen, there will be a chance, out of the whole, to find enough that have escaped the frost, to lay in to furnish the wall.

In pruning fig-trees, observe to leave a sufficient supply of the last summer's wood, from the bottom to the extremity, every way, in every part where possible, and where there is proper room to train them; so that the tree may be equally furnished with them, at moderate distances, for these bear the figs the ensuing season; for fig-trees always produce their fruit on the one year's old wood.

Leave the branches and shoots in general, not less than seven or eight inches asunder.

And next, let it be observed, that the superabundant shoots, or such as are not wanted, as cannot be trained in without being too near together, should be cut off quite close, leaving no spur or stump; being careful to cut out the worst, and leave the strongest and most promising well placed shoots, at the distance abovementioned.

Take care always, in particular, to train in every year some young shoots, at or near the bottom, that there may be a supply of young branches coming up regularly one after another, to supply the places of old naked branches, which will appear every season in some part or other of the tree; for such branches as are old, and have no young wood on them, should be cut out, that there may be sufficient room to train the bearing branches neatly, and at proper distances.



In cutting out any of the large branches of these trees, either such as are too high for the wall, or such as appear useless, by having no young wood on them, should be either cut off to the place from whence they proceed, or to some convenient young shoot or branch, cutting them quite close, leaving no stump.

The young branches of fig-trees must not be shortened or topped, but leave each at full length; for were they to be shortened, it would not only cut away the part where fruit would have appeared, but also occasion them to run much to wood, and thereby never produce half a crop of fruit.

The tree being pruned, let every branch be immediately nailed strait and close to the wall, at equal distances, seven or eight inches from each other, or thereabout.

*Propagating and planting Fig-Trees.*

Plant fig-trees where wanted; this being rather the best month in the year for removing them; for they will now take root in a very short time.

In planting figs, it will be necessary to observe, that these trees are propagated, in general, either by layers, or by the suckers which arise from the roots of the old trees.

Therefore, when it is intended to plant these trees, let some good suckers, of a moderate growth, and such as are firm and well ripened, be procured either the beginning of this month, or in October, and plant them at once in the place where they are to remain.

But those trees which are raised by layers made from the branches, are rather to be preferred to the suckers, because suckers are apt to run more to wood. The season for laying down the branches to raise new trees, is in March, October, or November: but, in time of hard frosts, they should be covered with long litter; these layers will be well rooted in a year, when they should be separated from the old tree, and planted where they are to remain.

If these trees are to be planted against walls, or pales, let them be planted at least twenty feet distance from each other.

*Pruning Apricot, Peach, and Nectarine-Trees.*

Where apricots, peaches, and nectarine-trees, still remain unpruned, let them now be pruned and nailed, as  
soon



soon as possible; they should be finished by the middle of the month, at farthest.

The buds of these trees being now pretty much swelled for bloom, are thereby liable to be rubbed off with the least touch; therefore, great care should be taken when you prune them, otherwise many of the buds will be displaced.

In pruning these trees, let the same method be observed as in the former months.

Nail the branches even, and close to the wall, at equal distances, taking particular care of the buds, for they are more liable to be rubbed off in nailing than pruning.

*Preserving the Blossoms and young Fruit of Wall-Trees.*

When apricot, peach, and nectarine-trees, are in bloom, some of the choice kinds should be defended from frost, if it should happen at that time, by covering the trees with mats.

The mats for this purpose should be of the largest size; one end of them should be fastened with nails or hooks, to the top of the wall, and let them hang down over the trees. The lower end of the mats should also be fastened down, to prevent their being blown to and fro by the wind, which would beat the blossoms off.

When the weather is mild, the mats should be taken off; for it is only in sharp frosts that the blossom requires to be thus sheltered.

To preserve the blossoms of young fruit, I have sometimes stuck the trees with branches of ever-green, which I have found to be often serviceable.

This should also be done just when the trees are coming into blossom. The proper materials for this, are pieces of the branches of laurel, yew, fir, and some other hardy ever-greens, preserving the leaves to them, and observing to stick them between the branches and the wall, in such manner as to shelter all those branches which are in blossom: they may be permitted to remain constantly, till the fruit is fairly set, and the blossom dropped, then to be taken away; it is the safest way to continue these or other shelters, till the fruit is as big as large peas.

I have seen some people stick their trees, in time of their bloom, with branches of dried fern.

*Finish*

*Pruning Pears, Plums, Cherries, Apples, &c.*

Finish pruning pears, plums, cherries, and apple-trees, either against walls, espaliers, or standards.

Pruning of these, and all other fruit-trees, which yet remain unpruned, should now be forwarded as fast as possible, that the whole may be finished before the middle of the month.

*Planting Fruit Trees.*

Fruit-trees of all kinds may be planted, any time from the beginning till about the twentieth of this month, with success.

The trees which are planted now will take root in a short time; and, with the assistance of a little water in dry weather, they will shoot freely.

Note, in moist soils, fruit-trees may be planted any time this month; there will be no hazard of their growing, but the sooner in the month all planting is done the better.

In planting fruit-trees, either for walls, espaliers, or standards, observe to plant each kind at the distances mentioned in the former month.

For the proper soil and situation for the several kinds of fruit, see the work of October and November.

The method of planting is to open a wide hole for every tree, and when it is opened to the depth you intend it, loosen the bottom well.

Then prune the roots of the tree; that is, cut off bruised and ragged roots, and trim the ends of all the roots in general.

This being done, place the tree in the hole, then break the earth well, and throw it in equally about the roots; and when all is in, tread the surface gently round the tree.

New planted fruit-trees should be well secured from the violence of the wind: if they are standards, let them be supported with stakes; if dwarfs, against walls or espaliers, by being fastened thereto.

*Pruning and ordering young Apricot, Peach, and Nectarine Trees.*

Now is the only proper time to head down young apricot, peach, and nectarine-trees, which have been planted any



any time since last Michaelmas, with their first shoots, from budding at full length.

This should be done just as the trees begin to push; therefore watch the opportunity, and let their heads be shortened at the proper time, which will be a great advantage.

The head should be cut down to the third or fourth eye from the bottom; and if there are two shoots from the same stock, let them both be cut down, as above.

The reason of this practice is, that the trees may produce some strong shoots near the ground, so that they may be furnished equally with branches, from the surface of the earth, to the top of the wall.

But if the trees were not to be headed down, as above, they would run up with a stem like a standard tree, and not furnish you with a branch, to signify, within two or three feet of the ground; so that the use of so much of that part of the wall would be entirely lost.

Such young apricot, peach, and nectarine-trees, as were headed down a year ago, and having each produced three or four shoots the last summer, should now have these shortened to such lengths, as may encourage each shoot to produce two or three new ones, the same season.

The method is this: let each shoot be shortened to about one half of its original length; that is, such as are twenty inches long, should be shortened to ten or eleven inches; and such as are fifteen inches in length, or thereabouts, should be shortened to eight or nine inches, and so in proportion to the different lengths of the shoots.

By this practice each of these shoots will produce three or four new shoots the succeeding summer, so that by Michaelmas, each young tree so treated, will, if they have thriven well, be furnished with, perhaps, fifteen, eighteen, or twenty shoots.

The trees may then be pruned, according to the method directed for the older trees of that sort, observing still to shorten the young shoots, but in such a manner, as they may both produce fruit, and a supply of young wood as above said; observe the directions given for the full bearing trees, that is, to cut off about one third of each shoot, and then nail them strait and close to the wall about six inches asunder.

*The ordering young Apple-Trees, &c.*

Prune down also the heads of young dwarf apples, pears, plums, and cherry-trees, which were lately planted against walls or espaliers, that they may put out some good shoots near the ground, to furnish the bottom of the wall, or espalier, therewith.

If the heads of these trees are but of one year's growth from the bud or graft, let them be shortened to three or four eyes, observing to do it just as they begin to break, as before mentioned.

Suppose they are two years from the bud or graft, and the first shoots were cut down as above, last spring; let the shoots which were produced from them the last summer, be also shortened now to six or seven inches.

The same rule holds good with these, as mentioned for the apricots and peaches, for it is by shortening properly, the first and second year's shoots, from the budding and grafting, that the whole success depends on forming a useful and handsome tree.

When a young wall or espalier tree, is well furnished with branches near the ground, these will readily supply you with more in their turn, to furnish the wall or espalier upwards.

But in the common course of pruning apples, pears, plums, and cherries, their shoots, or branches, are not to be shortened; for after the young trees are furnished with a proper supply of branches at bottom, their shoots must then be trained to the wall at length, only shortening a particular shoot at places where more wood may be required to furnish that part.

For more particulars in that work, see the work of last month.

*Goosberries and Currants.*

Prune goosberry and currant bushes, where they are not yet done; but let this be done at the beginning of the month.

Keep the branches thin, and the middle of the trees open, and clear of wood, so as to admit the sun and air freely, by which means the fruit will be large and well tasted.

Dig the ground between the goosberry and currant trees, where it has not been done in the former months.



The loosening of the ground about the roots of these shrubs, is of great service to them, and at no time more useful than the present, as they are just now beginning to shoot.

*Pruning and planting Raspberries.*

Prune raspberries, where not done before, observing to cut out all dead wood; and where the live shoots which were produced last year stand too thick, let them be thinned out as in the former month, and shorten the shoots which are left.

For the particular method of pruning, see last month.

The ground between the rows of raspberries should now be dug, if it was not done before; it will strengthen the shoots, and add a neatness to the place.

Plantations of raspberries may be made at the beginning, or middle of this month; they will take root soon after they are planted, and will grow freely, provided you give them a little water now and then in dry weather.

In planting raspberries, remember it is the young shoots which were produced from the old roots last year, that are the proper plants; choosing such whose roots are well furnished with fibres, rejecting such as have naked sticky roots.

Let them be planted in the manner, and at the distance mentioned in the former month.

*Digging the Fruit-tree Borders.*

Dig the fruit-tree borders which are not yet done.

This will be serviceable to the trees, and will destroy weeds; and after being neatly raked, the borders will appear fresh and decent.

Stir with a hoe, the surface of such borders as were dug in the former months; that is, such as are not sown with close crops; such as radishes, lettuce, spinage &c. and then let them be raked smooth; by which means the growth of young seed-weeds will be retarded, and the whole will appear neat.

*Prune Vines.*

Where there are vines that are not yet pruned, let them now be done as soon in the month as possible; for when vines are pruned too late, there is seldom a good crop succeeds.

For the particular method of pruning them, see the work of last month, or November.

*Pro-*

*Propagate Vines.*

Plant cuttings of vines any time this month, by which means you may propagate any sort you desire, for the cuttings will take root freely.

They may be planted in the places where they are to remain, either against walls, or elsewhere; which is much the best method.

The cuttings must be shoots of the last year, shortening them to twelve inches in length, or thereabouts; and let each cutting have about an inch, or so, of the former year's wood at its bottom.

Plant them somewhat slanting, and so deep that only one eye may appear above ground, and that should be close to the surface.

Vines are also propagated by layers, observing to lay the young shoot with part of the branch it proceeds from, covering it three inches deep with earth, leaving three or four eyes of the shoot out of the ground.

*Strawberries.*

Dress the strawberry beds if they were not done in the former month; the plants will now begin to push a-pace, and the sooner this is done the better.

Clear the beds from weeds, and the plants from strings, and other litter; and if the plants stand too thick, let some be thinned out.

It is the best method to keep these plants in single bunches as it were, and clear of each other, so that there may be room to dig round them with a narrow spade or a trowel.

The beds being cleared from litter, loosen the earth between the plants; and if you add a little fresh earth to the beds, it will strengthen the plants, and they will flower strong, and produce large fruit.

Strawberries may now be planted where required. Observe the same method as mentioned in the former month.

## The Pleasure, or Flower Garden.

*Early pricking out annual Flowers.*

**M**AKE a new hot-bed about the middle or latter end of this month, to prick the tender annuals in, which were sown in February. Let the bed be thirty inches or thereabout, and make the top even; then set on



the frame ; and, when the great heat is over, let the earth be put on ; let the earth be light and rich, and perfectly dry, and lay it equally over the bed six inches thick. When the earth is warm, prick the plants therein at three or four inches distance each way, and give them a little sprinkling of water ; then let the glasses be put on, observing to raise them a little every day to let out the steam ; shade the plants from the sun, till they have taken fresh root.

When the plants are rooted and begin to push, they should have fresh air every day ; therefore let the upper ends of the glasses be raised a good height, to admit it to them : remember to sprinkle them with water frequently, but a little at each time.

*Sowing tender Annuals.*

A hot-bed may be made the beginning or any time of this month, to sow the seeds of any kinds of tender annual flowers in, where it was not done in February. Make the bed in every respect as directed in the former month. The same kinds of seeds may be sown. For the different sorts see April.

The plants raised from this sowing may be brought forward to blow strong and beautiful in July, and continue till the frost destroys them.

Remember they are not to remain in the hot-bed where raised, but are to be transplanted some into pots, and some into the borders. See the work of April, May, and June.

*Sowing hardier Kinds of Annuals.*

A slight hot-bed should be made in the second or third week of this month, wherein to sow the seeds of the more hardy kinds of annual flowers.

Make the bed two feet high ; and after the top is made level and smooth, let the frame be put on, and lay the thickness of four or five inches of rich earth equally all over the bed.

Sow in this bed the seeds of China aster, India pink, marvel of Peru, balsam, palma Christi, capsicum, mignonette, basil, French and African marigolds, and ten-week stocks. In the same bed, sow the seeds of chrysanthemum, tree and purple amaranthus, perfoliatus, love-apple, scabiouses, convolvulus major, and stramoniums, with several other sorts. See the work of April.

Note, Observe they are only to be raised in the hot-bed, and afterwards transplanted.

The method of sowing these seeds is this: draw shallow drills from the back to the front of the frame, two or three inches asunder: sow the seeds therein, each sort separate, and not too thick; cover the smallest seed about a quarter of an inch, and the largest near half an inch. When the plants are come up let them have air, by raising the glasses a considerable height every day; when they have been up some time, and have got a little strength, they must be gradually hardened to bear the open air, by taking the lights entirely off every mild day. Refresh them now and then with moderate sprinklings of water: some of them will be fit to prick out next month, and all of them in May. See these months.

Note, where glasses are not, or are used otherways, you may arch the bed over with hoops, and on nights and bad weather, to cover with large garden mats, or canvas cloth, &c.

Where a hot-bed cannot be conveniently obtained, you may, towards the end of the month, sow some of the above-mentioned annual flower seeds on a warm border, where the earth is rich and light, and cover occasionally with mats.

The sorts that will succeed by that method, are China aster, ten-week stocks, India pink, African and French marigold, chrysanthemum, purple and tree amaranthus, persicarias, scabiouses and convolvulus major; sow the seeds thin, each sort separate; and arch the bed over with hoops: then, every night, and in bad weather, let mats be drawn across the hoops. With this management the plants will come up, and grow freely; and if you refresh them with water in dry weather, they will be fit to plant out about the end of May or beginning of June, and will flower pretty strong, and in tolerable good time in autumn.

For their full management, see the work of the three succeeding months.

#### *Hardy annual Flowers.*

Sow in the borders and other parts of this garden the seeds of all sorts of hardy annual flowers. The sorts are, large and dwarf annual sunflower, oriental mallow, lavatera, venice mallow, larkspur, flos adonis, sweet sultan, large flesh-coloured and blue and yellow lupines. Sow also convolvulus major, sweet-scented and Tangier peas, and nasturtium.



Mar.]

FLOWER GARDEN.

123

*nasturtium*. Likewise sow the seeds of the Spanish *nigella*, purple and white candy tuft, venus looking-glass, venus navel-wort, dwarf double poppy, lobels, catchfly, dwarf annual *lychnis*, snails, caterpillars, and *convolvulus minor*, and some others. See next month.

All the above kinds of hardy annual flower seeds should be sown, each kind separate, in patches in the different borders, and in the manner mentioned in the former month. The plants must remain to flower, in the places where they were sown, for they do not well bear transplanting: therefore, when they come up, let them be thinned where they have risen too thick; water the patches in dry weather, both before and after the plants are come up.

*Giving fresh Earth to Plants in Pots.*

Give some fresh earth to the pots of double wall-flowers, double stock july flowers, double sweet-williams, rockets, rose champions, catchfly, *campanulus*, and scarlet *lychnis*, and such like plants, which were potted last autumn, or before.

In doing this, clean the plants first from decayed leaves, then take some of the earth out of the pots, but take care not to go so deep as to displace the roots of the plants; then fill up the pots again with the fresh earth, and give them some water; this will strengthen their roots, and the plants will shoot freely, and produce large flowers.

*Chrysanthemums.*

The cuttings of double *chrysanthemums*, which were planted in boxes or pots last autumn, and preserved all winter in frames, &c. should now be planted out singly in the pots where they are to flower; some of them may be planted out next month in the borders among other flowers, where they will flower early and strong, and make a handsome appearance.

*Auricula Plants.*

The fine *auricula* plants in pots should now be guarded from much wet, cold winds and frost; such weather being hurtful to their flower buds, which are now in forwardness. Therefore continue the pots under the hoop arches, where the plants can enjoy the open air, and be defended when there is occasion, by drawing mats over the hoop.

The plants should not be debarred from a warm and moderate shower of rain now and then, if such should

happen, for that will do them good. When the weather is dry let them be refreshed moderately with water at times, just enough to keep the earth a little moist about their roots.

The pots should be kept free from weeds, and the plants from decayed leaves.

#### *Carnation Layers.*

The carnations which were raised from layers last year, and which are not yet planted into the large pots where you intend them to flower, should be planted therein the beginning of this month.

Take up the plants with some of their own earth about their roots, and place one plant in the middle of each pot; but if the pots be large, you may put two plants in each, closing the earth well about them, and give a moderate watering to settle the earth about their roots. Place the pots where the plants may be defended from cold winds, and water them moderately and frequently in dry weather.

The carnation plants which were planted last autumn, into the pots where they are to remain, should now be fresh earthed.

Let the plants first be cleared from dead leaves, then take some of the earth out of the pots, as near to their roots as possible, without disturbing them; then let the pots be filled up with the fresh mould, laying it close round the plants; after which, water the pots to settle the earth.

The fresh earth will be of great service to the plants, it will strengthen them, and cause them to shoot strong, and produce large and handsome flowers.

This is now the time to sow carnation seed. See the work of sowing perennial plants in the next page.

#### *Protecting Tulips and other Flowers.*

Now protect the more curious kinds of tulips, hyacinths, ranunculuses, and anemonies, from cold rains, and frosts, which frequently happen in this month. Their flower-buds are now advancing apace; therefore, if you desire to have large and beautiful flowers, you must bestow covering on them; then they will blow in their true perfection. Let the hoop arches be continued over the beds, as mentioned in the former month, and every night, and at all



all times, when the weather is frosty, and in excessive rains let the mats be drawn over the hoops.

In mild days let them be constantly uncovered, that they may enjoy the free air; and a moderate shower of rain will do them no harm, but will be serviceable.

If the hoops, which are fixed across the beds, are low and too near the flowers, they should be removed, and taller hoops should be fixed across in their places.

#### *Hyacinths.*

Hyacinths will now begin to advance apace; you should therefore prepare some sticks to support their flower stems, for the large double flowers being heavy, the stalk alone is not able to bear them up. Let a small short stick be fixed in the ground near every plant, and let their flower stalk be brought close, and fastened to them neatly with some soft tying.

#### *Planting Ranunculuses and Anemonies.*

Plant, if required, some ranunculuses and anemonies; they will blow and make a fine appearance in May and June, after the early planted ones are gone. In dry weather, let the beds be frequently watered after the plants are up, and they will flower tolerably strong.

#### *Sowing various Kinds of fibrous rooted perennial and biennial Plants.*

Perennial and biennial flower seeds, of most kinds, may be sown any time this month.

It is to be observed that these kinds do not flower the same year they are sown, but all this sort of them will flower strong, and in the greatest perfection, the year after.

As every one may not know the meaning of perennial and biennial plants, we will here explain it. Know then, that the perennial plants are those which continue many years, such as pinks, &c. The biennials are those that are of two years duration, being sown one year, and flower and perfect their seeds the next, and soon after die, such as the French honey-suckle, Canterbury bell flower, &c.

The kinds proper to be sown now, are carnations, pinks, sweet williams, wall-flowers, and stock july flowers, of all sorts. Sow also single rose campion, catchfly, scarlet lychnis, columbines, Greek valerian, scabiouses, and Canterbury bells.

The seeds of hollyhocks, French honey-suckles, hellebore, honesty or fatten flower, tree primrose, shrubby mal-

low, broad leaved companula and fox gloves, with seeds of most other sorts of perennial and biennial plants, may now be sown.

For an account of the various sorts to be raised from seeds, see next month, and the catalogue of plants at the end of the book.

All the above, and other hardy perennial flower seeds, are to be sown in beds of light earth in the open ground.

Dig a spot for them in a warm situation, but not close to walls or other fences. Divide the piece into beds forty inches wide, and the beds into as many parts as you have kinds of seeds; sow them thin, and each kind separate; and let them be covered properly with earth; the larger seed half an inch, and the smaller seeds about a quarter of an inch deep.

But in sowing these kinds, or any other sorts of perennial flower seeds, it is the practice of many people to draw drills to sow them in, proportioning the depth of the drill to the size of the particular seeds, and so that each kind can be more regularly covered with the proper depth of earth they require; but, although this practice is very proper for the larger kinds of seeds, such as holyhocks, &c. yet the smaller seeds may be sown by broad-cast on the surface of the beds; then tread in the seeds, and rake the ground smooth. Some people practice the following method: first rake the surface of the bed smooth, then, with the back of the rake, turn the depth of a quarter or half an inch of earth equally off the surface of the beds into the alley; then sow the seed, and, with the teeth of the rake, draw the earth back again over the seed.

When the weather is dry, sprinkle the beds frequently with water, but especially when the plants begin to appear, and the plants will be fit to prick out in May and June.

For it must be observed, that all the above, and other perennial plants raised from seed, are to be transplanted, first pricking them out from the seed bed about the end of May and in June, (see these months,) and then about Michaelmas to be transplanted to where they are to remain to flower:

#### *Dig the Borders.*

Dig such borders or other parts of this garden, as are not yet done, and rake them smooth; they will then be ready



ready to receive the seeds of annual flowers, and plants of others; besides, they will appear fresh and neat.

*Transplanting Perennial Plants.*

Where there are vacancies in any of the beds, borders, or other parts of this garden, they may now be filled up with many different kinds of flower plants, which will yet succeed, if planted soon in the month.

The sorts proper to plant now, are lychnises, rose-campions, rockets, catchfly, and campanulas: they may be planted any time this month, where required; but the sooner the better.

Plant also in the borders or clumps, carnations, pinks, and sweet-williams, both double and single; batchelors buttons, and double feverfew; golden rod, perennial sun-flowers, perennial-asters, and French honey-suckles; also columbines, Canterbury-bells, monks-hood, fox-gloves, tree-primrose, and most others of the like sort. See the flower garden for September.

All the above plants will take root in a short time, and, if you supply them with water now and then, in dry weather, they will all of them flower this season.

Plant also dwarf fibrous rooted flowers, where wanted, in the borders; they will take root freely, and in a little time.

Such as polyanthes, auriculas, double daisies, double chamomile, London pride, violets, hepaticas, thrift, primroses, and gentianella; and any other such like kinds (see September) will succeed well, if planted at the beginning of this month.

Give them some water when first planted, and at times till they are well rooted; and they will grow freely.

*Hoe and rake the Borders*

Loosen the surface of those beds or borders which were dug and planted with flowers of any kind last autumn, or any time since.

Let this be done in a dry day, and with a small hoe, stirring the earth carefully between the plants, taking care of the shoots from bulbous roots, which are now just peeping through the surface; then let the beds or borders be neatly raked; and, as you go on, clear away all decayed leaves which appear about any of the plants, and let the whole be cleared from weeds, and every sort of rubbish.

By thus loosening the surface of the borders, the first growth of seed-weeds will be prevented, and it will greatly

promote the growth of the flowers, and the borders will appear clean and agreeable to look at.

*Dig the Clumps in the Shrubbery.*

Dig the ground in the clumps or borders between flowering shrubs and evergreens. If not done in the former months, let this be done at the beginning of this month; it will help the plants greatly, and the ground being turned up fresh, the plants will shew themselves well.

*Planting flowering Shrubs.*

Where flowering shrubs, or trees, are wanted in any part of this garden, they may now be brought in and planted, for most sorts will yet succeed.

Such as the althæa-frutex, spireas, syringas, roses, gelder-rose, honey-suckles, arbor-judæ, jasmines, common lilac, persian-lilac, mezereon, tacamahacca, laburnums, hypericum frutex, bladder-nut, fumach, candle-berry, myrtle, dogwood or euonymus, Virginia dogwood, double flowering cherry, dwarf almond, and all other kinds of hardy flowering shrubs, may still be planted.

For a more particular account of all the different sorts, see the catalogue of shrubs at the end of the book, and in the work of November.

*Exotick-Trees.*

Hardy exotic flowering trees or shrubs, of most kinds, may also be transplanted any time this month.

*Transplanting Evergreens.*

Evergreens of most kinds may be planted any time this month, where required; they will take root sooner now than at any other time of the year.

Particularly the arbutus, or strawberry-tree, magnolias and bays, the evergreen spindle tree, or euonymus, pyracanthas, phillyrea, and alaternus, may be transplanted any time this month, when the weather is mild. Plant also where wanted laurels, Portugal laurels, lauristinus, evergreen-oak, hollies and yews; also cytisus, and cistus, with any other such like kinds of evergreen shrubs or trees.

The cedars of Lebanon may be likewise transplanted any time in this month, as also pines and firs of all sorts, cypress, junipers, arbor-vitæ, yew, and savin.

All



All other sorts of evergreen shrubs and trees, may likewise be safely transplanted at this season. For a list of these various sorts, see October, or the catalogue at the end of the book.

*Directions for planting all Sorts of Shrubs.*

Let the evergreens and all other shrubs, be planted at such distance that they may not crowd each other, as they grow up, for they always shew themselves best when they stand at some distance from each other. Shrubs of all kinds should be planted at such distances, that there may be good room to dig the ground between them, and also to hoe and clean, when wanted.

In planting evergreens and shrubs of every kind, let all convenient expedition be made in doing it, so that they may be planted as soon as possible after they are taken up, or brought from the nursery, or elsewhere, that their roots may not be dried by the sun and wind; but when the shrubs are brought from any distance, and that they cannot be immediately planted, untie the bundles, and lay their roots in a trench, and cover them with earth, to lie till the places allotted them are ready to receive them.

In preparing for planting observe to open a hole for each shrub, wide enough to receive the roots freely, and let them be of a proper depth, and loosen the bottom well. The holes being ready, bring the shrubs, and prune off broken or bruised roots; then place them in the hole upright, break the earth well, and throw it in equally about their roots, and let them be covered a proper depth. Make the earth hollow, like a basin, round each shrub, to hold water when given in dry weather; and lay some mulch, or some sort of litter, on the surface, round the tree, to preserve the earth moist about their roots.

Immediately after planting, fix stakes to such as require support, and let them be fastened thereto. Let every shrub, as soon as it is planted, be well watered, to settle the earth about the roots.

*Planting Roses.*

Rose trees of most sorts may still be removed.

Those that are planted any time this month will produce flowers the same year; but the sooner they are planted the better, they will take root, and the stronger they will flower.

But curious persons often plant these shrubs late in the season, in order to have a late bloom. I have planted them in April, and had them flower in August and September.

*Planting Edges for Beds or Borders.*

Plant box edging, when wanted: it will take root soon, and grow free enough, provided you water it a few times. Where there are any gaps in the former planted edgings, let them now be made good; for ragged and uneven edgings have a disagreeable look.

Thrift, if neatly planted, makes pretty edgings to borders, or flower beds, and is by some much esteemed for that purpose. Plant this, where required, the beginning of the month; and water it at times, in dry weather, till it is well rooted.

Double daisies are also sometimes used for edgings to beds and borders. Pinks may likewise be planted for edgings; and to such persons as sell the flowers, it makes a very profitable edging.

*Clean the Pleasure Garden.*

Every part in this garden should now be well cleaned, and put into the best order.

Keep the grass walks and lawns perfectly clear from worm-casts, for these appear unsightly, and spoil the grass. Where such appear, let them be broken and spread about with a taper and pliable ash pole, and let the grass be afterwards well rolled, by which means you will be able to mow it close and even.

Grass will now begin to grow a-pace, if the weather is mild; therefore let the walks or lawns be mowed in good time, before the grass is rank; otherwise you cannot cut it close, so as to have a fine and even bottom.

Let the edges of the walks or lawns be all neatly cut now, with a sharp edged iron; it will add greatly to the neatness of them.

*Laying Turf.*

New grass-walks or lawns may still be made, where required, any time this month.

Turf will grow freely if laid now, provided it is laid down soon after it is cut. It should be well beat after it



is laid, and well rolled after heavy showers of rain, which will render the surface smooth and firm.

### *Gravel Walks.*

Gravel-walks should now be kept perfectly clean from weeds, and suffer no sort of litter to lay upon them.

Roll the walks well twice every week, when the weather will permit, by which means they will be firm, and the surface will be smooth, and agreeable to walk upon, and to look at.

Now is the time to begin to turn gravel-walks where the surface is dirty, or over-grown with moss, or full of small weeds.

By turning the gravel, the moss and weeds will be destroyed, and the walks will appear as fresh as when first made.

Such gravel-walks as were broken up and laid in ridges, the beginning of winter, should now be levelled down, and put into their proper form.

But this ridging of gravel-walks, in winter, is the most ill-looking and unnecessary contrivance, that ever was introduced into a garden; though a common custom among gardeners.

There is, I think, in this practice, something very contrary to reason; the walks are thereby rendered altogether useless, in the winter season; when, in some gardens, it must certainly be very incommodious, both to the proprietor and the gardener himself; and in all gardens it has a desolate and confused appearance.

The reason some give for this absurd custom is, that it prevents the growth of weeds; but I deny that, for it has rather the contrary effect: there is one thing I can affirm, that, by ridging the walks in winter, it greatly deadens the colour of the gravel, and prevents its binding properly, when laid down in the right form.

However, where this has been practised, let the ridges be levelled down some time this month.

Let this work be done in dry days.

In turning, or laying down gravel walks, either old or new, the work should be done to the greatest exactness, the walks being a principal part of a garden.

Gravel-walks should be made highest in the middle; but the rise should be easy, and should come on gradually from both sides, finishing them off somewhat rounding.

## 132 THE PLEASURE GARDEN. [Mar.]

Be careful not to make them too high, or of a sudden rise in the middle, for a walk made in that form is uneasy to walk upon, and is also disagreeable to the eye.

A gravel walk of twelve feet wide, should have a rise of about three or four inches in the middle; that is, the middle should rise gradually so much higher than the sides.

The same rise should be allowed in proportion to the width of every gravel walk; one of twenty-four feet wide, should not have more than six inches rise in the middle; and a walk of six feet wide, should not have more rise than an inch and a half or two inches.

The method is this: allow for every foot the walk is wide, a quarter, but not more than half an inch rise in the middle: this will be sufficient, for the rise should never be more than just perceptible; and if the walk exceeds twenty-four or thirty feet, that allowance should be diminished about one third.

When a gravel-walk is made according to the above dimensions, it will be agreeable to the eye, and a person can walk in any part of it with pleasure; and there will be slope enough to prevent water lodging on any part of the surface.

As you proceed in turning or laying gravel-walks, observe to tread, rake, and roll them, every twenty feet, or thereabouts. The method is this:

When you have advanced with the turning or laying about twenty feet from the end, let that be trodden all over equally; then smooth it off with the back of the rake, and roll it directly; then lay as much more, and tread, rake, and roll that; and so proceed to the end of the walk, for gravel never rakes nor rolls so well as when fresh stirred, especially if it is of a loomy nature: in that case never to level down more than you can rake or roll the same day, for fear of rain happening, which would render it like mortar.

For an account of making new gravel walks, and of the proper sorts of gravel, see the work of April.

### *Planting Forest Trees.*

Forest trees of all sorts may still be removed, but let this be done the beginning of the month; but the planting of these trees should be done in the autumn, or beginning of winter, or early in the spring, especially those that are to be planted, where they cannot be conveniently watered in dry weather, in the spring or beginning of summer.

For the various sorts of forest trees, see December.



*Grafting.*

**G**R AFT apples, pears, plums, cherries, &c. this being the principal season for doing that work.

Having procured grafts of the proper kinds, as mentioned last month, a sharp knife, some new bafs, and a proper quantity of well wrought clay, proceed to the work the beginning of the month.

Cut the head of the stock, which is to be grafted, off, near the ground; that is, if the trees are intended for the wall or espaliers.

But the stocks which are to be grafted for standard trees, may be cut off to what height you see convenient.

In performing the operation of grafting, let the same method be practised now as mentioned in the work of the nursery last month.

*Management of Trees grafted and budded last Year.*

The trees which were grafted a year ago, should now have their shoots which they made last summer shortened, that they may send forth lateral shoots on branches to form a regular head near the stock. See the fruit garden and nursery last month.

Let this be done just as the shoots begin to push, shortening them to four or five eyes.

The stocks which were budded the last summer with fruit, should now have their heads cut off; by which means the whole nourishment will go to the bud.

Having a sharp knife, cut the head of the stock off about a hand's breadth above the bud; let the cut be made sloping, and on the opposite side of the stock to that of the bud. See last month, and the article of budding in June and July.

*Sowing Seeds of hardy foreign Trees and Shrubs.*

Now is the time to sow the seeds of many sorts of hardy exotick-trees and shrubs.

The seeds of the tulip-tree, larch-tree, and plane-tree, may be sown now; also the sassafras, arbor judæ, and the Virginia dogwood; also the seeds of American cypress, Virginia walnut, and the acacias; with the seeds of most other hardy American trees or shrubs.

For a better account of the various sorts which may be raised from seed, see April.

As most of the seed-shops are now generally well furnished with many sorts of exotick-trees and shrub-seeds,

every year, from America, whoever may be inclined to raise any of the said trees or shrubs, from seed, may be supplied with the sorts they desire from the above shops.

The method of sowing the hardy kinds is easy enough; and many sorts of them will grow freely, and with little trouble.

Dig a spot for them where the ground is dry, and of a loose texture, and in a situation not too much exposed, let the earth be perfectly well broken, and make the surface level.

Divide the piece into beds three feet and a half wide, and the beds into as many parts as you have kinds of seeds to sow.

Sow the seeds each sort in its separate spot, or plant them, as you see it most convenient, according to the kinds and sizes of the different seeds.

Cover them with fine light earth, taking care that each sort, according to its size, be covered a proper depth; some half an inch, and others an inch, or an inch and a half deep; according to the size of the seeds, fruits or nuts.

In dry weather let the beds be frequently sprinkled with water; and when the sun is hot, a little shading with mats will be serviceable.

#### *Propagating Shrubs by cutting.*

Exotic-trees and shrubs of many kinds, may be propagated from cuttings; this is a good season to plant them.

Dig a spot for them where the ground is somewhat moist, and not stiff: let the earth be well broken with the spade, and rake the surface smooth: then divide the piece into as many parts as you have kinds of cuttings to plant.

Take off the cuttings with a sharp knife, from the trees or shrubs you want to increase; let them be of the last summer's shoots, and they should be six, eight, or ten inches long, according as you can find them proper for your purpose.

Plant them in rows, and put each cutting about half way in the ground, and close the earth well about them. In dry weather let them be watered twice a week, and keep them perfectly clear from weeds.

The cuttings of most kinds of hardy trees and shrubs, which will grow by that method, may also still be planted, where not done in autumn or last month.

For an account of the principal sorts as may be raised by that method, see the nursery in October.



*Sowing Cedar of Lebanon, and other hardy Evergreen Shrub and Tree Seeds.*

The cedar of Lebanon seeds may be sown now; also the seeds of pines, firs, cypress, juniper; this being the proper season to sow these and the like kinds.

Dig a spot of light earth for these seeds, and divide it into small beds; sow the seed therein, each sort by itself, and cover them with light earth about half an inch.

Watering and shading the beds in dry hot weather will be very necessary. It will be of great service if you do it while the plants are young.

The strawberry-tree, or abutus, may be raised from seed; and this is the season to sow it.

But the most certain method is to sow this seed in a hot-bed. The method is this:

Fill some small pots with fresh light earth; sow the seed therein, and cover it near half an inch; then put the pots to their rims in a hot-bed.

Sprinkle the pots frequently with water, and when the plants appear, they should have a great deal of free air.

These seeds will grow, if you sow them in a bed of natural earth, but not so quick nor so certain.

The acorns of evergreen oak may be sown now; also the seeds of phillyrea and bays, and other evergreens.

Sow these seeds in light earth, and cover the acorns about an inch, and the others about half an inch deep.

For a farther account of the different sorts of evergreens as may be raised by seed, see the nursery next month.

#### *Transplanting Evergreens.*

Transplant evergreen shrubs or trees, from the seed-bed, or from other parts where they stand too close, this being a proper season for removing most sorts of them.

The evergreen oak, phillyrea, alaternus, pyracantha, and bays, may be transplanted now; also the arbutus, laurustinus and Portugal laurel, cytisus, and cistusses, hollies and yews.

Transplant also cedars and cypresses, pines, firs, and junipers, with most other sorts of evergreens and shrubs.

Transplant any kinds of exotick shrubs or trees, where it is necessary to be done, this being the proper season to remove these sorts.

#### *Transplanting flowering Shrubs.*

Most kinds of hardy flowering shrubs, may also be removed now, if required.

In transplanting the different kinds of young trees or shrubs, it should be observed that cloudy and mild calm days should be chosen for the more tenderer kinds, and particularly the evergreen plants; for much depends upon this and the expedition in planting them after they are taken up.

Plant them with care, breaking the earth perfectly well, and see that it falls in properly between and about their roots, as it should do.

Immediately after planting, let them be well watered, and repeat the waterings occasionally in dry weather.

It will be proper to lay some mulch, or some sort of long litter, on the surface, to prevent the sun and wind from drying the earth too much about their roots.

Such as require support, should have it as soon as they are planted; for that purpose let a firm stake be fixed in the ground, and fasten their stems thereto.

#### *Weeding Seedling Trees and Shrubs.*

Look over the seed-beds of young trees and shrubs; if weeds appear on them, let them be carefully picked out by hand in time, before they mix their roots with those of the plants.

#### *Watering Seedling Trees, &c.*

In dry weather it will be proper to refresh the seed-beds of young trees and shrubs, with water, now and then; a little at each time will do; it will be very serviceable to them.

#### *Vines.*

Vines of all sorts may be propagated by cuttings; this is now a proper season to plant them.

The cuttings must be shoots of the last summer's growth, and shortened to ten or twelve inches; and, if possible, let an inch or two of the former year's wood be left at the bottom of each cutting.

Plant the cuttings so deep, that only one eye can be seen, and that must be close to the surface of the earth.

If you practise as above, few of the cuttings will fail; they will take root freely, and produce tolerable shoots the same season.

Keep them perfectly free from weeds, and water them moderately in dry weather.



In planting the above cuttings, observe to put them into the ground in a slanting direction.

But these trees generally succeed best when the cuttings are planted at once in the place where they are to remain.

### The Green-House.

**O**PEN the green-house windows every mild day, that the plants may enjoy the fresh air freely, for now they require that necessary article.

When there is a sharp cutting wind, or a very cold air, the windows should be kept close; for such weather would ruin some of the tender kinds, and would be of bad consequence to all.

Keep the windows close every night.

Look over the tubs or pots, every other day, and see where water is wanting, and let such as require it, be supplied therewith, taking care to use moderation in that case.

Water will be serviceable to most of the plants, but especially to all of the woody kinds, if you apply it in due time, and in moderate quantities, and they will now require it frequent.

But be sure not to give them too much water at a time, for that would prove the destruction of many kinds, and would be prejudicial to the plants in general, especially while they are confined in the green-house.

Keep every plant in the house free from decayed leaves; that is, where such appear, let them be immediately picked off; for these, if permitted to remain, would prejudice the health of the plants; besides, they appear disagreeable.

Where dust, or mouldiness, or any sort of filth appear on the leaves of the orange, or lemon-trees, or the like, let them be cleaned.

This must be done with a sponge dipped in water, cleaning the leaves therewith, one by one.

#### *Heading Orange or Lemon-Trees.*

Where orange or lemon-trees have decayed, or have unfightly heads, it will now be proper to head them down as directed last month, and also at the same time to take

the

the tree out of the pot, or tub, and replacé it again with some fresh earth; by which means they will put out new shoots, and will appear with full and handsome heads, by the end of July.

Prepare for this purpose a proper quantity of fresh earth; let this be broken well with the spade, and lay it ready near the green-house.

Then bring out the trees, and prune their heads as close as you see convenient, and cut out all dead wood.

When this is done, let the tree be taken out of its pot or tub, preserving the ball intire; then with a knife pare away from the bottom and sides all the matted roots, with part of the old earth, equally round the side of the ball; this done, put some fresh earth in the bottom of the pot, or tub, and immediately place the tree, and fill up round the ball with more earth, bringing it at least an inch over the top of the ball.

Give a moderate watering, as soon as they are planted, to cause the earth to settle in among the roots as it should do.

Then return the trees to their places, in the green-house, and let them be refreshed with water frequently; but let this be given in small quantities, just enough to keep the earth about the roots a little moist.

When they are brought out of the house for the summer season, let them be placed in a shady situation, and supply them well with water in dry weather.

But such orange trees, and those whose heads are in a very sickly condition, should be treated, if possible, as directed for such trees in the work of the green-house last month.

#### *Heading down Myrtles.*

Where myrtles have decayed or unsightly heads, let them also be headen down, and let some of the earth be taken off the top of the pots, and round the sides; then fill up the pot with fresh earth, and water them.

These trees, with this management, will break out again very freely, and will, in four or five months time, be well furnished with entire new heads. Supply them duly with water.

#### *Shifting Plants that want it into large Pots.*

Any of the oranges, lemons, or myrtles, or other green-house plants, that want larger pots, may be shifted into them any time this month.



When you take them out of their pots, preserve the ball entire, but let the mouldy or decayed roots, on the outside of the ball, be parted off with a sharp knife, with part of the old earth; then set them in their new pot, and fill up the spaces with fresh earth.

Water them immediately after this, and set them in their place in the green-house, and they will shoot freely, both at top and root.

*Giving fresh Earth to the Pots of Green-house Plants.*

The oranges, and green-house plants in general, which do not require shifting, should have some fresh earth added to the tops of their pots, or tubs; it will encourage the plants greatly, and it is soon done.

First loosen the old earth in the tops of the tubs, or pots, quite to the surface of the roots, not to disturb them, and loosen it also down round the sides, a little way; then take out the loose earth, and fill up the pots with some that is new, and give them a moderate watering.

*Sow Exotick-Tree Seeds.*

A hot-bed may be made the beginning of this month, to sow the seeds of tender exotick-trees, or plants, upon either of the green-house, or stove-kinds. The bed should be made either of hot dung, or fresh tan, and covered with frames and glasses.

The seeds should be sown in pots of light earth, and the pots should be plunged to their rims in the tan, and should be moderately watered at times.

Where tan cannot be obtained readily, you must make the bed of hot dung, preparing it first as you do for other hot-beds.

Make the bed three feet high, set a frame on, and when the great heat is over, lay on three or four inches of earth.

Then fill some small pots with fine light earth, sow the seeds in the pots, and cover them lightly with sifted earth; then plunge the pots in the earth on the bed, and put on the glasses.

Let the pots be frequently sprinkled with water, and when the plants appear, let them have fresh air, by raising the glasses a little way. Observe to keep up the heat of the dung, by applying a lining, when the heat declines much.

*Winter*

*Winter Cherry, or Amomum Plinii.*

The winter cherry, or Amomum Plinii, is by many much esteemed for its beautiful red fruit which it bears in winter. This plant is easily raised from seed; this is the season to sow it, and the method is this:

Fill some pots with rich earth, sow the seed on the surface, and cover it with light earth, about the third part of an inch; then plunge the pots to their rims in a moderate hot-bed, and water them frequently.

When the plants are come up, and about three inches high, they may be planted singly into small pots, and placed in a gentle hot-bed, where they will take root and grow surprisingly, for they are naturally of a quick growth.

They may afterwards be planted into larger pots, and placed in the open air, till the latter end of October, and be then taken into the green-house.

*Sowing Kernels of Oranges for Stocks.*

Now is the time to sow the kernels of oranges and lemons, in order to raise stocks to bud any of these kind of trees upon.

The best method of sowing these kernels, is this: fill some middle-sized pots with very good earth, sow the kernels in the pots, and cover them half an inch deep with earth; then plunge the pots in a hot bed, and let them be frequently watered. See the green-house next month.

## The Hot-House.

*Pines.*

**T**HE pines will now, in general, shew fruit; that is, such as are fruiting plants; they must therefore have good attendance.

Examine the bark-bed, and see if there is a proper heat, for upon that depends the success of having handsome and full-sized fruit.

The great article is to preserve a free growth in these fruit, from their first appearance to the time of their maturity; this must be done by keeping the bark to a proper degree of heat.

That is, the heat should be quite lively, for a faint heat will not answer the purpose.



On examining the beds, if you find the heat much decreased, let preparation be made to renew it as soon as possible.

Provide, for that purpose, a quantity of new bark from the tanners, the beginning of this month. The middle sized bark is to be chosen, and such as hath been at least a fortnight or three weeks out of the tan-pit.

The quantity of new bark necessary to provide at this time, should be equal to near one third part of what the bark-bed will contain. This, when brought home, should be thrown up in a heap; where let it lie eight or ten days, to drain and prepare for fermentation. But if very wet, it should be first spread thin in an open sunny place for two or three days to dry, and then thrown in an heap.

When the bark is ready, let all the pots be taken up out of the bed; then pare off some of the old bark at the top, to an equal depth, and carry it away. When this is done, throw in the new bark; then, with a fork, let the whole be worked up, and the new and old perfectly well mixed together, working it up quite to the bottom.

Level the top, and immediately let the pots be plunged in a regular manner as they were before. The whole of this work should be begun and finished the same day, if possible.

The heat of the old bark being not quite exhausted, it will set the new a going directly, as it were; and both together will produce a kindly growing heat, and will retain it a long time.

#### *Watering the Hot-House Plants.*

Water should now be given frequently to the pine apple plants in general, but the fruiting plants will require it pretty often.

They should be refreshed moderately, about once in five or six days; and be sure not to give them too much at a time.

Air must also be admitted to these plants, at all favourable opportunities. This should be always done when there comes a warm sunny day, and but little wind stirring.

In such days, some of the glasses may be drawn open a little way, about ten or eleven o'clock, and shut close again about two or three.

For the care of the other sorts of stove plants, see the hot-house of February.

## A P R I L

*Work to be done in the Kitchen Garden.**Cucumbers and Melons.*

**L**ET the cucumber and melon hot-beds which were made a month or two ago, be carefully examined, and see if they are of a proper degree of heat.

This should be particularly attended to at this season, for these plants will not yield fine fruit, nor a plentiful crop, if the beds are destitute of a proper heat.

Therefore, when you perceive the heat of the beds to be much failed, let it be renewed as soon as possible. This must be done by adding a lining of hot dung to the sides of the bed, in the manner as directed in the three former months.

This will greatly enliven the heat of the beds, by which means the plants will be preserved in a growing state, and the fruit will set freely, and they will also swell kindly, and will grow to a handsome size.

Air should be admitted to the plants every day. This is done by raising the lights on the back part of the frame with props, observing to raise them more or less, in proportion to the temperature of heat in the beds, and according as the weather will permit; that is, remembering if there be a tolerable warmth in the bed, and the weather mild, not to fail, to raise the glasses from one to two or three inches high, as the heat of the day increases, but especially in sunny days; but in cloudy days, when there is a sharp air or high winds stirring, to raise the lights but little at such a time.

For the purpose of raising the lights to admit air, &c. you should be provided with wooden props, one for each light, which should be made wedge fashion, making the biggest end three inches and a half deep, working it off to nothing at the other, and with those you can readily raise the lights to what height you shall judge proper, according to the warmth of the bed, or temperature of the weather.

Let mats be thrown over the glasses every evening, a little before sun-set, and take them off again in the morning, about an hour or so, after it rises.

Water the plants occasionally; the cucumber will require it often; that is, provided there be a good heat in the



bed, and the weather mild and sunny; they will require a little water once every four or five days, or a week, but let this article be applied in moderate quantities.

Melons should also be watered moderately, at times, for they will require it; but when these plants are about setting their fruit, they should be watered very sparingly at that time.

Let decayed and damaged leaves be taken off as soon as they appear on the plants, either cucumbers, or melons; also let all decayed flowers be taken away.

In hot days, when the sun is fierce, so as to occasion the leaves of melons or cucumbers to flag, it will be proper to shade them for two or three hours, during the greatest heat, with a thin mat, or with a little loose hay strewed thinly over the glasses.

*Making Ridges to plant out Cucumbers and Melons, under Bell or Hand Glasses.*

Make ridges or beds about the middle or latter end of this month, for the cucumbers or melons, which are to be planted under hand or bell glasses.

These beds or ridges should be made all, or the greatest part, above ground, not digging deep trenches as is often practised wherein to make them, for by that practise you cannot readily line the beds when their heat declines. The making them in deep trenches in May, when no linings are required, is not improper; but at this season do not make trenches deeper than about six inches, and more particularly for melons.

Each bed or ridge should not be less than two feet thick of dung, but thirty inches will not be too much; and they should be full three feet wide.

But where there is plenty of dung, it will be best to make them four feet wide; and if there are more than one ridge to be made, to be placed one before another, allowing a space of at least three or four feet between ridge and ridge; and these spaces or alleys are, in about a month or five weeks, to be filled with new hot dung, and covered with earth: this will throw in a fresh heat to the beds, which will be found to be of great advantage to the plants. See May.

The beds being made as above directed, you are, in two, three, or four days after, when the dung will be settled, and the heat rises to the top of the bed, to lay on the earth: this should be laid ten inches thick on every part.

When this is done, mark out the holes for the plants at three foot and a half asunder; then set on the bell or

## 244 THE KITCHEN GARDEN. [Apr

hand glasses, and keep them close down till the dung has thoroughly warmed the earth; then proceed to put in the plants.

Let two melon plants be set for each glass; but you may plant three or four cucumber plants under a glass.

As soon as they are planted let them be moderately watered to settle the earth close about their roots, and the watering should be afterwards occasionally repeated, for they will require to be refreshed with that article once or twice a week, according to the degree of warmth in the bed, and temperature of the weather; but let moderation be always observed in performing this work, especially when newly planted.

Shade the plants occasionally from the sun, when it is powerful, till they have gotten good root in the new earth, but when the plants are able to bear the sun without flagging, let them enjoy it freely.

Let the glasses be covered every night with mats, this should be constantly practised every night till the end of May, or beginning of June.

Remember, if the plants have not been stopped or topped before, it must now be done: this is to be done when the plants have two or three leaves; observing at that time to pinch off the top of the plant in the manner directed last month; and each plant thus treated will produce two, three, or four shoots, or runners; and when these runners have three joints, it will also be proper to stop them by pinching off the top of each at the third joint, which will cause each of these runners to put out two or three more shoots, and so by that practice the plants will be well furnished with fruitful runners; for it is from these lateral shoots that we are to expect the fruit; but if the plants were not to be stopped as above, there would not come above one or two runners from each plant, and these would perhaps run a yard in length without shewing one fruit, but especially the cucumber.

### *Sowing Cucumber and Melon Seeds.*

Sow the seed of cucumbers and melons, the beginning of this month, to raise some plants, to ridge out, under hand or bell-glasses, in May. See the directions of last month.

### *Transplanting*

Transplant cobs and Silesia lettuce, or any other sorts, which were sown in February, or the last month.



Choose a spot of good ground for these plants, and spread a little rotten dung thereon; then dig the ground well, bury the dung properly, and let the surface be raked smooth.

Plant the lettuces about ten or twelve inches distant each way; water them immediately, and repeat it occasionally in dry weather, till they have taken good root.

Sow coss lettuce; also the seeds of Silesia, and imperial, or any other sorts of lettuces, may be sown any time this month.

Dig a spot of rich ground for them, in an open situation; let the earth be well broken; sow the seed equally, and not too thick, and rake them in lightly.

Repeat the sowings once a fortnight, or thereabouts, that there may be a regular succession.

#### *Small Sallading.*

Sow small sallading, at least, once every week; the sorts are cresses, mustard, rape, radish, and turnip.

Draw some shallow drills for these seeds, where the ground is rich and light; sow the seeds therein, each kind separate, and cover them lightly with earth.

Water them moderately, if the weather should be dry, which will greatly promote their growth.

#### *Radishes.*

Thin the crops of radishes, where they have risen too thick, leaving the plants at least two or three inches asunder, or thereabouts, and clear them from weeds.

Radish-seed should be sown at three different times this month; by which means a constant supply of young radishes may be obtained, allowing about ten days between each time of sowing.

Let the seed be sown in a spot of rich ground, in a free situation; and in dry weather, it should be frequently watered both before and after the plants are come up.

The crops of radishes, in general, should be often watered, in dry weather; this will preserve their swelling freely, and will prevent their growing hot and sticky.

#### *Turnip rooted Radishes.*

Some persons are fond of the turnip rooted radish; when these are required in the summer season, some of the seed may be sown any time this month.

H

They

They should be sown in an open moist spot, and when the leaves of the plants are about an inch broad, they should be thinned to five or six inches distance.

But those raised from this time of sowing, generally eat very hot, therefore the principal season for sowing them is in July, when those from that sowing eat very mild, and are fit to draw in September and October.

#### *Spinnage.*

Sow spinnage where required, it will yet succeed, and may be sown any time this month.

Where a constant supply of this plant is required, you should sow some seed once a fortnight, at least.

Hoe the spinnage which was sown the former month, and thin the plants out to four or five inches distance.

#### *Kidney-Beans.*

Plant kidney-beans, of the early kinds, the beginning of this month.

Choose a piece of dry ground for them, where it is defended from cold winds, and open to the sun; draw drills an inch deep, and thirty inches asunder; drop the beans in the drills, three inches a-part, and draw the earth equally over them; do not cover them more than an inch deep, for if covered too deep at this early time, they do not come up well, but rise stragling, and besides, are very apt to rot.

These should be planted in dry weather, for the seed cannot bear much wet; it being apt to rot in the ground, if planted in a rainy time.

About the middle, or twentieth of this month, you may plant some kidney-beans for a principal crop.

The speckled dwarf kidney-bean, and the Battersea white, are proper kinds for this plantation. They may be planted in a free situation, allowing two feet and a half, at least, between the rows.

#### *Asparagus.*

Fork asparagus beds, which are not yet done. Let this work be finished the first week in this month, for the buds are now in great forwardness.

Rake the beds smooth immediately after they are forked.

Asparagus may yet be planted where required, for the plants will now take root very freely; but let this work be finished



finished by the middle of the month, for these plants will not succeed well if planted later.

Let the same method be observed in planting them, as mentioned in the former month.

*Dressing and planting Artichokes.*

Where artichokes were not dressed and slipped last month, it should now be done, for they will now have made their spring shoots, which will be shot up a little height through the ground.

Let the same method be now observed in dressing them as directed in March.

Plant artichokes where wanted; they will yet succeed, and have fruit the following autumn, provided you plant them soon in the month.

Choose a piece of good ground for these plants, in an open situation, and lay some good rotten dung thereon, and dig it in a proper depth. Let the plants be set in rows, four feet and a half asunder, and plant them not less than two feet, nor more than a yard distance from each other in the rows.

*Cabbage and Savoy.*

Now transplant, if not done in March; all the cabbage plants you intend to plant out this spring; and let it be done the beginning of this month, that they may get good root before dry weather sets in; give the plants a little water as soon as planted.

Draw up some earth about the stems of forward cabbage plants; it will strengthen them, and greatly encourage their growth.

Sow savoy and cabbage seed, to raise some plants for a fall winter crop. Let these seeds be sown in an open situation, and rake them in equally.

The savoy and cabbage plants which were sown in February and March, should be pricked out into beds, to get strength before they are planted out for good.

Prepare beds of good earth to prick them in, about three feet and a half broad, in an open situation. Let the largest plants be drawn out regularly from the seed-bed, and plant them in the beds prepared for them, at four or five inches distance every way. Water them immediately, and repeat it occasionally in dry weather.

The plants which are left in the seed-bed, should be cleared from weeds; then give them a good watering, to settle the earth about their roots again.

#### *Bore-cole.*

Curled bore-cole, sometimes called brown-cole, and green-cole, for there are two sorts, one green, and the other of a dark red or brown colour.

These are of the cabbage kind, but never cabbage.

These greens are greatly esteemed for their being so very hardy as almost to resist the severest cold, and they eat extremely sweet, but especially the sprouts which arise from the sides of the stalks.

The seed may be sown any time this month, but for a more particular account, see the work of May.

#### *Colliflowers.*

The early colliflower plants under hand glasses, should have earth drawn up to their stems. This will be of great service in promoting their growth; but in doing this, let care be taken that no earth is drawn into their hearts, for that will do much mischief to their plants.

The colliflower plants which were raised from seed sown early this spring, should be planted out for good, about the latter end of this month.

The hand or bell glasses may still be continued over these plants on nights, and cold wet weather; but in warm sunny days, and when there are warm rains, let them be at such times exposed to the free air; but when the glasses are set over the plants, they must be raised high on props, first drawing a border of earth two or three inches high round each plant, then place the props upon that, and let the glasses on the props, but towards the end of the month they should be taken intirely away.

Make choice of a piece of good ground for them, in a free situation; some good rotten dung should be spread over the piece, and dug in. Put in the plants at two feet, or thirty inches distance, from each other, every way.

Water them immediately after they are planted; and in dry weather repeat the waterings frequently, till the plants have taken good root.



*Broccoli.*  
Sowing broccoli: see that article in the work of the former and preceding months.

*Onions and Leeks.*

Onions and leeks may yet be sown, where required. Let these seeds be sown the beginning of the month, for they will not succeed well if sown later; but especially the onions.

For preparing the ground, and sowing these seeds, see the article onions and leeks, in the former month.

*Celery.*

The young celery plants, which were sown in February, for an early crop, will be fit to prick out in the last week of this month, which should be into a bed of rich light earth.

Let the beds be three feet wide; dig it well, break the earth fine, and rake the surface smooth. Draw up the best plants from the seed-bed, and plant them into this, at about three inches distance every way; then give it a moderate watering, and repeat it, at times, till the plants have taken fresh root.

The plants should remain in this bed, a month, at least, to get strength before they are planted out for good into the trenches.

As these early sown plants will not, after they are fit for use, continue long before they will run up for seed, there should not be any large quantity of them planted out.

Sow some celery seed, in the first or second week of this month, to raise some plants for succeeding those which were sown in March.

Dig a small bed of rich light earth for this seed; let the earth be broken fine, and make the surface of the bed even: sow the seed thereon equally, but not too thick; and either rake it in lightly, or otherwise cover it near a quarter of an inch with fine earth.

Then it would be an advantage, if the weather be dry and hot, to fix a few hoops across the bed, and let a mat be drawn over them, occasionally, when the sun is hot, to prevent the earth from being too much dried. If you practice this, the seed will grow freely, and the plants will rise well: water the bed lightly now and then.

## 150 THE KITCHEN GARDEN. [Apr.

Where cardoons are required, and where they were not sown last month, it may still be done; but must be performed the beginning of the month.

For their management, see the work of May, June, July, September, &c.

### *Carrots and Parsneps.*

Carrots may yet be sown, if required; but if you desire to have tolerable sized roots, let the seed be sown the beginning of the month.

Where a supply of small young carrots are desired, there should be a little seed sown, at two different times, this month; let a small piece be sown at the beginning, and another towards the latter end of the month.

Parsneps may also be sown now, where wanted. Let this seed be sown the beginning of the month, for it will not succeed well, if sown later.

### *Sowing Pot and Physical Herbs.*

Sow nasturtium seed, as it will now grow freely; draw a drill near an inch deep, then place the seed in the drill, two or three inches apart, and draw the earth equally over it.

Thyme and sweet marjorum should now be sown; also savory and hyssop.

Let a small bed of rich light earth be dug for these seeds, and divide it into small spots: sow the seeds of each sort on separate spots, and rake them in lightly.

Parsley, chervil, and coriander, may yet be sown: draw shallow drills for these seeds; sow them in the drills equally, not very thick, and cover them with earth, about a quarter of an inch.

Sow borage and bugloss, where wanted; also clary and cardus. Let these seeds be sown thin, on small spots of good earth, and rake them in even.

Burnet, sorrel, and marigolds, may also be sown now, on small spots, and raked in equally.

### *Planting Pot and Sweet Herbs.*

Plant baum, penny-royal, and chamomile, where wanted. These should be planted in the places where they are to remain, at eight inches distance from each other.

Mint succeeds very well when planted this month: the method of planting it now, is this; draw up out of the old beds,



beds, a proper quantity of the best young plants; that is, choose the strongest, and such as are five or six inches high, or thereabouts: they must be taken up very carefully, with some roots to each plant.

Plant them in rows, allowing six inches between each row; and let them be set about four inches apart in the row. Take care to water them as soon as they are planted, and repeat it frequently in dry weather, till the plants are well rooted.

Tansy and tarragon may yet be planted; likewise cives and sorrel.

They should be planted where they are to remain; allowing only eight or nine inches distance between plant and plant.

Plant slips of sage; they will now grow freely.

Let the slips be about six or seven inches in length, and plant them in a shady border, at four or five inches distance. Let them be put into the earth within two inches of their tops; water them frequently in dry weather.

They will make good plants in September; and may then be taken up, and planted in beds of good earth, at eight or nine inches distance every way.

Thyme, hyssop, savory, and marjoram, grow freely from slips or cuttings. They may be planted any time this month.

Let them be planted in a shady place, treating them in the same manner as directed above for the sage.

This is also still a good time to propagate rue, rosemary, and lavender, by slips or cuttings. Likewise lavender-cotton, southernwood, and wormwood.

Let the slips or cuttings be six or eight inches long, or thereabouts. Plant them in a shady border, at the distance of six inches from each other, and put them full half way in the ground. Let them be frequently watered.

In September they may be taken up, and planted where they are to remain, allowing them a foot distance each way.

*Capficums, or Guinea-Pepper.*

Where it was not done last month, you should now sow some capficums, when the pods are wanted for pickling.

They should be sown the beginning of the month, observing the same method as directed in March.

*Lucern.*

## 150 THE KITCHEN GARDEN. [Apr.

Where cardoons are required, and where they were not sown last month, it may still be done; but must be performed the beginning of the month.

For their management, see the work of May, June, July, September, &c.

### *Carrots and Parsneps.*

Carrots may yet be sown, if required; but if you desire to have tolerable sized roots, let the seed be sown the beginning of the month.

Where a supply of small young carrots are desired, there should be a little seed sown, at two different times, this month; let a small piece be sown at the beginning, and another towards the latter end of the month.

Parsneps may also be sown now, where wanted. Let this seed be sown the beginning of the month, for it will not succeed well, if sown later.

### *Sowing Pot and Physical Herbs.*

Sow nasturtium seed, as it will now grow freely; draw a drill near an inch deep, then place the seed in the drill, two or three inches apart, and draw the earth equally over it.

Thyme and sweet marjorum should now be sown; also savory and hyssop.

Let a small bed of rich light earth be dug for these seeds, and divide it into small spots: sow the seeds of each sort on separate spots, and rake them in lightly.

Parsley, chervil, and coriander, may yet be sown: draw shallow drills for these seeds; sow them in the drills equally, not very thick, and cover them with earth, about a quarter of an inch.

Sow borage and bugloss, where wanted; also clary and cardus. Let these seeds be sown thin, on small spots of good earth, and rake them in even.

Burnet, sorrel, and marigolds, may also be sown now, on small spots, and raked in equally.

### *Planting Pot and Sweet Herbs.*

Plant baum, penny-royal, and chamomile, where wanted. These should be planted in the places where they are to remain, at eight inches distance from each other.

Mint succeeds very well when planted this month: the method of planting it now, is this; draw up out of the old beds,



beds, a proper quantity of the best young plants; that is, choose the strongest, and such as are five or six inches high, or thereabouts: they must be taken up very carefully, with some roots to each plant.

Plant them in rows, allowing six inches between each row; and let them be set about four inches apart in the row. Take care to water them as soon as they are planted, and repeat it frequently in dry weather, till the plants are well rooted.

Tansey and tarragon may yet be planted; likewise cives and sorrel.

They should be planted where they are to remain; allowing only eight or nine inches distance between plant and plant.

Plant slips of sage; they will now grow freely.

Let the slips be about six or seven inches in length, and plant them in a shady border, at four or five inches distance. Let them be put into the earth within two inches of their tops; water them frequently in dry weather.

They will make good plants in September; and may then be taken up, and planted in beds of good earth, at eight or nine inches distance every way.

Thyme, hyssop, savory, and marjoram, grow freely from slips or cuttings. They may be planted any time this month.

Let them be planted in a shady place, treating them in the same manner as directed above for the sage.

This is also still a good time to propagate rue, rosemary, and lavender, by slips or cuttings. Likewise lavender-cotton, southernwood, and wormwood.

Let the slips or cuttings be six or eight inches long, or thereabouts. Plant them in a shady border, at the distance of six inches from each other, and put them full half way in the ground. Let them be frequently watered.

In September they may be taken up, and planted where they are to remain, allowing them a foot distance each way.

#### *Capficums, or Guinea-Pepper.*

Where it was not done last month, you should now sow some capficums, when the pods are wanted for pickling.

They should be sown the beginning of the month, observing the same method as directed in March.

*Turneps.*

Turneps may be sown any time this month; this seed is of a quick growth, and the plants will appear in a few days after the seed is sown.

Let this seed be sown thin and equally, in an open spot of ground, and rake it in with a light and even hand.

Hoe and thin the early turneps which were sown the former month, leaving the plants seven or eight inches distant from each other.

*Scorzoneræ, and Salsify.*

Sow scorzoneræ and salsify, about the middle of this month, for the principal crop. Those which are sown earlier than that time, are apt to run up for seed before the roots acquire their due size, and are thereby rendered useless.

*Purslane.*

Purslane may be sown now on a bed of light rich earth, in the common ground. Water the bed often in dry weather, and shade it from the hot sun, till the plants are come up, and have gotten a little strength. This plant is, by some people, much esteemed to use in fallads.

*Beans.*

Plant more beans: this should be done at three different times this month, allowing twelve or fourteen days between each time of planting.

The long podded beans are a proper kind to plant at this time. This bean is a remarkable great bearer; it is also a fine eating bean, and very profitable for the use of a family. They may be planted any time this month, allowing the distance of a yard between the rows.

The Windsor bean, and the Sandwich, or any of the large kinds of beans, may be yet planted.

Let these be also planted in rows, a yard at least asunder.

But in planting the above, or any other large kind of beans, if you was to allow the distance of three feet and a half between the rows, you might then have a row of favoys between; and if four feet asunder, might have two rows, either of those, or spring-sown cabbages, to come in for autumn or winter service.

The white blossom bean, and the mazagan, are great favourites with many people; they may also be planted any



any time this month. Let the rows be two feet and a half asunder.

These beans are but small, but none excels them for eating; and they are plentiful bearers, for their stalks are generally loaded with pods, from the very bottom to the top.

Draw earth to the stems of beans which are come up: this should be done when the plants are about three, four, or five inches high, and will then greatly forward their growth.

#### Peas.

Sow peas, to succeed those sown in March: Where a constant supply of peas are required, there should be some sown, at least, every fortnight.

The marrowfat, and Spanish morotto's, are both very fine eating peas, and great bearers, and are very proper kinds to sow at this season. Any other of the large kind of peas may be sown any time this month.

The hotspurs, or any of the smaller kinds of peas, may also be sown now, if required; for most sorts will succeed if sown any time in this month.

Draw earth to such rows of peas which are come up and advanced a little height. This will strengthen the plants, and forward them greatly in their growth.

This earthing should always be performed, for the first time, when the plants are about three inches high.

Set sticks to peas, where you intend it. This should be done in due time. When the plants are about five or six inches high, it will be proper to place the sticks to them, observing to have sticks of a proper height; that is, for the marrowfat, and other large peas, they should be six or seven feet high; but those of four feet will do for the hotspurs, and other small sorts of peas.

#### Potatoes.

Potatoes may yet be planted, if it was omitted in the former month; but they should be planted the first or second week in the month; for when planted later than that time, they do not always succeed well.

Note, I have planted potatoes so late as the middle and latter end of this month, and have had very fine crops, and have sometimes been obliged to plant in May, and have also had tolerable good success. But I do not advise this

late planting for general practice, but only say, that in case the ground intended for planting, cannot be sooner got ready than the time abovementioned, you may, notwithstanding, venture to plant them, with tolerable hopes of success; but especially if it proves a dripping summer; then you may expect a good full crop, fit to take up at Michaelmas.

For the method of planting these roots, see the work of March.

#### *Destroy Weeds.*

Weeds will now begin to appear plentifully, from seed, in every part of the garden. The utmost diligence should be used to destroy them while they are young, before they get the start of the crops.

Pay particular regard to your small crops; as onions, carrots, parsneps, and the like; weeds grow much quicker than they do; and if they are not weeded in time, the weeds will soon overtop them, and occasion much labour and trouble to clear them.

Take the opportunity of dry weather, and hoe the ground between the rows of beans, peas, cabbages, and colliflowers, and other crops that stand wide, to destroy the weeds. A large piece of ground may soon be gone over with a hoe, when the weeds are small; but when they are permitted to grow large, it requires much labour to destroy them.

#### *Gourds and Pumpkins.*

Now you may sow the seeds of gourds and pumpkins.

The sorts are:

The small orange gourd.

The warted gourd.

The long, or horn gourd.

The squart, or calabash.

Common pumpkin.

With respect to sowing the seeds of any of the above sorts, it is to be observed, that in order to bring the plants forward, to produce and ripen their fruit early in autumn, they must be sown in a hot-bed: the best way, is to dig a wide hole, and put therein a large barrowful or two of hot dung, and cover this four or five inches deep with light earth; then draw shallow drills, and sow the seed, covering them near half an inch deep, and place a hand or bell-glass over the bed; or, for want of those, a small frame, covered



covered with oil'd paper; observing also, to throw a mat, &c. over the bed on nights. When the plants appear, give plenty of air every day, by raising the glass; for they must be brought, by degrees, to bear the open air fully, to harden and prepare them for transplanting.

But these seeds should not be sown until the third or fourth week in the month; and they will be ready to transplant by the third or fourth week in May; which is as soon as they can generally thrive in the full open air.

But if any one is desirous of having any of the curious sorts of these plants to produce ripe fruit a fortnight or three weeks before the common season, he should sow the seed as above, in the first or second week in the month; and may either be sown in the places where they are to remain, covering them all the middle or end of May, or may be planted out under glasses, as directed in the beginning of that month.

The method, and places proper to plant them in, is mentioned in the work of May.

## The Fruit Garden.

### *Planting Fruit-Trees.*

**F**RUIT-TREES may yet be planted, where required. The sorts which will yet succeed, are apples, pears, plums, and cherries.

But where it could not be done before, and rather than lose a season, you may also venture to plant apricots, peaches and nectarines, or any other sorts of fruit-trees, for most sorts will yet take root tolerably well, but only will not shoot so freely at top, nor be able to resist the drought in summer, so well as those which are planted a month or two sooner.

Where it is intended to plant any of the above kinds of fruit-trees now, let them be planted the first week in the month; for they will not take root well if planted later.

When they are planted, let every tree have a large garden-pot of water; it will cause the earth to settle in close

among their roots. Let the watering be repeated in dry weather, about once a week.

New planted trees in general, but particularly such as are planted late in the spring, should be frequently watered, in dry weather; but once in a week or ten days, or thereabouts, will be often enough. In doing of this, let their heads be sometimes watered as well as their roots.

To preserve the earth moist about the roots of new planted trees, let some mulch be laid on the surface of the ground, round their stems; this will keep out the effects of sun and wind, and the earth will retain a due moisture, with the assistance of a moderate watering, now and then.

#### *Destroy Insects.*

Insects do much damage to fruit-trees, if not prevented. This is the time they begin to breed on the leaves of young trees, and also on old trees, which are of a weakly growth. Proper means should be used to destroy them in time, before they spread too far.

The trees should be frequently looked over for them. Where you perceive any of the leaves to curl up, that is a certain sign of insects. Let the worst of these leaves be taken off as soon as they appear; and let all the branches be frequently watered, in dry weather.

This will do a great deal, in preventing the insects from spreading, provided the precaution is taken in time, before their numbers are much encreased.

But where any of the trees, young or old, are much over-run with these small vermin, let the following precaution be taken to destroy them.

Pick off all the curled leaves, for these generally swarm with insects; then get some tobacco-dust, and scatter some of it over all the branches, but most on those places where the insects are troublesome.

This should be strewed over the trees in a morning, and let it remain. It will totally destroy the insects, and not in the least injure the plants or fruit.

#### *Propagating Vines.*

Where it was omitted in the preceding month, you may still plant cuttings of vines, to raise a supply of new plants.

For the method of planting them, see the work of March.

Vines



Vines are also propagated by layers, and it is not yet too late to lay them, observing, that the one year's shoots are the proper parts to lay, laying them three or four inches deep, anding, at the same time, to lay that part of the branch the shoot proceeds from, also into the earth; leaving about three buds of the young shoots out of the ground. They will be well rooted by Michaelmas; then they may be separated from the old plant, and planted where required.

*Begin the Summer dressing of Vines.*

Vines, against walls, should be looked over about the latter end of this month; they will, by that time, have made some shoots; and the useless one's should be displaced.

In looking over the vines, observe, at this time, to displace only such shoots as appear to be absolutely useless: there generally arises many small shoots from the old branches; but these shoots seldom produce grapes or wood proper to bear fruit: therefore, let all such shoots be rubbed off close, except you see, towards the bottom of the wall, any growing shoot arising, where a supply of new wood is, or will apparently be wanted, which should be well attended to, and in such case, such shoots from the old wood must be preserved; otherwise, to be all cleared away, as above.

Leave, for the present, all the shoots which arise from the last year's wood; but where two shoots rise from one eye, let the worst be taken away; for if they were both to be left, one would starve the other, and the fruit of neither would be good.

Let it be observed, that this dressing, or displacing of useless shoots, is to be performed chiefly with the finger and thumb, rubbing the shoots off close.

The useless shoots being cleared away, the useful ones, when of a due length, should be trained close to the wall, in a regular manner, so that each may equally enjoy the advantage of the sun and air, to promote its growth, with that of the fruit.

If you practise as above, the grapes will certainly be fine, the bunches will be large, and they will ripen well, and much sooner than when the vines are suffered to run into confusion, before they are looked over.

By timely looking over the vines, one may do as much in one hour, as in six, when the shoots of all sorts are suffered

suffered to run and mix, in a confused manner, one with another.

The vines in the vineyard should now have stakes placed to them, if it was not done before. Let this be done the beginning of the month.

Fix the stakes firmly in the ground; then let the vines be tyed to them neatly, and at regular distances.

The ground between rows of vines, should be kept perfectly free from weeds; for a great deal of success depends upon keeping the surface clean: that is, with regard to the growth of the fruit.

Therefore, when weeds make their appearance, let the hoe be applied to them in a dry day, and destroy them before they arrive at any considerable bigness.

*Protecting the Blossoms, &c. of Wall Trees from Frost.*

Continue to defend the blossoms and young fruit on wall-trees, but more particularly those of the chosen sorts of apricots, peaches and nectarines.

Where the sheltering of these trees is practised, it should be continued constantly all this month; for although there may happen to be some fine warm nights, yet the weather is so very inconstant at this season, that we often have such very sharp frosts, as to prove the destruction of the blossoms and young fruit, on such of the above trees as are fully exposed.

Therefore, in unfavourable springs, the shelters should be continued till the fruit is as large as the end of a man's little finger; and even then they are not always past danger, as we experienced about two years ago, when most of the wall-fruit that were not covered, was killed when about the above size, or rather larger.

Those persons who cover their trees with mats, should take them down in fine mornings, and put them up again in the evening. But those who cover with branches of ever-greens, such as laurel, yew, &c. are to let them remain constantly, night and day, till the fruit is past danger.

*Apricot-Trees, &c.*

Begin to look over apricot, peach, and nectarine-trees, about the latter end of this month, and divest them of all such young shoots as are evidently useless.

That



That is to say, all shoots which are produced foreright, should be rubbed off close. And likewise, all such shoots as arise in parts of the tree, where they are evidently not wanted; and such as are situated in places where they cannot be neatly trained in, should also, at this time, be displaced.

But let it be observed, that all shoots which are anywise properly situated for laying in, must be left; and should, when of a due length, be trained to the wall close, and in a regular manner.

#### *Thinning Wall-Fruit.*

Thin apricots, where they are produced too thick on the trees. The latter end of this month will be time enough to begin that work.

Observe, in thinning them, to leave the most promising and best shaped fruit; but do not leave the fruit so close together, as to touch, when full grown.

Begin at one side of the tree, and look over the branches regularly, one by one, and single out on each branch, the fruit which you would leave, before you take any off. Having singled out the fairest and best situated fruit, let all the rest on that branch be cleared away; then go to the next; and so proceed, from branch to branch, in a regular manner.

#### *Pruning.*

Pruning, where any remains to be done, should be completed the first week in the month.

#### *Grafting and Budding.*

Grafting may yet be performed, if required.

The sorts which will yet succeed, are some of the late kinds of apples, pears, and plums; but they must be grafted the beginning of the month, for they will not succeed, if done later than that time.

#### *Of newly grafted Trees.*

New grafted trees should now be often looked over, to see if the clay keeps close about them; it being apt to crack, and sometimes fall off. Where you find it any way defective, so as to admit the air and wet to the graft, let the old clay be taken off, and add some new in its stead.

All

All those shoots which rise from the stock, below the graft, must be taken off constantly as they are produced; these, if permitted to remain, would rob the graft of nourishment, and prevent its shooting.

*New budded Trees.*

Look also over budded trees; that is to say, those that were budded last summer; they will now begin to shoot. Examine the young shoots, and look, with a careful eye, for insects. If the leaves curl up, insects are the cause of it; and if not prevented, will spoil the shoot. Let the curling leaves be carefully picked off; it will prevent the mischief from spreading farther.

Suffer no shoots to remain that come from the stock. Let them be taken off as often as they shoot out, leaving nothing that may draw nourishment from the bud.

*Strawberry-Beds.*

Strawberry-beds should now be kept perfectly free from weeds. The runners from the plants should also be kept constantly cleared away, as they advance. But where new plantations are wanted, some of the best runners must be suffered to remain till June, then to be transplanted, as directed in that month.

Water them frequently, in dry weather, for they will require it; but especially when they are in bloom; and if they are not duly supplied with that article, in a dry time, the fruit will be small, and not well tasted; there will also be but a thin crop.

## The Pleasure, or Flower Garden.

*Tender Annual Plants.*

**M**AKE a new hot-bed, wherein to transplant the best kinds of the early annuals, which were sown in February.

The most curious sorts are, cocks-combs, tricolors, double balsams, and globe amaranthus. The egg plant, and double stramonium, may also be reckoned among the choice kinds; likewise, the sensitive plant, diamond ficoides, or ice plant.

Where



Where these curious plants are desired in any tolerable degree of perfection, they must, at this time, be brought forward, by the assistance of a regular and due degree of artificial heat; and where that is properly attended to, the plant will certainly be strong, and their flowers, &c. will be large and beautiful by the end of June.

Directions are given, in March, to prick these tender plants out from the seed-bed, into a new hot-bed, made for that purpose, at about three or four inches distant from each other; that distance being sufficient room for them to grow, for about three weeks or a month, but not longer; because in that time the plants will be so far advanced in their growth, as to interfere with each other; and must then be allowed a greater distance, by removing them into another fresh bed, which may be made at any such time in this month as you shall see occasion, in regard to the growth of the plants.

Make the bed, for this purpose, of the best hot dung, such as has been first very well prepared; and let the bed be made full two feet thick, and set a frame thereon.

When the burning heat of the bed is over, lay in the earth; this must be light and rich, not sifted, but very well broken with the spade and hands, and must be laid six or seven inches thick on every part.

When the earth has been on the bed twenty-four hours, or thereabouts, it will then be in a right condition to receive the plants.

Take them up very carefully out of their present bed, with a ball of earth about their roots, and plant them in the new bed, full six inches distant each way; then give them a light watering, to settle the earth properly about their roots.

Then put on the glasses, and let the plants be shaded from the sun, till they have taken root. This must be done by throwing a single mat over the glasses, at those hours when the sun is so powerful as to occasion the plants to flag.

Observe to raise the glasses a little way, every day, to let the steam of the bed pass freely off; and if there should be much steam in the bed, let the glasses be also raised a little, at one corner, a nights, and hang a mat before them.

When the plants have gotten root, and begin to push, let them have fresh air freely, every mild and calm day;  
for

for this will strengthen them. The air is to be admitted to these plants, by raising the upper ends of the lights a moderate height, with props; but must be shut down every night, provided there be no great steam, and a mat or two spread over them.

Likewise, refresh the plants often with moderate waterings; for it will greatly promote their growth.

When the plants have advanced in height near to the glasses, then let the frame be raised at bottom, about six inches, in order to give them full liberty to shoot; and as the plants rise higher, continue to raise the frame accordingly, in the manner as directed in the work of next month.

At each time of raising the frame, you must observe to close up the vacancy at bottom, that no air may enter but at the proper place; and this may be done by nailing mats to the bottom of the frame.

For the particular method of managing the above frame, see the work of May.

But where there is the convenience of a multiplying or drawing frame, for the purpose of drawing combs and tricolors, and other curious annual plants, to a due height, it will be a great advantage.

This frame is composed of two, three, or more different frames, all made very exactly the same length and breadth; and each about nine or ten inches deep, except the frame for the glasses, and that must be twelve inches deep in front, and eighteen at the back. These might all be made to fit in a very exact manner, so as to fix one on the top of another; and to appear, as it were, but one frame, when all are joined in that manner together.

These frames are to be made use of in the following manner.

Begin first with the deepest frame; then, when the plants have reached the glasses, let the said frame be taken up, and, in its place, set one of the others, and immediately fix the deepest frame upon that, as above.

By the addition of this frame, there will be a space of ten inches more room for the plants to shoot; then, when they have filled that space, let another frame be added; observing, as above, to let the deepest frame be always placed uppermost, on account of the glasses.

These



Those combs, tricolors, balsams, and the like kinds, which were sown in March, will now be ready to prick out.

They must, in order to bring them forward, be pricked out upon a new hot-bed; therefore, let one be prepared for them, about the beginning of this month.

This bed must not be less than twenty inches, nor more than two feet thick of dung; a frame must be set on it, and there must be the thickness of five or six inches of earth laid on the bed.

The plants are to be pricked in this bed at three or four inches distance from each other; then give a very moderate watering, put on the glasses, and shade the plants carefully from the sun, till they have taken good root.

Let the glasses be raised every day, as occasion requires, to let the steam out; and also to admit fresh air to the plants.

These plants are to be managed, in every respect, in the same manner as mentioned for those of that kind which were sown in February.

#### *Sowing tender Annuals.*

Where the sowing of the above tender kinds of annuals was omitted in the two former months, it may still be done; and the plants raised from this sowing, may be brought to flower in the end of July.

The sorts which you may yet sow, are, cockscombs, tricolors, balsams, globe amaranthus's, egg plants, as also the ice plant, or any other sort, observing the same method in sowing as directed in February and March.

#### *Hardier Kinds of Annual Plants.*

A slight hot-bed should also be made now to prick some of the more hardy kinds of annual plants upon, when large enough to remove.

The principal sorts are, the marvel of Peru, china asters, India pinks, ten-week stocks, French and African marigolds, and chrysanthemums; likewise, common balsams, basil, caplicums, and love-apples.

The following may be reckoned amongst them: scabious, yellow sweet sultan, persicaria, tree-amaranthus, purple amaranthus, prince's feather, and love lies a bleeding; which, to bring them forward, so as to be of a large size, and

and to flower strong, a few of each may also be pricked on a moderate hot-bed.

Make the bed for those plants about the middle, or latter end of the month: make it but slight; twenty inches thick of dung will be sufficient, and there must be five or six inches of good earth.

Draw out of the seed-bed some of the strongest plants, and prick them in the new bed, four inches distant each way, and give a little water; then place a frame, or if that is wanting fix some hoops a-cross the bed, and let mats be drawn over them every night, and also in the day time, when the weather is cold.

The plants must be shaded from the sun till they have taken root.

The plants are to remain in this bed for about a month, or five weeks; then let them be taken up, with a ball of earth about their roots, and planted in the borders, or where they are to remain to flower.

These seeds of French and African marigolds, and chrysanthemums, may yet be sown; likewise balsams, marvel of Peru, china-aster, and India pink, and the seeds of the ten-week stock, will succeed well now.

Let the above seeds be sown in a moderate hot bed, in the first or second week of the month; let the bed be often refreshed with light sprinklings of water, both before and after the plants appear.

Where there is no frame to spare, the bed may be arched over with hoops, and covered with mats every night, and in bad weather.

When the plants appear, let them have a great deal of free air, by taking the covers intirely off, every mild day; but let them be sheltered a-nights, and in bad weather.

Towards the middle or latter end of May, the plants will be fit to prick out, which must be into beds of light earth in the natural ground; and when they have stood there a month or five weeks, they must be taken up, with balls of earth, and planted in the borders,

#### *Hardy Annuals.*

Hardy annual flower seeds may yet be sown in the borders, and other parts of this garden.

The sorts which will yet succeed, are convolvulus major, and minor; the Tangier, and sweet-scented peas, and the seeds of nasturtiums.

Likewise



Likewise lupines, larkspur, flos-adonis, and common sweet-sultan; also candy tuft, dwarf lychnis, nigella, or devil in a bush, cyanus, and lobels-catchfly, Venus navelwort, and looking-glass, Virginia stock, snails, hedgehog, caterpillars, lotus, or winged pea.

Sow also, if required, dwarf and large annual sunflower seed; and lavateras, oriental mallow, and the seeds of all other kinds of hardy annuals may still be sown.

Let the above hardy annual seeds be sown in small patches in the borders, in the manner mentioned in the two former months.

Let all the places be frequently watered in dry weather; this should be duly observed, both before and after the plants are come up, otherwise they will be weak, and not flower well.

When the plants have been up about a fortnight or three weeks, let them be thinned where they have risen too thick, observing to clear away the weakest, and leave the strongest plants standing, allowing each kind, according to its size, full room to grow.

For instance, the convolvuluses, and the three succeeding sorts, should be thinned to three or four plants in each patch; as also all the other sorts to the dwarf sun-flower, should be thinned, having at most but five or six plants in a place; and the sun-flower should be thinned to two plants in a patch, and afterwards, one of the worst of these taken away, and those mentioned after it, should also be thinned to one, or at most to two plants in a place.

#### *Hyacinths, &c.*

Hyacinths and tulips, ranunculuses and anemonies will now be coming fast into bloom.

Manage the curious sorts of these flowers with care. Heavy rains and high winds would do them much harm; and the sun, if permitted to shine upon them fully, would bring on their decay in a short time.

They should therefore be screened from all these occasionally, by a covering of hoops and mats; this will not only preserve the beauty of the flowers, but will continue them a longer time in bloom.

The hoops must be kept constantly over the beds, and the mats, or canvas, should always be in readiness, in order that they may be soon drawn on whenever it is necessary for the defence of the flowers.

The

The hoops should now be erected pretty high, and nailed a-cross to stakes about a yard high, which should be fixed at due distances on each side the bed.

When the plants are in bloom, let the mats be drawn over the hoops every sunny day, about nine or ten o'clock, and let them remain till four or five in the afternoon, and then take them off again.

The mats must also be drawn on at all times, when it rains hard, and when the winds are strong; for such weather would beat down the flowers and break their stalks.

The flowers should also be sheltered every night, when there is an appearance of bad weather.

Where the stalks of hyacinths, and the like, are not able to bear up their flowers, let them be supported; this is done by placing a short stick to each plant, and the stalk must then be neatly fastened to the stick.

#### *Carnations.*

Carnations will now be shooting up fast for flowering, and the flower-stalks must be supported.

Get, about the latter end of this month, some handsome straight sticks, of a proper length; these must be thrust down carefully, near the plants, and let the flower stems when advanced a due height be tyed neatly to them. Observe to tie them between the joints, that the stalks may have full liberty to shoot; and as the stalk advances higher, continue to tie them carefully to the sticks.

Sticks must also be placed to the carnations, which are growing in the borders, as well as to those in pots, for they will all soon require support.

But the best carnations in pots must now have a good share of attention, and should be encouraged in their growth as much as possible.

Keep the pots perfectly free from weeds, and the plants from decayed leaves, and let the earth on the surface of the pots be stirred a little now and then; for this will encourage the plants to shoot, and it will also give an air of neatness.

Water the pots often in dry weather; for they will require it, moderately, every second or third day. And this should not be omitted; otherwise the plants will produce but small and ill-shaped flowers.

Now is still a proper time to sow the seeds of carnations and pinks.



But these seeds must be sown in the first or second week of the month; and for that purpose let a small spot of rich light ground be neatly dug, and divided into two little beds about three feet broad, making the surface even. Sow the seed on the surface tolerably thick, each sort separate; and cover them a quarter of an inch deep, or thereabouts, with a fine light earth.

These beds, if the weather should prove very dry, should be often sprinkled with light waterings, and in about thirty or forty days the plants will appear.

For the further management of the plants, see the work of the preceding months.

Polyanthus seed may still be sown, and it will readily grow.

But it must be sown in the first or second week in the month, otherwise the plants will not get strength enough to flower next year.

Let this seed be sown on a border of light earth, not much exposed to the sun; sow it pretty thick, and rake it in lightly with an even hand.

When the plants come up keep them clean from weeds, and in July prick them out on a shady border, three inches asunder, giving them some water.

Such polyanthus as were raised last year from seed will be now in bloom, and should be carefully looked over, and the best flowers should be marked, in order to their being transplanted in a place by themselves.

#### *Management of Pots of Perennial Plants in general.*

Give fresh earth to all such pots of perennial plants as were not dressed, and new earthed in March: the method is this:

First loosen the earth on the top, and down round the sides of the pots, a little way; then rake out the loose earth, and clear away all decayed leaves from the plants; this done, fill up the pots again with some rich, new compost, and then give the whole a gentle watering.

The plants will receive great benefit from this dressing, and where it was not done in March, it should not be put off longer than the beginning of this month.

Likewise, remember, in dry weather, to supply all plants in pots with water: this is a material article, and should not be omitted.

*Transplanting fibrous-rooted Perennial Plants*

Where perennial plants are wanted in any part, they may yet be planted; but this should be done the beginning of the month.

The sorts which will yet succeed are, golden rods, Michaelmas daisies, or any other perennial-asters, and perennial sun-flowers; also Canterbury bells, columbines, Greek valerian, scabiouses, campanulas, catchfly, rose-campion, rockets, lychnises, batchelors buttons, sweet-williams, pinks, carnations, wall-flowers, hollyhocks, and French honeysuckle, peach leaved bell-flower, fox-glove, tree primrose, double feather-few, everlasting peas, fraxinella, crimson cardinal flower, double ladies smock, double ragged robin, and lychnidea.

Likewise polyanthuses, primroses, double daisies, double chamomile, thrift, London pride, gentianellas, with most other sorts of the fibrous rooted plants, may still be safely removed.

Let all the above, or any other such like kinds of plants be taken up carefully, with balls of earth about their roots, if possible, and plant them again immediately, in the places where they are wanted, and water them.

Repeat the waterings frequently in dry weather, and the plants will all flower this year, each at its respective time of flowering.

*Sowing Perennials.*

Now sow such perennial and biennial flower-seeds as are intended to be sown this season.

The sorts proper to sow now, are wall-flowers, stock July flowers, sweet-williams, and columbines; also Canterbury bells, or pyramidal campanulas, tree primrose, and Greek valerian; likewise hollyhocks, and French honeysuckles, with the single catchfly, rose-campion, and scarlet lychnis; as may the seeds of most other sorts of fibrous-rooted plants as are mentioned in the catalogue at the end of the book.

These seeds may either be sown on borders, or in three foot wide beds of light earth. The largest seed must not be covered deeper than half an inch, nor the smaller less than a quarter.

But for the particular method of sowing these seeds, see the work of last month.



The beds wherein the above or any other sorts of perennial flower seeds are sown, must be frequently sprinkled with water, in dry weather; this should be practised both before and after the plants are come up, by which means the plants will get strong, and grow away freely.

*Tube-Roses.*

Plant some tube-roses, in a hot-bed, the beginning of this month; they will succeed those planted in March. But if none was planted in that month, this is now a very good time to begin to put in some of these roots.

Get some good sound roots, which must be procured every spring from the seed-shops, when they come from abroad; for these roots are seldom propagated in this country, as they are too tender to prosper in the common ground, so that there is great quantities imported every year from Italy. Having procured the roots, let the loose outer skins be taken off; and if there be any off-sets, let these be also taken away: then plant the roots in pots of light rich earth; observe to put but one root in a pot, and plant it about an inch below the surface of the earth; then set the pots in a moderate hot-bed, plunging them to their rims in the earth of the bed.

Admit only a small portion of air into the bed, till the roots begin to shoot; and they must have but very little water.

But when the plants begin to appear, water them moderately, every other day, and admit fresh air every day, by raising the glasses; and as they rise in height the frame should be raised accordingly, in the manner as directed for cocks combs, tricolors, and other curious annuals, that they may have full liberty to shoot; for the stems generally rise a yard, and sometimes near a yard and a half high. Towards the middle or latter end of May, the glasses may in fine days be taken intirely off; which by admitting the free air will strengthen the plants; but put them on every night, and also in the day time, when the weather happens to be very wet or cold.

Those roots which are planted now, will begin to blow in July; at which time the plants may be moved to where you think proper, either in the open air, or into any apartment in the house; they will continue to flower for about a month or six weeks.

Those who would propagate these roots must observe it is done by off-sets from the main root, like other bulbs; the said off-sets are to be planted in March or the beginning of this month, in pots, or in a small bed of perfectly dry and light earth; and the pots, or bed, to be sheltered with a common frame and glass till about the middle of May; but in order to forward them more in their growth, you may make a slight hot-bed to plant them in at first; they are to remain till after Michaelmas, observing, in dry weather, to water them frequently, which will cause the roots to swell; the roots are to be taken up when their leaves decay, which will be in October or beginning of November; observing, that if the weather should prove very wet or frosty before that time, you must again shelter them as above.

They must be planted again in the following spring, as above directed, and taken up at the decay of the leaves, and the year after will produce flowers, observing to manage them as directed for the flowering roots.

#### *Auriculas.*

Auriculas will now begin to blow; care must therefore be taken to protect the curious sorts from rain and wind, and also from too much sun.

The meally dust which covers these flowers, composes a principal part of their beauty; this must therefore be preserved upon them; the least shower of rain would easily wash it off; it is also liable to be blown off by the winds; and the sun, if permitted to shine freely on the flowers, would occasion them soon to fade.

Let the pots, therefore, according as the flowers open, be immediately removed and placed on the shelves of the auricula stage, or where the flowers may be protected occasionally from such weather as would deface the bloom.

The stand, or stage, should have from three to five or six ranges of shelves, about six inches broad, rising theatrically one above another, from the front, the back being generally placed against a wall, pale, or other building; it must be constantly covered at top, but the front and two ends must only be covered occasionally. There should be some canvas or mats fastened to the top of the front and ends, by way of curtain; this should be so contrived that it may be readily let down and drawn up, at pleasure.



When the air is very sharp, or high winds, or driving rains, the curtain must be let down at such times, to shelter the flowers; but when the weather is mild and calm, let the front be constantly open.

The curtain should also be used occasionally, to shade the flowers from the sun, when it shines fiercely. Observe, in this case, to let the curtain down but just as low as necessary to shade the plants, and no lower; and never let the curtain remain longer down than is absolutely necessary for the defence of the flowers.

When the pots are placed on the stand, let them be examined, at least once every day, to see where water is wanted; and let such pots as stand in need of that article, be immediately supplied with it. In doing this, let no water fall on the flowers, for that would also wash off the dust. Let the water be always given in moderate quantities.

By thus placing your auricula pots on a covered stage, it not only preserves the flowers much longer in beauty, but you also more readily view them, and they shew themselves to much greater advantage than when placed on the ground.

Keep the surface of the pots perfectly neat, free from weeds, and every sort of litter; suffer no decayed leaves to remain on the plants, but let such, as soon as they appear, be taken off.

Where it is intended to save seeds from auriculas, let the flowers from which you would save them be marked when they are in full bloom.

Chuse for this purpose a large flower, and such as blows regular and lays itself perfectly flat. Let the colours be lively, with a large and bright eye. The stalk should be tall and strait, with strength in proportion.

Having marked the flowers, let the pots be immediately removed off the stage, and plunge them in a border, where the plants can enjoy the morning sun freely, till about ten or eleven o'clock, but not longer.

Water them often in dry weather, and suffer no weeds to grow in the pots or near them; likewise take care that they are at no time too much shaded with any large growing plants, but let them enjoy the free air, and the benefit of showers of rain.

The seed will be ripe in the end of June, and in July, when you must gather the seed pods according as they ripen, otherwise, they will soon scatter upon the ground.

*Propagating Auriculas by Slips.*

Auriculas are also increased by the slips or suckers which rise from the old plants; and this is the time to take them off and plant them.

They will now readily take root, and as the plants are now in bloom, you have the opportunity of seeing the flowers, and so take the slips from the plants of those you like best.

Let each slip be planted singly, in a small pot of fresh earth, and give them a little water as soon as they are planted; then set the pots in a shady place; the plants will take root freely, with the assistance of a moderate watering now and then.

The propagating these plants by slips, is the only method to increase the sort you like; for the slip, or sucker, will produce exactly the same flower as the plant from whence they were taken; which is not so with the seedling plants; for the principal intention of florists by raising them from seed is, to procure new sorts; for there are always varieties obtained from seed, altho' there may not be one like the flower from whence the seed was saved; and, perhaps, out of some hundreds, very few that have the properties requisite for a real good flower: but those that are curious in flowers, are well satisfied with the acquisition of one or two new flowers that have all the due properties; and, as above hinted, when any new flower is thus obtained, the next care is to propagate it by the slips or suckers which arise from the side of the main plant.

*Seedling Auriculas, &c.*

Seedling auriculas which were sown last autumn, will now appear, and they demand attention: these plants, while young, are not able to bear the full sun when it is powerful; they must therefore be shaded from it occasionally.

The boxes or tubs wherein these plants are growing, should be removed to the shade, towards the latter end of this month: the place should be open to the morning sun, till about nine or ten o'clock, but shaded the rest of the day, and watered often in dry weather.

Note, Auricula seed may still be sown; but it must be done in the first week in this month.

Such auricula plants as were raised last year from seed, will now many of them begin to flower; when you should examine



examine them; and such as produce the largest flower and have good colours, should be marked and planted in pots for stage flowers; but all the plain flowers, that is, those that have but one colour, should be only planted in borders, among other low flowering plants; and these which are planted in pots, should in the following year's bloom be again examined, when you will be more able to judge of their properties; and those of them that do not merit a place among stage flowers should be transplanted into the common borders, for none but such as are real good flowers should be placed on the stage.

#### *Balm of Gilead.*

This is the time to sow seeds of balm of Gilead: these plants are of the perennial kinds, and are much esteemed for the agreeable scent of their leaves; and they also make very proper furniture for the beds and borders of this garden, their stems rising two or three feet high, and they make a handsome appearance.

The seeds may be sown either on a hot-bed, or in a bed or border of natural earth, in a warm situation; but it will be most advisable to sow them on a moderate hot-bed, as the plants raised by this method will be brought greatly forward in the spring, and will flower sooner by three weeks; they may be sown in any common hot-bed, observing the same method of sowing in seed, and managing the plants, as directed for the hardier sorts of annual plants; such as China aster, India pink, Africa and French marigold, &c.

These plants, that is, the balm of Gilead, may likewise be propagated by cutting off the stalks, which, when there has been plants preserved in frames, or in green-houses all winter, they will, some of them, have stalks proper for that operation; or, if they are not now furnished with stalks, will have produced strong ones by the middle of June, when you should cut some of the strongest off, and divide them into lengths of six inches, and plant them four or five inches asunder, in a shady border, where they will readily take root, and be fit to transplant in two months.

It must be observed, when intended to preserve the plants all winter, they must be placed either in a green-house, or in a garden frame, and defended occasionally with the glasses and other covering in severe weather.

The

The plants will, if protected as above, continue green all winter.

### *Planting Evergreens.*

Evergreen shrubs, and trees of many sorts, may yet be planted. But this should be done in the first or second week in the month.

The sorts which will yet bear removal are hollies, bays, and yews; laurel, Portugal laurel, and laurustinus; phillyreas, alaternuses, and pyracanthas; citisuses, and cistuses, of all sorts; also the arbutus, or strawberry tree; evergreen cassine, and magnolias; likewise pines, firs, cypress, and junipers of all sorts; and cedars, &c.

Open for each shrub a wide hole, and let the bottom of each hole be loosened to some depth; then pour a pot of water into each of them, and with your spade, let the water and the earth at bottom be well worked up together: then bring in the plants, set them upright in the holes, and let the earth be very well broken, and filled in about the roots. When all is in, tread it gently round the plant; then make the earth at the top somewhat hollow, in order to contain water.

Where the plants can be conveniently taken up, and brought with balls of earth about their roots, it should be done, placing them in the holes with the balls entire.

When all is planted, give a good watering to settle the earth about their roots; then lay some mulch on the surface, round each plant; this will prevent the sun and wind from drying the earth too fast about their roots.

Stakes should be placed to such as require support; and this should be done as soon as they are planted; let the stakes be firmly fixed in the ground, and fasten the stem of the plant securely to them.

### *Flowering Shrubs.*

Where flowering shrubs are much wanted, they may yet be removed; but this must be done in the first week of the month.

The althea frutex, and Persian lilac, will yet bear transplanting tolerably well: also the bladder, and scorpion fennas; honeysuckles and jasmines; syringas and laburnams; and several other sorts.

When they are planted, water them well, and repeat it once or twice a week, if the season should be dry.

*Propa-*



*Propagating flowering Shrubs and Evergreens.*

For the methods of propagating flowering shrubs and evergreens, see the work of the flower garden and nursery in March; as also the nursery of this month, June, July, October, and November.

*Management of Grass Walks, &c.*

Grass walks and lawns, and other pieces of grass in this garden, should be kept in perfect good order.

Roll them frequently, and let the grass be regularly mown; observe to cut it always close, and as even as possible: this should be particularly regarded; for when the lawns and walks are so badly mown that every stroke of the scythe appears, they have then a very disagreeable appearance.

To keep grass in tolerable good order, it should be mown, in general, once a week, or thereabouts. However, never suffer grass in this garden to grow rank; but apply the scythe to it in proper time: then the mowing may be performed with expedition and exactness, and with great ease to the mower.

Rolling of grass walks and lawns, &c. is a very necessary work, and it should be often done; for it not only makes the surface firm, smooth, and clean, but it renders the grass much easier to be mown, than it otherwise would be.

Let the grass be always well rolled, the day before you intend to mow it, and you will reap the advantage of so doing, the next morning.

Where worm-casts appear on your grass, let these first be broken, and spread about with a pliable pole, before you use the roller: when that is done, let the grass be immediately well rolled; and the worm-casts being broken small and scattered about, they will readily stick to the roller, provided it is done while they are somewhat moist. By this method the grass will be made perfectly clean, and you will be able to mow it to a greater exactness.

The edges of the grass walks should now, provided it was not done last month, be neatly edged, or cut with an edging-iron; but this should now be particularly practised to those edges next gravel walks, and should always be done just before the gravel is to be turned, or new laid down.

*Gravel Walks.*

Gravel walks should now be broken up and turned, where it was not done in March; for it is now time to put them into the best order for the summer season.

By breaking up and turning gravel, at this season, it will not only destroy weeds and moss, but the walks will appear with a fresh and lively surface, which will render them very agreeable to be seen, and to walk upon, during the summer months.

But before you begin to lay or turn the gravel, the edges of the walks, if they are grass, should be first neatly pared or edged with an edging iron; or if the sides are planted with box, it should be gone over with the garden shears; and if there be borders next the walks, they should also be neatly dug, or cleaned, and the surface raked smooth, and you will then proceed in a workman like manner; and when the edgings are trimmed, and the borders put into proper order, it is a very great addition to the beauty of the walks.

In turning and laying gravel walks, let the same method be observed now, as mentioned in the former month; that is, to do it in dry weather; and as you advance with the turning, or laying the gravel, observe to tread, rake, and roll the same regularly, as you go on; this should be done every twenty or thirty feet, for gravel always binds a great deal the best, when it is fresh stirred; the roller will then have the greater effect in rendering the body of the walk firm, and the surface close and smooth.

Roll the gravel frequently after it has been turned or new laid; twice or thrice a week will not be too often; but never omit rolling the walks in general, once in that time. Frequent rollings will render the walks firm and beautiful, and will, also, in a great measure, prevent the growth of weeds and moss.

*Of Edgings of Box and Thrift.*

Box may yet be planted where it is wanted for edgings to beds or borders; and it will take root and grow freely, with the assistance of a little water now and then.

Thrift may also be planted, the beginning of this month; this will make an agreeable edging, if planted close and neat.

When



Where box edgings want trimming, it should now be done, although this is not the general season of clipping these edgings; but, notwithstanding, when they appear uneven, let them now be sheared, and they will then appear neat till Midsummer.

Likewise where edgings of thrift have grown very broad and uneven, let them be cut in on each side by line, and they will soon shoot and appear green again.

*Sticking and trimming Flowering Plants.*

Go round and place sticks to all such plants as require support, and let them be well secured before they take an awkward growth.

If this is done towards the end of this month, it will be time enough.

Fix the sticks upright and firmly in the ground; let the stems or stalks of the plants, be brought near the sticks, and tyed neatly to them; let the ends of the tying be also cut off close.

The sticks should be well proportioned to the natural height of each plant; for it looks ill to see a tall stick set for the support of a plant of low growth.

Take off all straggling and broken shoots from the plants of every kind, and let decayed leaves be cleared away whenever they appear.

*Destroy Weeds.*

Destroy weeds in every part before they grow large; they will now rise plentifully, in the borders, or other parts, among plants.

Let these be destroyed by the hoe or hand, as it is most convenient; but where the plants stand wide, let the hoe be used, it being the most expeditious method.

Let your hoe be sharp, and take the advantage of a dry day to use it, cutting the weeds up clean within the surface; and let every part between the plants be stirred; and as you go on, let all dead leaves and straggling shoots be taken off.

Then rake the borders, &c. over neatly, with a small rake; clearing away, at the same time, all the weeds and litter, and let the surface be made perfectly clean and smooth.

## The Nursery.

*Sowing Evergreens, Flowering Shrubs, and Tree Seeds.*

**F**INISH sowing the seeds of evergreens and all other tree and shrub seeds, which are intended to be sown this spring.

The sorts which may be sown now, are pines and firs of all kinds; cedars, cypresses, junipers; also the acorns of evergreen oaks, and bays, and the seeds of most other hardy evergreens.

All the above, and other seeds of the like kinds may be sown in beds of light earth in the common ground: some people choose to sow the cedars, and also the pines, in boxes or pots, for the conveniency of moving them to different situations, according to the season of the year.

The seeds of the arbutus, or strawberry tree, may still be sown in the beginning of this month.

For the method of sowing this seed, see the work of March.

Most kinds of hardy American trees may also be sown this month, but the sooner in the month this is done the better.

All the seeds of most sorts of hardy foreign trees, both of the evergreens and other kinds, may be sown in beds of light earth, in the common ground; and they will succeed, provided the place where they are sown be somewhat sheltered.

Prepare beds to sow them in, about three feet broad; the earth must be broke fine, and the surface laid perfectly even.

Note, If some of the more tender, or choicer kinds of these shrub seeds were to be sown in pots, and the pots plunged into a moderate hot-bed, it would forward their growth; and where a hot-bed can be readily obtained, I would advise this practice, for the very hard seeded or nut kind; but where there is not that conveniency, let them be sown in beds, as above, in the common ground; and there are but few sorts, especially of the American seeds, that will not succeed.

Sow the seeds separate, and cover each kind, according to its size, a proper depth, with light earth.



The proper depth to cover most kinds of tree and shrub seed, is from about half an inch, to two inches; that is, the lesser kinds of seeds must be covered half an inch deep, or thereabout; and the middle sized may be covered half an inch deeper; but the larger kinds of seeds, kernels, nuts, or fruits, must be covered with earth near two inches deep.

*The Management of Seed Beds.*

Water the seed-beds of all kinds of trees and shrubs, in dry weather; but this must be practised both before and after the plants begin to appear.

Observe at all times, to water these beds with moderation; a little and often must be the rule. Likewise be very careful not to apply the water over hastily at any time, for that would be apt to wash the earth away from the seed, and also from the young plants now beginning to come up.

Let the refreshments of water be repeated once every two or three days, at least, in dry weather; for this will be of great service to all kinds of seedling plants.

Shade will also prove very beneficial in the middle of hot sunny days, to all kinds of seedling trees and shrubs, about the time of their first appearing, and for some time after.

These young plants may be shaded from the sun occasionally, by fixing hoops across the beds; then let mats be drawn over the hoops as often as occasion requires.

Where there are boxes, pots, or tubs, of seedling plants, let them be placed in a shady situation, about the middle, or towards the latter end of this month.

All beds of seedling trees and shrubs, whatever, must be kept perfectly clear from weeds.

This should be carefully attended to, for the weeds are much quicker of growth than the plants of any sort, and would soon get the start of them, if permitted to stand, and would do much damage.

Therefore, let the weeds, as soon as they appear in the beds, be destroyed; or, at least, let them be taken out before they get to any great head; but this must be done by a very careful hand-weeding.

*Watering.*

Water new plantations of evergreens and flowering shrubs in general; but in particular, those which were

lately planted out from the seed-beds; these must not be forgotten in dry weather, otherwise they will suffer much.

Water also new plantations of young forest trees, for they will require it now and then, in a dry time.

Fruit-trees and fruit-tree stocks, which were transplanted this spring, will also require to be watered at times, if the weather should prove dry in this month.

Twice a week will be often enough to water new plantations of young trees and shrubs, even in the driest season, and to those that are but lately planted; but where there is mulch, or the like, laid on the surface of the ground, over their roots, as is necessary to be practised to the more curious and tender sorts, they need not be watered above once a week; and such as have been planted in autumn, or early in the spring, need not above once in ten or twelve days, or a fortnight; which will be quite sufficient.

Cuttings, either of fruit or forest trees, flowering shrubs, or evergreens, which were planted last autumn, or this spring, must also be watered now and then, in dry weather.

#### *Transplanting.*

Evergreens, of most sorts, may yet be transplanted; but this should be done at the beginning of this month.

Pines and firs of all kinds, cedars and cypress, and the like kinds, will yet bear removal very well. Likewise phillyreas, alaternuses, and pyracanthas; also hays, hollies, and evergreen oaks; cistuses and citifuses; and many other sorts of evergreens.

Let them be removed, if possible, at a time when the air is cloudy and calm; and if it is a dripping time, it will be the better; such weather, if it should happen, should always be chosen for the removal of trees and shrubs, at this season.

As soon as they are planted, let them be well watered; this will settle the earth about their roots; then it will be necessary to lay some mulch, or litter, on the surface; for this will keep out the drying effects of the sun and wind, and will preserve a due moisture in the earth, about the roots of the plants.

#### *New Grafted Trees.*

Examine new grafted trees; the clay is sometimes apt to fall off, or crack, so as to admit air and wet to the grafts.



Where this is the case, let the old clay be taken intirely off, and immediately put on some more, that is fresh and well wrought. Let this be perfectly well closed in every part, so that neither wind nor wet can enter.

Where there are any shoots produced from the stocks, below the grafts, let them be rubbed off close; for these, if permitted to grow, would starve the grafts.

*New Budded Trees.*

Budded trees should also be looked over, now and then, about this time; for those that were budded last summer will now be making their first shoots, and therefore demand some attention.

The first shoots from the buds are, in some seasons, apt to be attacked by insects; and these, if not prevented, will hinder the young shoots greatly, and sometimes intirely spoil them; but by a timely attention, the injury may be, in a great measure, prevented.

Look to the ends of the young shoots; and where any of their leaves are curled up, let such be carefully taken off, for they are full of small insects. By this practice the vermin may be prevented from spreading farther.

Likewise all shoots which put out from the stocks, besides the bud, must be also rubbed off constantly as they are produced, that the whole efforts of the stock may go to the support of the buds.

*Destroy Weeds.*

Destroy weeds between the rows of young trees; they will now rise abundantly from seed; but by applying the hoe to them while young, they may be very easily destroyed.

Choose dry weather, always, to destroy weeds by hoe; let the hoe be sharp, and take the advantage of the weeds while they are small, and cut them up clean within the surface of the ground.

There is nothing like destroying weeds in due time; for when they are suffered to grow large, they are constantly very hurtful to all young trees and shrubs, and in particular to those plants which are not far advanced in their growth. Besides, they appear very disagreeable, and require double labour to exirpate them.

*Grafting.*

*Grafting.*

Grafting may still be performed upon fruit-trees, but it must be upon the latest kinds of the different sorts, and it must be done the first week in the month, or not at all.

Graft hollies, with cuttings of the variegated kinds. The first fortnight in this month is the proper time to perform that work on these plants.

The common plain holly is the proper stock to graft the variegated kinds upon; and the stocks for this purpose must not be less than four years growth from the seed; but those of five and six, are very proper for this use.

Get some good cuttings, or grafts, of the best variegated kinds; they must be shoots of the last summer's growth. Let them be grafted with exactness, according to the general method of grafting.

*Inarching.*

Inarching may also be performed now on evergreens and on any kind of trees or shrubs that you desire to propagate that way.

This method of grafting is principally intended for those kinds of trees and shrubs which are not easily raised from seed, layers, or cutting, or by any of the other general methods, for most sorts may be propagated by inarching.

But this may be practised on almost any kind of trees and shrubs, as may be thought convenient, either by way of curiosity or otherwise.

The evergreen kinds may be inarched any time in this month, but the other sorts generally succeed best when inarched at the beginning.

## The Green-House.

*Giving Air to the Green-House Plants.*

**T**HE green-house plants now require a large portion of free air, and this article should be admitted to them every day, when the air is any thing mild.

Most



Most of the plants will now be shooting freely; they must not, therefore, be kept too close, for that would weaken the shoots, and render the plants in general, so extremely tender, that they would not be able to bear the open air well, when they are first brought forth for the summer season.

Therefore, open the green-house window every morning, when the air is mild and calm, about an hour or two after sun-rising, and let them continue open till within an hour, or less, of the sun's setting; that is, if the air continues mild till that time of the evening.

#### *Watering.*

Water must now be duly given to the plants, in general, according as they stand in need thereof.

The orange and lemon-trees will require that article often. Also the myrtles, oleanders, ammomum plinii, and cistuses, and all other plants of the hardier kinds, will require to be frequently refreshed with moderate waterings.

But the plants in general must be often looked over, to see where water is wanted, and let all such pots and tubs as stand in need of it, be properly supplied therewith, for this is now a very necessary article.

But in watering the green-house plants, let it be given to all kinds with moderation, but especially while they are in the house.

Let no decayed leaves remain on any of the plants; but let such, as soon as they appear, be taken off; for these make the plants appear unsightly, and are also hurtful to them.

Let no weeds grow in the pots, or tubs; keep them free from moss, and let no sort of litter be seen about them.

#### *Shifting Plants into larger Pots.*

Orange, lemon, citron, and myrtle-trees, and any other of the green-house plants, may still be shifted into larger pots, where they require it.

Let those plants which are to be shifted, be brought out of the house, in a mild day; then take them out of the pots, or tubs, with the ball of earth intire about their roots; then let the matted and decayed roots, on the outside and bottom of the balls, be neatly pared off, and let some of the old earth on the outside be taken away.

Then

Then, having some fresh earth ready, let some be put into the bottom of the new pot, or tub; then set the tree with its ball, as above prepared, in the middle, and fill up the pot or tub with the fresh compost, laying it over the top of the ball an inch and a half deep.

The tree being thus fresh planted, let the pot or tub be immediately well watered, to settle the new earth close about the ball and roots; then return them to their places in the green-house, and water them moderately, as occasion requires.

Those plants which are not to be shifted this year, should have the old earth taken out of the top of their pots, or tubs, to a little depth, and some fresh and rich compost put in its stead, which will refresh them greatly.

This will be remarkably serviceable to orange, lemon, and citron-trees, and the like; and to all other plants in the green-house; and it should not be omitted now, if it was not done before.

Let the earth first be loosened on the top of the pots, or tubs, quite to the surface of the roots, and take it out; then loosen the earth a little way down, round the sides, and take that out; then fill up the pots or tubs, as before, with the new earth, and give a little water to settle it.

#### *Cleaning the Orange-Trees, &c.*

Where the leaves of orange and lemon trees, &c. have contracted any foulness, they must now be made perfectly clean.

Get some soft water in a pot, and a piece of sponge; dip this in the water, and clean the leaves therewith, one by one. By cleaning the surface of the leaves, it will open their necessary pores, and be serviceable to the whole plants, and render them beautiful.

#### *Head-down Myrtles, &c.*

Where myrtles, or other hardy green-house shrubs, have naked, or straggling rugged heads, let them now be headed down; that is, cut their branches off near the stem, by which means they will put out plenty of strong shoots nearer the stem, and form full and regular heads, in three months time.

Let their heads be cut as close as may seem necessary; and, after they are cut down, let the head and stem be well



well washed; to cleanse them from filth; and give the pots a little water.

Then take a little of the old earth at the top of the pot, out, and fill it up again with the same quantity of fresh, and give a little water.

But, if the plants require shifting into larger pots, let them be taken out of their present pots, and pare the matted roots off, and take out some of the old earth from the ball; then place the plants in the larger pots, and fill up the vacancy with new earth.

#### *Inarching.*

Inarch exoticks; this is now the proper time to begin to perform that method of grafting, on any of the green-house trees or shrubs.

Orange, lemon, and citron-trees, may be propagated by that method; also pomegranates, and many other sorts.

But the trees raised by this method, never make large nor handsome plants; therefore it is hardly ever done, but on such plants as cannot be easily raised any other way; except it is done by way of curiosity.

Some, by way of curiosity, will inarch a branch of an orange or lemon-tree, that has young fruit on it, on one of the common orange stocks, and it will be well united by the end of August, and may then be separated from the mother plant; and there will be a new tree with fruit on it, raised in the space of four or five months time.

### The Hot-House.

#### *Pine-Apple Plants.*

**T**HE pine-apple plants now demand daily attendance; they must be often refreshed with water, and they must also have fresh air in warm sunny days.

But, in the first place, it will now be necessary to observe, that if there was no fresh tan added to the bark-bed the former month, it must now be done, in the first week in this month.

Let

Let the same quantity of fresh tan be provided now for this purpose, as mentioned in the former month, for that use, which is about one third of what the pit will contain.

This being ready, let all the pots in the bark-bed be taken up; then pare off as much of the old bark, at the top of the bed, as the new parcel will make good, allowing it to rise an inch or two above the top of the pit, and take it quite away; then throw in the new tan, and, with a fork, let the old bark which remains in the bed, and the new, be well worked up and mixed together.

The new tan being all in, and properly worked up with the old, let the surface be levelled, and then immediately plunge the pots as before. Observe to place the largest and tallest plants, in the back row, and so gradually down to the lowest in front.

But where new tan was added the last month, the beds need not have any thing done to them now; for if the bark was then properly worked up, and mixed together, it will now be in excellent order.

#### *Watering the Pines.*

Water must now be given to these plants pretty often, provided there is a good heat in the bark, for the pots in general should be kept in a moderate degree of moistness.

Frequent and light waterings must now be the practice, which will be greatly serviceable to all, but particularly to the fruiting plants. Where the heat is good, and the weather tolerably warm, the pots will require moderate refreshment, every four or five days, or thereabout.

#### *Admitting Air into the Hot-House.*

Fresh air is another very necessary article; this should be admitted to the pine-apple, and other plants in the hot-house, every fine day.

Every warm sunny day, when little wind is stirring, let some of the glasses or lights, be open a little way, to let in fresh air; but this must not be done before nine or ten o'clock in the morning, or, at least, till the sun has sufficiently warmed the enclosed air of the house.

Remember to shut the glasses close again, in good time, in the afternoon, while the air within the house is in a proper degree of warmth.

*Succession.*



*Succession of Pine Plants.*

The pine plants in the succession house, or pit, which are to bear fruit next year, must now be shifted into larger pots.

The pots for this purpose must not be of the larger size; what is called sixteens, or three-halfpenny pots, will be large enough.

Having the pots and some fresh compost ready, let the plants be taken up out of the bark-bed, and immediately proceed to shifting them.

Turn the plants out of their present pots, preserving if you can the ball of earth intire; then having put some fresh earth in the bottom of the new pot, place the plant therein immediately, with all its ball entire, as above, and fill up the pots with the new compost. But it is the practice of some gardeners, in shifting pines, to shake them entirely out of the earth, and trim their roots; which practice I do not condemn; but I generally, if I can, preserve the ball.

But in shifting these plants, it will be proper to observe, that where any of the plants are in a sickly condition, or are infested with insects, it will in such cases be proper to clear away all the earth from the roots of the plants; and trim the roots or fibres pretty close, and also pare the bottom of the main root, and then immediately plant it in new earth.

When the plants are all shifted, they must be immediately set into the bark again, plunging the pots to their rims, at moderate distances.

But the bark must first be well stirred up, and near one third part of new tan added, in the manner as abovementioned, working the old and new very well together; then set in the pots.

This work should be done in fine weather, and the whole completed in the same day.

Refresh the plants after this often, with moderate waterings, just to keep the earth in the pots a little moist.

Give air also in fine sunny days, for this will strengthen the plants, and make them healthy and beautiful.

The plants are to remain in the above pots, till the end of July, or some time in August, and then to be removed for the last time, into the pots where they are to fruit.

*Management*

*Management of the young Pine-Apple Plants.*

Where the crowns and suckers of the last year's pines, have filled the small pots with their roots, let them some time this month be shifted into pots a size larger.

Shake them carefully out of the pots, with the balls intact, and place them directly into the new pots; and fill them up with fresh earth, and give a little water.

Stir up the bark, and add a quantity of new, as above; and then plunge the pots to their rims.

*Management of tender Plants in general in the Stove.*

In some pine-houses, or stoves, there are kept, besides the pines, many other curious and tender exotic plants: these must also have their share of attention.

Where any of these plants stand in need of larger pots, let them now be shifted into such, filling up the pots with new earth.

Then, if there be room in the bark-bed, let the pots be immediately plunged to their rims therein; and by the assistance of the kindly heat of the bark, the plants will send out roots very freely into the fresh earth; which will give them strength, and make them healthy, and of a lively colour.

Water must also be given to these plants, at times; some sorts will require it pretty often.

The coffee-tree, and all the woody kinds, should be refreshed with moderate quantities of water, every three or four days, at least, for they will require it so often.

The succulent kinds do not require much water, but yet a little now and then will do them good; but let this be given very sparingly, for too much moisture will rot these plants.

Where the coffee-tree, and other like kinds of plants, have contracted dust or other filth, let it be cleaned off.

There is nothing more prejudicial to tender plants, than to suffer dust to remain on them; for it closes up those small pores which are necessary to preserve the health, and promote the growth of the plants. Therefore, when any sort of foulness appears, let it be immediately cleaned off.

All the kinds of aloes, and other plants of that nature, are very apt to contract dust; they should therefore be often looked over, and carefully cleaned from that and every kind of filth.

of four fingers breadth, in height, according to the day reduced; and thus they grow close again. M. A. Y.



M A Y

Work to be done in the Kitchen Garden.

Melons.

**M**ELON plants still require particular care, those which are under hand or bell glasses, as well as those in frames.

The early plants in frames will now shew fruit plentifully; and some will be set and swelling; therefore, in order to procure a sufficient quantity of those fruit, for a full crop, the plants must, at this time, have all the assistance that is in the power of art to give them.

One principal thing to be observed is, to preserve a proper degree of heat in the beds, while the fruit is about setting, and for some time after; for a kindly warmth is necessary to promote the swelling of the fruit after they are set.

It should be observed, that although there be often very warm days in this month, yet there are often cold nights, which makes it so necessary to preserve a due heat in these beds; for if the weather should prove cold, and at the same time there is but little warmth in the beds, the melons will not set nor swell kindly, but most of them will turn yellow and go off.

Therefore, when it is perceived that the beds have much declined in their heat, immediately apply a lining of well prepared hot dung, to one, or to both sides of the bed, according as there may be occasion.

The advantage of adding a fresh lining to such beds as are much decayed in their heat, will soon evidently appear.

Those plants which are in frames, must now be allowed a good share of free air, every day, when the weather is calm and mild; for this will strengthen the plants and promote the setting and free swelling of the fruit.

This article of air must be admitted to the plants by raising the upper ends of the lights with props, two, three or four fingers breadth, in height, according as the warmth of the day requires; and shut them down close again about

about four or five in the evening, or sooner, if the weather should change cold, or prove windy.

The glasses must be covered every night with mats all this month. Let the mats be thrown over them, about six or seven in the evening; but when the air is cold, they may be thrown over an hour sooner.

About seven in the morning let the mats be taken off, and when it is a warm sunny morning, so that the sun reach the glasses, they may be taken off at six, or thereabouts.

Water should also be given at times to the melon plants in frames, for they will require a little now and then, provided there be a good heat in the bed, and the weather be tolerably warm and sunny.

Let this article be given very moderately, and not too often, for too much moisture would chill the young fruit, and prevent their setting. Once in ten days will be often enough to water them, and the value of two pots of water to a three-light frame, will be sufficient.

Choose always a moderately warm day to water them; and about eight in a morning, or three or four in the afternoon, are now the best times of the day to do that work. Shut down the lights immediately after watering; and if the sun shines, throw a mat over them for half an hour or so, then take it off again.

Observe, in watering these plants, to let as little as possible touch the fruit that are about setting, or newly set; and do not give much water too near the head, or main stem of the plant, but rather give water mostly towards the extreme parts of the bed.

In very warm days, it will be advisable to shade the plants from the sun, for two or three hours, during its fiercest heat; but this should be particularly practised when there is but a shallow depth of earth on the beds, or when the leaves of the plants flag much. Let some thin mats be spread over the glasses, in these days, about eleven o'clock, and taken off again about two.

Where the plants lie very near the glasses, it will be necessary to raise the frame about six inches; this is done by placing bricks, or square pieces of wood, under each corner of the frame.

According as the melons set, observe to place a piece of tile under each, for this will preserve them from the damp of the earth of the bed.



**MAY] THE KITCHEN GARDEN. 191**

*Of Melons to be raised under Bell and Hand-Glasses, and oiled Paper.*

Finish making ridges or beds to plant the melons upon which are to be covered with bell or hand-glasses. This work should be completed in the first or second week in this month, at farthest.

Likewise make ridges or beds for melons, to be raised under frames covered with oiled paper, for which see the work of June.

These ridges must be made of the very best new horse-dung; preparing it first, as directed in the two former months, for other hot-beds.

Make the ridges, at least, a yard broad, but four feet will not be too much; and let them be full two feet thick, shaking the dung on equally in every part; and beat it very well down with the fork.

Where there are two or more of these ridges to be made, allow the space of four feet between ridge and ridge. The said space or alleys, must be filled with dung and earth, in about a month or five weeks after; which will greatly assist the setting of the fruit.

The ridges being made, get some good earth; and if this be loamy and mixed up with one fourth part of very rotten dung, it will be the better for this purpose. The earth is not to be sifted, but very well broken, and mixed with the spade, and then laid on the bed. It should be laid not less than ten inches thick, all over the top of the ridge.

Then mark out the holes for the plants, allowing the distance of four feet between hole and hole, and set a bell, or hand glass, over each, and keep them close down till the earth under them is warm, and then bring in the plants.

If the plants are now in pots, turn them carefully out, with the ball of earth entire, and make a hole in the earth where each glass stands; place one pot of plants, with the ball, into each hole; close the earth very well about the ball, and also about the stems of the plants; give every hole about a quart of water, and immediately put on the glasses.

Shade the plants from the sun, for the first two or three days, from about eight till four o'clock; but after that, let them have more and more sun every day, till they are able to bear it fully without flagging.

Let

Let them have air every warm day, by tilting the warmest side of the glasses, but keep them shut close down every night. The glasses must also be covered every night, all this month, with mats.

Those plants now planted out will produce ripe fruit, some about the end of July, but the principal crops will be in August and September.

Where any of the melon plants have filled the bell or hand-glasses, the vines must then have liberty to run from under them; but they must not be trusted out before the latter end of the month.

Therefore, about the last week in this month, if the plants have advanced so far as to press against and run up the inside of the glasses, they should be let out; let each glass be raised upon three props about two inches and a half high, and let the ends of the vines be laid out at regular distances, and peg them down.

Do not fail to cover the ridges every night with mats, for at least a fortnight after the plants are laid out from under the glasses.

#### *Management of Cucumber Plants in Frames.*

Cucumber plants in frames will now be in full perfection of bearing; they must therefore be carefully attended.

These plants will require to be often refreshed with moderate waterings: this is a most needful assistance, and must not now be omitted. Water them moderately, not less than twice a week.

About three or four o'clock in the afternoon, is the best time of the day to water these plants, at this season.

The plants must also be allowed a great share of free air, every mild day; for the sun has now a great power; and if the glasses were to be kept too close, it would destroy the plants.

Therefore raise the upper end of the lights, every warm sunny morning, about seven or eight o'clock; and according as the heat of the day increases, continue raising the glasses a proportionable height.

The lights must be shut close down every evening, about five or six o'clock; but in cold evenings shut them down an hour or two sooner.

Shade the plants from the sun, in very hot days. The time to do this, is from eleven to two o'clock.

Where



Where the glasses are pretty close to the plants, it will now be advisable to allow them a larger space of air, by raising the frame.

This should be raised high enough to allow a clear space between the lights and the plants, of not less than six or eight inches in front, nor less than ten or twelve at the back of the frame; the plants will then be able to stand the sun with less danger of scorching their leaves, and parching up their roots.

*Cucumbers to be planted under Hand or Bell-Glasses.*

Cucumbers may now be planted out, under hand or bell glasses.

These, if planted the beginning of this month, will begin to bear about the beginning, or towards the middle of June, and will continue bearing till the cold weather destroys the plants.

But a slight hot-bed must be made to plant them in, in order that they may be brought forward a little at first; and it will be the best method to make all the said beds, or the greatest part, within the ground, as they will not require to be lined.

Choose for this purpose, a rich spot of ground; there dig a trench two feet six inches wide, and about twelve or fifteen inches deep. Lay the earth that comes out neatly all along the sides of the trench.

Fill this trench with fresh hot dung, and raise it not less than three inches above the surface of the ground, for the bed should be, at least, fifteen or eighteen inches thick of dung.

Then cover the bed with the earth that was thrown out of the trench; this must be laid eight or nine inches thick over the top of the dung, and in a fortnight or three weeks after, let the earth be laid six or eight inches on each side of the bed farther out than the dung, first loosening the ground with a spade, so far on each side the bed.

Then mark out the holes for the plants, exactly along the middle of the bed, at three feet six inches from one another.

Plant in each hole three or four good plants, and give them a little water; then let the glasses be immediately put on, and shade the plants from the sun till they have got root.

The long prickly cucumber is very proper for this plantation: also the long green and white Turkey kinds.

Let the plants have air every day, when it is calm and mild, by tilting one side of the glasses, and let them now and then be refreshed with moderate waterings.

But where good plants cannot be readily procured to plant in the above bed, let some good seed be put in; the plants will soon come up, and will come into bearing at a very acceptable time.

The bed being made as above directed, mark out the holes for the seed, just three feet and a half asunder; make the holes in form of a shallow basin, about an inch and a half deep, and each about nine or ten inches over.

In each of these holes sow eight or nine good plump seeds, and cover them near half an inch deep with earth; and then put on the bell or hand glasses.

After the plants have been up about ten or twelve days, they must be thinned, leaving only four of the strongest plants in each hole; and at the same time draw some earth up about their stalks, and give a little water to settle the earth close to them again.

If these seeds are sown in the first or second week in May, the plants will, if properly managed after they are come up, begin to bear some fruit in the third or fourth week in June.

#### *Cucumbers to pickle.*

Sow cucumbers for pickling: these are to be sown in the natural ground; and some time in the third or fourth week in this month, is the proper time to put in the seed.

But if the season be cold, or very wet, it will be proper to defer putting in the seed till the last week in this month, or first week in June.

Prepare for these seeds a piece of rich free ground, and divide it into beds five feet broad, allowing twelve inches between bed and bed for an alley; or if you have need you may plant between the beds, rows of lettuces, or dwarf kidney-beans.

Then mark out the holes for the seed, exactly along the middle of each bed, allowing three feet and a half between hole and hole. Then dig the places for the holes, breaking the earth well with the spade; and then form them with the hand like a shallow basin, about an inch and a half deep, and ten inches over, and sow in each hole



hole eight or ten seeds, covering them near half an inch deep with earth.

After the seed is sown, if the weather should prove hot and dry, it will be proper to sprinkle the holes a little with water, but this must be given very moderately, just enough to moisten the earth a little; for too much moisture would rot the seed.

When the plants have been come up about a fortnight, they must be thinned, and leave no more than five or six of the best plants in every hole.

Where a person is straitened for room, he may sow the pickling cucumbers between the rows of early colliflowers, or the like, allowing the same distance as above; and the colliflowers will be mostly all gone, by that time the cucumber plants begin to push their runners.

In sowing picklers, it is the practice in cold wet seasons, with many of the London gardeners, to sow the seed on a slight hot-bed; and when the plants have been up about a week, or ten days, to transplant them. The method is this: get some new horse-dung, and make a bed about a foot thick, the breadth and length to be in proportion to the quantity of plants you would raise. As soon as the bed is made, lay on about two or three inches depth of earth; then with your fingers make holes about an inch wide, and half an inch, or near an inch deep, and about an inch and half asunder, dropping eight or ten seeds in each hole, and cover them in; this is called dotting them in: or instead of this, you may draw drills a-cross the bed; the seed is to be sown in the drills, observing to sow them quite thick, and in clusters; at least eight or ten good seeds in each cluster; put the seeds so close together as to almost touch, and cover them near half an inch deep with earth; allow a clear space in each drill of about an inch between each patch or cluster of seed, and let the drills be two inches asunder: by thus sowing the seed in clusters or patches, the plants will also rise so; and when fit to transplant, are to be taken up in clusters as they grow, with the earth, which will readily hang about their roots, and to be planted in the places where they are to remain; allotting one bunch of plants to a hole, and giving them immediately some water: they will require no further care at this time than a little water now and then provided it be dry weather, for they will readily take root without flagging.

I have known some of the gardeners about London, in cold unfavourable seasons, raise plants enough this way to plant two or three acres of ground. This, in a bad season, is a very good method, and worthy to be put in practice.

*Gourds and Pumpkins.*

Plant out from the hot-bed, the gourds and pumpkins which were sown the middle of April.

This may be done any time between the fifteenth last day of the month; but let it be done in mild weather.

They are to be planted out in the common ground, where they will succeed, and produce ripe fruit in August.

But if you desire to have any of the curious sorts in fruit sooner than common, you should in the beginning of the month, provided you have hot dung and some bell or hand glasses at liberty, make some holes in the places where the plants are to produce their fruit, filling the said holes with a barrowful or two of new horse-dung, covering that eight inches deep with earth, and so plant your gourds, &c. and cover them with the above glasses, or with paper frames, managing them as directed for cucumbers, under hand glasses.

But when intended to practice as above, the seed should be sown in the first or second week in April. See the work of that month.

Observe to plant the orange, and other small gourds, near to a wall, or other fence; and when the plants begin to run, let the vines, or runners, be neatly trained, and fastened up close to the wall, pails, &c.

Where this is practised, the plants, together with the fruit, will make an agreeable appearance, in the months of July, August, and September.

These plants may also be supported with stakes; that is, when the plants begin to run, let a tall firm stake be fixed in the ground near each plant; and, according as their vines advance in length, let them be trained up carefully round the stakes.

But the pumpkins, and large kind of gourds, should be planted out in an open spot, setting them eight or ten feet from one another.

The vines of these sorts must be suffered to run upon the surface of the ground, in the full ground, where, if they have room, they will extend a great way.



The seeds of gourds and pumpkins may still be sown; but this must be done in the first week in the month. The seeds must be sown in a hot-bed, which will bring the plants on much forwarder, so as to be ready to plant out into the natural ground, in the last week in this month, or first week in June.

Let the seeds be sown in one of the cucumber or melon hot beds already made; or otherwise, get two or three barrows of new dung, and make this up in a small bed, about thirty inches broad each way, and cover it four or five inches thick with rich earth; there sow the seeds, and then cover the bed with a large bell or hand-glass.

When the plants begin to appear, give them air every day, by raising the sunny side of the glass a little way with a prop; and let them be often refreshed with water.

When the plants have got rough leaves, and when the first rough leaf is two or three inches broad, or thereabout, the plants may then be planted out into the open ground, as above directed.

But such persons as, for want of hot dung, &c. are necessitated to sow them in the common ground, should sow them in the places where they are to remain.

#### *Kidney-Beans.*

Now plant a full crop of kidney-beans, to succeed those planted in April.

Any of the dwarf kinds of these beans may still be planted; but the best and most profitable for the plantation are the speckled, and also the Canterbury white dwarf sort.

Draw drills for them thirty inches asunder, place the beans in the drills, about three or four inches a-part, draw the earth evenly over them, and, when all is planted, let the surface of the ground be lightly and neatly raked.

Plant also, where required, any of the running kinds of kidney-beans.

Most of these sorts are exceeding profitable for the service of a family; for they are surprising great bearers; but, in particular, the scarlet flowering bean; and there is a sort that differs nothing from the scarlet but only in colour, which is white, and whose flowers are also white; but when fit to gather for the table, is not to be distinguished from the scarlet, either in taste or manner of growth, and is very proper for this plantation: there is

also the large white Dutch running kinds, which are very proper to plant now.

These, and all the running or climbing sort of kidney-beans, must be allowed more room to grow than the dwarf kinds; that is, the drills for these large sorts must be opened at three feet six inches distance from one another at least, but four feet will not be too much.

Place the beans in the drills, five or six inches asunder, and cover them equally with earth, about an inch and a half deep.

When the plants are come up, and begin to push their runners, then let some tall sticks, or poles, be placed to each row, for the plants to climb upon. The runners will soon catch hold, and will twine themselves very naturally round the sticks or poles, to the height of eight or ten feet, provided the poles or sticks be so high.

The advantage of planting these running kinds is very great; for these that are now planted, will, after they begin, continue bearing till the cold weather destroys the plants.

But it should be observed, that where there are not the convenience of sticks or poles for these plants to climb up upon, they will not succeed; and where that is the case, it will be best to plant none but the dwarf kinds.

#### *Capiscums for pickling.*

The capiscums for pickling, which were sown in March or April, should now be planted out; but this should be done in moist weather.

These plants being raised in a hot-bed, are somewhat tender, therefore must not be planted out too soon; but this may be done any time in the third or fourth week of the month.

Dig for these plants a spot of rich ground, and rake the surface smooth; then put in the plants by line, a foot asunder every way, and water them.

#### *Love-Apples for Soups, &c.*

Plant out tomatos, or love-apples, from the hot-bed where they are raised. About the middle of the month is the proper time to remove them.

These plants are very luxuriant, and rambling in their growth; they must therefore be planted close to a wall, pails, or espaliers; and when they begin to branch out, must



must be trained, and nailed to the wall, or pails, in the manner of a wall tree.

Observe, they must be planted against a south wall, or other south fence; for if they were to be planted in the shade, the fruit would not ripen. The vacant spaces between wall trees would suit them well.

One stout plant in a place is sufficient. Water them as soon as they are planted, and shade them from the sun till they have taken root; and a little shelter in cold nights, for the first fortnight, would be very serviceable.

Asparagus will now be fit to cut for use.

In cutting the buds or shoots of these plants, it should be observed, that, when they are from three, to four or five, or at most six inches in height, they should be gathered; but those about three or four inches high, are in prime order; when permitted to run much higher, the top of the bud opens, and the shoot does not eat so well as those that are cut when the head is quite close.

When you go to cut them, you should be careful to thrust your knife down close by the side of the shoot you are going to cut, lest you wound or destroy any young buds that are coming up and do not yet appear.

The shoots should be cut off about two or three inches within the ground.

Let the beds of these plants be now cleaned, for seed weeds will now rise very thick on them.

#### *Transplanting Lettuces.*

Transplant coss lettuce, also Silesia and other kinds, which were sown the two former months.

Choose a rich spot for those plants, not much exposed to the sun; dig it nearly one spade deep, and rake the surface smooth; then, in an evening, put in the plants.

They must be planted in rows, ten or twelve inches asunder; and allow the same distance between plant and plant in each row, and give some water to settle the earth about their roots.

#### *Sow Lettuce Seed.*

Sow lettuce seed: this should be done at two or three different times this month, that there may be a constant supply of such plants as are good.

The coss and Silesia are the proper kind to sow now; but where the brown Dutch are required, that seed may also be sown now, and it will succeed very well.

An open situation must be chosen to sow these seeds in, and where the ground is light and rich; sow each sort of seed separate, and rake them in with a light and even hand.

The beds wherein these seeds are sown, must be often refreshed with water, if the weather should prove dry, otherwise the seed will not grow.

#### *Small Sallading.*

Sow cresses, mustard, radish, rape, and other small salad seeds often.

Where a constant supply of these small herbs are wanted, there should be some seed of each sort put into the ground, once every five or six days.

These seeds must now, if the weather be hot and dry, be sown in a shady border, and where the ground is light and rich. Draw shallow drills, and sow the seeds in tolerably thick, and cover them lightly with earth. In dry weather give them a little water, at least, every other day.

#### *Spinage.*

Spinage may yet be sown, if required, and it will succeed tolerably well: this seed should now be sown in an open situation.

In some places this plant is required all summer: where this is the case, there should be a little seed sown every twelve or fourteen days.

Hoe and thin the spinage which was sown the former month. Cut down all the weeds, and leave the plants about five inches asunder.

#### *Turneps.*

Sow more turneps, they will come in at a fine season; that is, they will be fit to draw for the table by the middle, or latter end, of July; but will be in excellent order by the beginning of August, and will continue good a long time.

This seed must not be sown in dry hot weather; for if it is, all the labour will be lost: but when the weather is showery, or there is a fair prospect of its being so, then is the right time to sow this small seed.

Sow it in an open spot of light ground; do not spare seed, but sow it as equally as possible, and rake it in with the same care.

Hoe



Hoe and thin the turneps which were sown the former month; cut up all the weeds, and thin the plants regularly, allowing seven or eight inches between plant and plant.

This work of thinning should always be performed when the rough leaves are about the breadth of a man's thumb.

The white turnep rooted radish are in some families much esteemed, as also the black sort, called black Spanish radish.

We have, in the former editions, advised these to be sown principally in July, for the latter end of autumn and winter use; but if any one desires them sooner, sow some seed of either sort, and they will be fit to draw in July and August.

But those raised from this sowing, generally eat more hard and hot than those sown two months later.

#### *Carrots and Parsneps.*

Carrots and parsneps will now be advancing fast in their growth, and they should be properly encouraged; clear them from weeds, and thin the plants out to due distances.

This work may be done either by hand or hoe; those that can use the small hoe, will find it the most expeditious method of cleaning and thinning these plants; and besides, by loosening the surface of the ground with the hoe, it will greatly promote the free growth of the plants.

However, at any rate, let these plants be cleaned, and thinned out to proper distances, that they may have full liberty to grow at top, and swell at bottom.

The parsneps must not be left closer than six or seven inches from one another; there is nothing like allowing these plants room enough, for then their roots will be large, long, and strait.

The carrots must also be allowed sufficient room to grow; but in thinning these plants there are two things to be considered.

The first thing is, if the plants are intended to be drawn for the table, while they are young, let them now be thinned, and left four inches asunder, which will be room sufficient; but where they are to remain to grow to full size, the plants must then be left at six or seven inches asunder, every way.

*Sowing Carrots.*

Carrot seed may still be sown, where required; it will grow freely, and the plants will come up soon, and they will be ready to draw for the table by the latter end of July, or soon in August, and continue in fine order all the autumn season.

*Onions.*

The crops of onions should, towards the middle or latter end of this month, be perfectly well cleared from weeds; and the plants, when three or four inches high, should be thinned, leaving them three or four inches asunder, or thereabouts. Take good care to leave the strongest plants.

This work may either be performed by hand, or with the small hoe; the latter is the quickest method, and by stirring the ground with the hoe, it is of great service to the growth of the plants.

But where a supply of young onions are wanted for salads, or other uses, there should be a spot set apart and reserved unthinned for that purpose; but observing to thin them regularly as you draw them for use, leaving the most promising plants to stand to bulb.

*Hamburgh Parsley, Scorzonera and Falsafy.*

The Hamburgh or large rooted parsley, scorzonera, and falsafy, must now be carefully cleaned; and the plants should be thinned, or hoed out, to proper distances, that their roots may have room to swell. Leave these plants about six or seven inches distance from one another.

The seeds of scorzonera and falsafy, should now be sown for the winter crop. Sow them in the first or second week of this month.

These plants, when sown early, are apt to run up for seed, before they are hardly fit for use. But those that are sown now will not run, and they will be in excellent order for the table by Michaelmas.

*Savoys and Cabbages.*

Transplant cabbage and savoy plants, for Michaelmas and winter use.



These may be planted between rows of early colliflowers, or between wide rows of garden beans, or French beans; that is, if there be no other ground at liberty.

But where there is ground to spare, and clear of other crops, it will be the best method to plant out these kind of plants, into an open spot by themselves.

Plant them in rows two feet asunder, and allow eighteen inches between plant and plant in the rows; and as soon as they are planted, give each a little water: let them be planted in moist weather.

Draw earth about the stems of early cabbages, and others; this is a very needful work, for it will strengthen the plants greatly, and will also bring them forward in their growth.

The earliest cabbages will, about the middle, or towards the latter end of the month, begin to turn their inner leaves for cabbaging; they may be greatly assisted and brought forward, by tying the leaves together.

Get some strong bafs, or some small withys, and go over the plants row by row, and let such as have begun to turn their leaves pretty much inward, be tyed.

In doing this, observe to gather the leaves of the plant up very regularly; and then, with the bafs, or withy, let them be tyed together; but do not tye them too strait, for that would occasion the plants to rot.

This will bring the plants to be fit for use, sooner by a fortnight, than what they would naturally be of themselves; and they will be much whiter and more tender to eat.

#### *Early Colliflowers.*

Look over early colliflowers often, about the middle or latter end of the month; some of the plants will then begin to shew flowers; and as soon as the flower appears, it should be screened from the sun and wet, for these would change the colour from a milk white to a yellow.

Therefore, as soon as ever a flower appears in the heart of the plant, let three or four of the largest of the inner leaves be broke down over it.

This will answer the double purpose of shading the flower from the sun, and defending it from wet. By this practice the flower will be preserved in its natural whiteness, and it will be close, firm, and beautiful.

## 204 THE KITCHEN GARDEN. [May

These plants should, in dry weather, be often watered ; for this will cause the heads, or flowers, to grow to a larger size.

But in doing this, you must form the earth hollow like a basin round each plant, to contain the water when given to them.

### *Transplanting Colliflowers.*

Transplant, if not done last month, the young colliflower plants raised this spring from seed.

For the reception of these young plants, let a piece of the richest ground be chosen, and spread thereon some good rotten dung, and then dig the ground one spade deep ; and as you go on let the dung be regularly buried.

The plants are to be set in this piece at two feet, or two feet and a half, each way, asunder ; and they must be watered as soon as they are planted.

There may be sown, if you choose it, on the same piece, between the colliflower plants, a crop of spinage.

### *Sowing Colliflower Seeds for a Michaelmas Crop.*

Sow colliflower seed : the plants that are raised from this sowing will come in for use at a time when they will be very acceptable in most families.

They will begin to produce their flowers in October, and will be in high perfection the greatest part of November, and sometimes longer.

This is what gardeners call the Michaelmas colliflowers.

Observe that this seed must not be sown before the last week in this month ; but it may be sown any day in that week.

Prepare, for this seed, a three feet wide bed of rich earth, in a free situation. Get some good plump seed of the last year's sowing ; sow this equally, moderately thick, and rake it carefully in.

It will be necessary to shade the bed every hot sunny day, from ten to three o'clock, till the plants appear, and are all fairly come up ; also sprinkle the bed often in dry weather with water.

### *Broccoli.*

Broccoli seeds, both of the purple and white kinds, must be sown this month, for the principal crop.



It will be advisable to sow a little of this seed at two different times this month. In order to have a proper supply, sow a little of both kinds some time between the first and seventh day; and let the second, or principal sowing, be some time between the fifteenth and twenty-fifth of the month.

The plants that are raised from the first sowing, will, if the winter proves any thing mild, not fail to yield their heads early in the spring; but the second sowing is principally for the general spring crop, and will produce fine heads in February, March, and beginning of April; and, after the heads are gone, provided they are not cut off too close, will yield abundance of excellent sprouts.

These seeds must be sown in a bed, or border, that is not fully exposed to the sun; sow each kind on a separate spot, and rake them in even. These seeds should not be sown under a wall, &c. for that situation would draw the plants up weak, and long shanked.

*To have Broccoli before Christmas.*

But let it be observed, that if you desire to have broccoli produce heads before Christmas, that is, in November and December, you must sow some seed of each kind in February, or the beginning, or, at latest, the middle of March.

*Bore-Cole.*

Sow bore-cole, or, otherwise, brown-cole, for spring use.

This is a useful plant, is of the cabbage tribe, and very well worth raising in every kitchen garden, for the service of a family. There are two sorts, the brown and the green.

These plants run up with very long stems, sometimes three, four, or five feet high, and are so very hardy that they will survive the most severe winters; and, in the months of February and March, their long stems will be loaded, from the very bottom to the top, with fine young sprouts; and these will boil and eat as tender as the best favoy.

The seed must be sown in the first week of the month: but if you desire to have the plants run up to a good height, the seed should be sown in the first or second week of April. Sow it in an open spot of good ground, and rake it in.

In

In dry weather, give the bed now and then a moderate watering.

The plants will be large enough to plant out, in about six weeks after the seed is sown.

#### *Savoy.*

Sow savoy seed for a latter crop; the true green savoy is the best sort to sow now, for it is the hardiest.

This seed may be sown any time in the month, and will come in very well for a crop; but to have a full crop of good stout plants, let the seed, if possible, be sown in the first or second week in the month; the plants will soon come up, and will be fit to transplant in the end of June, July, and beginning of August.

The plants raised from this sowing will be tolerably well cabbaged by December, and will continue good till March.

#### *Beans.*

Plant another crop of garden beans; the white blossom bean, and long-podded kinds, are very proper for this plantation.

But where a constant succession of young beans are desired all the summer season, there should be some seed put into the ground at three different times this month, allowing twelve days between each time.

The Windsor, and also the Sandwich bean, may, if required, still be planted, and will sometimes succeed tolerably well, provided they are planted any time between the first and fifteenth of the month.

#### *Management of Beans in Blossom.*

Now it will be proper to top such beans as are in bloom, to promote the free setting of the pods.

This should in the beginning of the month be particularly practised to the early crop, provided it was not done last month.

By this practice the pods will set sooner, and swell faster, and be better nourished, and come in almost a week sooner than if the plants were permitted to run; for having no top to nourish, their whole effort goes to that of the fruit.

But in doing the above work, observe to let the stems be first advanced to such a due height, as to have a sufficient quantity



quantity of pods; and the early mazagan bean may be topped when eighteen inches, or at most two feet high, and large sorts should be topped when about a yard, or at most three feet and a half high.

But with respect to small early beans, if you would have them come in as soon as possible, you should top them as soon as the blossom at the bottom of the stalks begin to open.

#### *Peas.*

Sow likewise more peas: to have a regular supply, let some be sown, at least, twice in this month; but where they are much wanted, three times will not be too often.

The best sorts to sow now, are the marrowfats, and also any of the hotspur kinds; and those that are sown any time in this month, will sometimes yield tolerable good crops.

This is now a proper time to sow any of the dwarf kinds of peas. These sorts seldom grow above two or three feet high, but are great bearers, and generally succeed well when sown at this season.

Let these dwarf kinds of peas be sown in drills two feet asunder, which will be room sufficient for them to grow.

Now let some earth be drawn up about the stems of the beans and peas which were sown in April, for this will strengthen the plants greatly.

The early hotspur peas now in blossom, may be topped, as directed for the beans; it will cause the pods to sett and swell more freely, and will be fit to gather sooner.

#### *Sticking Peas.*

Continue also to place sticks to rows of peas, according as the different sorts require it. Where this is intended, it should always be done when the plants are six or seven inches high, or thereabouts.

There is a great advantage in allowing sticks of a proper height, for the different sorts of peas to climb up upon; for those peas that have sticks, will yield above double the quantity of those that are permitted to run upon the ground.

The sticks for this purpose should be from five to seven feet high, according to the growth of the different sorts of peas; the sticks should also be well furnished with small branches

branches from within a little of the bottom to the top, that the plants may readily take hold without falling on the ground; and the sticks should be prepared fan-fashion, so as the side branches extend only the way of the rows.

They should be placed on the sunny side of the rows, that is, if the rows range east and west; then it is necessary to plant the sticks on the south side, for the sun will naturally incline the plants that way, and they will more readily catch the sticks; and the sticks should be placed at such distances as the branches of each other may meet.

#### *Endive.*

Sow endive for an early crop; where these plants are desired early, and in constant succession, it will be advisable to sow a little of this seed at two different times this month.

Let some be sown in the second week, and sow a little more in the last week of this month: that which is sown first, will not continue fit for use long, because it will be apt to run up to seed; but the second sowing will not run so soon, and the plants will come in for use at an agreeable time.

But the season for sowing the principal autumn and winter crops, is the middle, or towards the latter end of June, and the first and third weeks in July.

This seed should be sown in a spot of rich ground: it must not be sown very thick, and take good care to rake it in equally.

#### *Sowing Pot. Herbs, &c.*

Parsley seed may still be sown, where it has been omitted in the former months; but it will be proper to sow it now, where the sun has not great power.

Sow more purslane seed: this should be done in the beginning of the month, that there may be a due supply to succeed that which was sown in April.

This seed will now grow freely, in a bed of light rich earth, in the open ground. Let the earth be well broken with the spade, and rake the surface even; then draw shallow drills six inches asunder: Sow the seed in moderately thick, and cover it about a quarter of an inch, or thereabout, with earth; or you may sow it broad cast, and rake it in.

Where



Where coriander is constantly wanted, it will now be proper to sow a little more of that seed, for that which is sown early is apt to run; sow it in drills six or seven inches asunder.

Sow chervil, where wanted, it will still succeed; let this seed be also sown in shallow drills, and cover it lightly with earth.

The seeds of thyme, savory, and marjoram, or of any other sweet herbs, may also still be sown, but let this be done the beginning of the month, observing the same method of sowing as directed in March and April.

*Propagating Aromatic Plants by Cuttings and Slips.*

Propagate aromatic plants by slips or cuttings: most sorts of them will still succeed.

The sorts proper to plant now are, sage, savory, and hyssop; marjoram, mastich, and lavender; and the slips or cuttings of these sorts will now grow very freely.

Choose for this purpose such slips as have strength, and about five, six, or seven inches long: strip the leaves, if there be any, off at the bottom, and twist the stalk a little in that part; then plant them, putting each cutting about two thirds into the ground, and setting them five or six inches apart.

They must be planted in a shady situation; and in dry weather must be now and then moderately watered.

Plant also, where required, slips or cuttings of rosemary and rue, wormwood, and southernwood.

Let the cuttings, or slips of these plants, be six, or eight inches in length; and plant them six inches asunder, in a shady border, putting each cutting more than half way into the earth.

*Mint.*

Mint may also be planted now, where new beds are wanted; but this should be done in the first, or second week, of the month; for after that time, it will be difficult to procure proper plants.

The plants for this purpose must be drawn out of the old beds, taking such as are about six or seven inches long, and drawing them up carefully with roots to them.

They must be planted in a spot of rich ground, setting them in rows, six inches asunder: let the plants be four inches

inches from one another in the row, and give them some water to settle the earth well about their roots.

#### *Supporting Plants for Seed.*

Now support the stems, or stalks, of such plants as were planted for seed.

The onions and leeks, in particular, will now require this care; for the stalks of these plants will be run up to a good height; and if they are not secured in due time, the winds, and even heavy rains, will break them down.

The best method of supporting the stems of these plants is this: let some firm stakes be driven into the ground, on each side of every row of plants, placing the stakes about three yards asunder in the row; then let some long thin poles, or lines, be fastened from stake to stake; but poles, where they can be had, are much the best for this purpose.

Support likewise, the stems of cabbages, savoy, and broccoli, which are for seed.

For the support of these plants, provide some good stout stakes; let one or two be driven into the ground, close to every plant, and the principal stems be tyed securely to them.

#### *Sowing Radishes.*

Radish seed may still be sown where required; but must be often watered in dry weather, both before and after the plants are come up.

#### *Of Radishes for Seed.*

Transplant radishes for seed: this must be done when the roots are just in their prime; and some time between the first and fifteenth day of the month, is the proper time to do it.

Choose for this purpose such roots as are long, perfectly strait, and with short tops.

Having also some regard to the colour of the root, that is, if it is the common root or short topped radish: those that are of a clear pale red, are in most esteem, and particularly with the London gardeners, as they generally eat more crisp and milder than those of a dark red colour; and when intended to save seed of the salmon radish, although these be naturally of a pale red, yet to preserve the sorts, it will be proper to plant the palest coloured roots.

The



The principal reason why we direct radishes intended for seed, to be transplanted is, we can then readily judge of the goodness of the root, take only what are of the right sort, and reject such as are not.

Plant them in rows in an open spot; the rows must be two feet asunder, and the plants must be set eighteen inches from one another in the row; let them be well watered as soon as they are planted, to settle the earth properly about them.

*Prick out Celery.*

Prick out from the seed bed some of the celery plants which were sown in March.

Dig for them, towards the latter end of the month, a bed of light rich earth, about forty inches broad; then draw out of the seed-bed some of the best plants, prick them in there three inches asunder each way, give them some water, and shade them from the sun till they have taken root.

The plants are to remain in this bed a month or five weeks; by which time they will have gotten strength, and may then be transplanted into the trenches where they are to remain to blanch.

*Sowing Celery.*

Sow celery-seed for a latter crop; this should be done in the second week of the month.

Dig for this purpose, a small bed of rich light earth, and lay the surface perfectly level; then sow the seeds pretty thick, and rake them in as light as possible with a very even hand.

Shade the bed from the sun every day, from ten to three o'clock, till the plants appear; for this seed being very small, the full sun would, in a manner, quite burn it up.

Likewise, let the bed, in dry weather, be refreshed every other evening with a very moderate watering.

The plants from this sowing will be fit to plant out into trenches, in August and September; and to take up for the table after Christmas.

The cardoons which were sown in March, or beginning of last month, should now be thinned where they have risen too thick, that the plants may have room to grow and get strength by next month, when they should be transplanted where they are to be blanched.

These

These plants should now be thinned to about four or five inches distance; or, if you choose it, you may now prick the plants that distance on a nursery bed, to remain till next month.

*Destroying Weeds.*

Now let more than common care be taken to destroy weeds, among crops of every kind, and in every part throughout the ground.

There is no work in the kitchen garden that requires more attention now than this; for weeds are at no time more dangerous to crops than the present. It should, therefore, be made one of the principal works in this ground, to destroy them before they grow large.

For weeds, when permitted to grow to any bigness, not only exhaust the goodness of the ground, and ruin the present crops, but are also a very disagreeable sight, and require more than double labour to clear the ground of them.

But, in particular, let the crops of onions, leeks, carrots, parsneps, lettuce, and all other small crops that grow pretty close, be timely cleaned from weeds.

That is, let the weeds be cleared away before they begin to spread, or over-top the plants; which they would soon do, when once they begin to run; and in that case would do much damage to the crops.

Besides, when weeds are suffered to grow large, among any small crops, so as to mix and entangle with one another, and with the plants, it renders the work of weeding them extremely tedious, and very troublesome to perform.

But when weeds appear between rows of pease, beans, and kidney-beans, cabbages and colliflowers, and such other crops as stand distant, there can be nothing more easy than to stop their progress, because there is room between the plants to admit a large hoe; and with such an instrument a person may go over a large piece of ground in a little time; therefore, he that would suffer weeds to grow among such crops, would be much to blame.



## The Fruit Garden.

*Wall-Trees.*

**W**ALL-TREES will now, in general, make strong and numerous shoots; and they should now be regulated, and trained the right way, before they grow into confusion.

Apricots, peaches, and nectarines, in particular, demand this care now; and also plum and cherry-trees.

Let all these trees, if possible, be looked over some time this month, and cleared from all such shoots as are useless, and ill-placed; at the same time let all the well-placed useful shoots be trained in close and regular to the wall.

All the luxuriant shoots are useless; that is, such as are remarkably more vigorous, and rambling in their growth, than the rest; and these, wherever they appear, should now be rubbed off close.

Likewise all foreright shoots must be displaced; these are such as are produced from the front of the branches, in a foreright direction; and by their being so situated, cannot be properly trained in, therefore become useless, and must now be cleared away.

And at the same time observing, that even when good shoots are much too numerous, or if there be any shoot arising in any part of the tree where it is plain, they are absolutely not wanted, or cannot be converted to use if left till the winter pruning, such, though good in themselves, as they cannot be, with propriety, trained in, are useless, so should be displaced; and by clearing the tree of unnecessary young shoots, the fruit will be better nourished.

But observing that all side shoots that are of a kind and moderate growth, and which are well situated for laying in, must be left, and trained in close to the wall in regular order.

Observe, in particular, to leave as many of the well-placed shoots of apricots, peaches, nectarines, and morella cherry-trees, as can be conveniently laid in; for these trees principally produce their fruit upon the one year old shoots; that is, the shoots that are produced this summer, bear fruit next year.

There-

Therefore, it is much the best way to leave at this season, a sufficient quantity of the well situated and kindly growing shoots, that there may be enough to choose from in the winter pruning.

Likewise observe, that all these shoots, when about eight, ten, or twelve inches long, must be nailed up close, as regular as possible to the wall, and each at full length: they must not, on any consideration, be shortened at any time of the summer, for that would prove of worse consequence than what may be generally thought.

For were these shoots to be shortened now, it would cause them to produce from their sides a number of small useless shoots, one almost from each eye; these would certainly weaken, and otherwise hurt the principal shoots from whence they proceed; and would also occasion so full a shade, that it would be impossible for the sun and air to have due access to the fruit, to promote the growth of it in a regular manner.

A slight shade is absolutely necessary to promote the growth of all kinds of wall fruit; but too much is altogether destructive, and contrary to the original intent of having wall-trees.

But with regard to shorten the young shoots of these trees at this time, it may, in some cases, be practised to particular shoots; for instance, if your tree be young, and that you want to furnish it with wood, or that there be any vacant space in old trees, you may, in either case, shorten one or more of the strongest of the neighbouring shoots, contiguous to the place where wood is wanted, shortening them to three or four eyes, and they will soon after prick again, and, perhaps, a shoot from each remaining eye or bud.

#### *Apples, &c.*

Apple, pear, plum, and cherry-trees, either against walls or espaliers, should also be looked over some time towards the end of this month: for these trees should also be divested of all useless and ill growing shoots.

Let all such shoots as are produced foreright, be taken off close; and all such shoots as rise in parts of the trees, where not wanted, and such as cannot be readily trained in should also be taken away; and the sooner this is done now the better.

But



But observe to leave, in different parts of the trees, some of the best placed and moderate growing side shoots, but particularly in such places where wood is apparently wanted; but leave rather more than what may appear just necessary; for it is best to leave enough of good shoots at this time, to choose from in the winter pruning, and what is not then wanted, can be easily cut away.

The shoots which are left, must also, when of due length, be trained in close to the wall, or espalier; and each shoot must be laid in at its length, as before said.

But it will be proper, where there is any vacant part in these trees, to let some of the adjoining young shoots be now shortened to three or four eyes, and this will cause them to put out some side or lateral shoots the same season, to supply the vacant parts.

*Thin Apricots, &c.*

Thin apricots, and also peaches and nectarines, where they are set too thick upon the trees.

These trees, in favourable seasons, will sometimes set three times more fruit than their roots are capable of supplying with nourishment; and if the whole, or too many of them were to be left, they would starve one another, and the fruit, in general, be small and ill flavoured.

Besides, where there is too great a quantity of these sorts of fruit, to remain upon the trees, the ill consequence does not terminate altogether in the badness of the fruit that year, but it extends to two or three years to come; for the too great quantity of fruit would draw the whole nourishment for themselves; insomuch that the trees would not be able to produce shoots capable of bearing fruit next year; and it would also exhaust the trees so much, that they could not regain strength, to produce any good wood before the second year after; and it would be the third before a tolerable crop could be expected.

Therefore, where these fruit are produced too thick upon the trees, let them now be reduced to a moderate quantity on each tree; and the sooner this is done, the better it will be for the trees, and also for the fruit that is to remain upon them.

This thinning should be performed in a very careful manner, looking over the branches regularly, one by one; and before you take any off, single out on each branch, the fruit that is proper to leave.

The

The most promising and best shaped fruit must be left, having some regard also to those that are best situated on the branches.

Each-kind, according to its size, must be left at such distances, that every one may have sufficient room to swell, and grow freely to its full bigness every way, without touching another.

All the common kinds of apricots, and the common, or middle-sized peaches, and nectarines, should each be allowed much the same room to grow; and the same number of each kind should be left on the different branches, according to their strength.

For instance, suppose a tree to be in pretty good condition for strength, and allowing the bearing shoots or branches to be of three different sizes; that is, the strong, middling, and weakly; the number of fruit to be left upon each of these branches is this:

Upon the stronger shoots, or branches, there may be left three of the fairest and best placed fruit; upon the middling shoots no more than two; and only one upon each of the weaker branches.

Remember, that if there be few or many upon the trees, to leave no two, or more of these sizes, nearer together than within five or six inches.

Where the above distances, and the quantity of fruit mentioned to be left upon the different branches, are observed in thinning the trees, they will certainly bring each kind to its fullest perfection. At the same time the trees will shoot freely, and produce a sufficient quantity of good wood to bear fruit next year.

This should be the method of thinning the common sizes of these kinds of fruit; but the small kind may be left closer, and a greater number of each kind may be left upon the different branches.

For instance, the early masculine apricots, the nutmeg peaches, and early nutmeg nectarines, are the earliest, and by far the smallest of their kinds.

There may be left upon each of the strong shoots, about four or five of these apricots; and on a middle sized shoot, three; and on the weaker shoots or branches, there may be left two upon each of them, but not more.

*Destroying Snails.*

Snails will often make great havock among the choice kinds of wall-fruit, where they are not interrupted: they



particularly frequent the apricots, nectarines, and peach-trees, and will do mischief to these kinds of fruit, if not prevented.

These trees should be often looked over early in a morning, and in an evening; at which times these creeping vermin come forth from their holes, to feed upon the fruit, and may then be readily taken and destroyed.

#### *Cleaning the Fruit-Tree Borders.*

The borders where wall and espalier trees grow, should be kept remarkably clear from weeds; for these not only appear disagreeable and exhaust the nourishment, but they would promote slugs, and such like creeping insects, to the detriment of the fruit.

Therefore, when weeds at any time appear in these parts, let them be nipped in the bud; a sharp hoe, applied to them in a dry sunny day, will soon stop their progress.

#### *Insects hurtful to Fruit-Trees.*

Where small insects annoy any of the wall trees, let some means be used to destroy them, before they increase, and spread themselves too far, for they would do considerable mischief to the trees and fruit.

When once these destructive little creatures attack but one single branch of a tree, they would, in a very short time, over-run the whole, if not stopped, and would spoil the young shoots, and destroy the leaves at a surprising rate; and when once the leaves of a tree are gone, there is but little good to be expected from the fruit that year.

Therefore, as soon as insects appear upon any part of the trees, endeavour, as much as possible, to destroy them; and the only method is this:

First pull off all the worst leaves that are infested with them; that is, such as are shrivelled, or much curled up; then strew some tobacco dust over all the branches and leaves: let this remain on the trees two or three days; then you may wash it off, by giving the trees a hearty watering all over their branches; but if it is suffered to remain, it will do the trees no harm.

Let the trees, after this, be frequently watered in dry weather, all over their branches; for this will do a great deal, in destroying and preventing the insects from breeding.

None but those that have experienced, can tell the service that wall-trees in general receive from being watered all over their branches, in dry, hot weather; but experience has shewn that it is of the utmost benefit to all; but in particular, to apricot, peach, and nectarine trees.

But, above all, do not fail to water the branches of such trees as shoot weakly, or are infested with insects.

*Engine for watering the Branches of Trees.*

For the purpose of watering the branches of the above wall-trees, there is nothing so useful and convenient, as a small hand engine.

By the help of this small engine, a person may stand on the walks, and with great ease and expedition, throw the water against any part of the trees, from the bottom to the top of the wall, even if the wall is fifteen or twenty feet high; and it is by far the easiest, readiest, and most expeditious way of watering the branches of these trees.

This is also an effectual way of watering them; for the engine will throw the water with some force against the trees, so as to effectually clear the leaves and branches from dust, cobwebs, and from any sort of filth they may have at any time contracted; and if the waterings are repeated now and then, in very dry weather, no insects can breed upon the trees.

Where insects do now, or at any time appear, and if it be dry weather, let the trees be well dashed with water from the said engine once every day for a week: it will greatly diminish their numbers, if not totally destroy them; provided it be done before the insects have spread too far.

This engine may also be used occasionally, in watering, in dry weather, the branches of espalier trees, and young or old standard trees, where any of the branches are at any time attacked by insects of any sort.

These engines are both useful and cheap. The best are those made of tin, and may be bought at any of the tin-shops, for about six, eight or ten shillings, according to the size.

The way to use them is, to place the bottom part in a large pail, or in a tub, which should be filled with water; so the pump or engine is to be held with one hand, and worked with the other.



*Watering new-planted Trees.*

New planted trees, both standards and dwarfs, against walls or espaliers, must be duly supplied with moisture about their roots, in very dry weather.

They should be well watered, at least, once in a week, which will be sufficient, provided there be mulch laid on the surface over their roots; but where no mulch, or the like, is laid on the ground, let them be watered moderately twice in a week, in very dry weather.

It will be of vast service also, to water the branches of the new planted trees, now and then, in dry weather.

*Vines.*

Vines now shoot vigorously, and they will produce, besides bearing, and other useful shoots, numbers that are altogether useless, which must now be all cleared away, and the sooner the better.

It is not every summer that is favourable to the ripening of grapes; but it is in every one's power to give them great assistance, by a right ordering of the vines at this early time; and where this work is executed in a timely and proper manner, the bunches of these fruit may be brought to be large and handsome, and much sooner and better ripened, than what is commonly done.

To do this, the vines must now be perfectly well cleared from all sorts of useless shoots; and at the same time, all the fruit bearing, and other well-placed useful shoots, should be nailed up regularly and close to the wall.

This work should be done before the shoots begin to entangle, or any way interfere with each other; for there is a great deal of advantage attends this early dressing, and regulating the vines; and there is no other way to bring the bunches of these fruit to any degree of perfection, but by timely nailing in the useful shoots, and clearing the vines of all such as are useless.

All the bearing shoots, that is, such as have fruit upon them now, must be left; and such other shoots as have strength, and are very well situated for training in, for the purpose of bearing the next year, must also be left in places where they are apparently wanted, and can possibly be trained in.

But all weak straggling shoots, such as rise immediately from the old wood, are useless, and must now be cleared away, wherever they are produced; and even strong shoots

that are destitute of fruit, and rise in places where they are evidently not wanted, or are not well placed for training in for the service of next year, should be displaced.

When this is done, let all the bearing shoots, and all others that are useful, and left in right places, be nailed up close to the wall, in regular order; and do not stop any of the shoots now, but let each be trained up at its full length, for the present.

The shoots must not be nailed up promiscuously, across each other, as often practised; but let every shoot be laid in strait, and clear of another, in a regular manner, so that each shoot, and every branch of fruit, may equally enjoy the advantage of the sun and free air.

After this, observe that all shoots that rise in any part of the vines, must be constantly rubbed off according as they are produced; and by no means suffer those small shoots to remain, which commonly rise from the sides of the same summer's shoots that are now laid in; but let these be duly rubbed off as soon as they begin to advance.

#### *Vineyards.*

The vines in the vineyard, should also be gone over now; and this should be done some time between the middle, and the last day of the month.

All the shoots that have fruit upon them, and others that are strong and well placed, for the service of another year, must now be trained up close and regular to the stakes.

At the same time, let the vines be cleared from all useless wood; that is, all small dangling shoots must be cleared away, in every part where they appear; likewise all such shoots as are barren of fruit, and are produced in places where they cannot be properly trained in for the next year's use, must be also rubbed off close.

See that the stakes are all firm in their places; and then let all the fruitful shoots, and others that are useful and well situated, be neatly and securely fastened to them.

Let the shoots, in general, be trained up in a regular manner, so that each may receive an equal and proper benefit of sun and air, both of which are absolutely necessary to promote the growth of the fruit, and also to strengthen the shoots which are for next year's service.

The vines, after this, must be constantly cleared from all shoots that are afterwards produced; and this should be duly practised, as often as new shoots any where appear;



pear; for if these were permitted to remain, they would not only shade the fruit a great deal too much, but would also rob them, and the principal shoots, of some part of their nourishment.

There is another very material thing to be considered now in the management of the vineyard, and that is, to keep the ground between the rows of vines perfectly clear from weeds.

This should be particularly observed during the summer season; for it is a great advantage to the growth, and timely ripening of the fruit, to keep the surface of the ground about the vines always clean; and where that is not duly observed, the grapes will never attain perfection, either as to size or flavour.

For weeds, were they permitted to grow to any considerable size, near the vines, would not only rob the plants of some nourishment, but would occasion such continual chilly dampness on the surface of the ground, and in the air, just about the vines, that would very much retard the growth of the fruit, and not one bunch in ten would ripen perfectly.

Therefore, as soon as weeds begin to advance, let a hoe be applied to them, in a dry day; and where a Dutch hoe can be used, that instrument will make clean and expeditious work with the weeds.

#### *Strawberry Plants in Blossom.*

The strawberry plants will be in full blossom this month; therefore, if the weather should prove very dry, the beds should be often watered to encourage the fruit to set.

During the time these plants are in blossom, the beds should be watered in dry weather, about thrice a week; and they should have such a watering at each time as will reach to the roots of the plants.

This is a very needful work in dry weather, and it should not be omitted, otherwise there will be but a very scanty crop of strawberries, and these will be small and not well relished.

#### *Examine new grafted Trees.*

Examine the trees of all sorts, that were grafted this spring; when the graft and the stock are well united, there is no farther occasion for the clay, nor yet for the bandage.

This is generally well effected by the middle of the month; but some time between the twentieth and last day of the month, let the clay be taken off, and at the same time let the bandages be untied.

*New budded Trees.*

Look also to new budded trees; that is, let the trees which were budded last summer, be now often looked over, and take off all shoots that rise from the stock, besides the bud.

This should be constantly practised as often as any shoots appear, and let them be rubbed off quite close; then the stocks having nothing to supply but the bud, it will certainly shoot more vigorously.

**The Pleasure, or Flower Garden.**

*Hyacinths, Tulips, &c.*

**C**ONTINUE to defend the beds of curious hyacinths and tulips from the full sun; and also the choice kinds of ranunculuses and anemonies, which are now in bloom.

Having, for the defence of these flowers, fixed tall hoops a-cross the beds, the former month, let the mats or canvas be always ready for drawing over them when there is occasion to shelter the plants.

The mats should be drawn over every day, when the sun shines, about nine or ten in the morning; and should be taken off about four or five in the afternoon. The mats must also be drawn over the hoops, to defend the flowers from heavy showers of rain, when such at any time happen.

Where this shading and sheltering these kinds of flowers is duly practised, it will preserve them a long time in their fullest beauty, at least, a fortnight or three weeks longer than if they were to be fully exposed; and they will also be much finer.

Mind that the hoops which are fixed a-cross the beds for the support of the mats, be not too low, for that would draw the flower stalks up weak, and render the colours of the flowers very faint.



The best way to preserve the bloom of these plants, without weakening them, is this: but it should have been done in the beginning of April.

On each side of the bed, let some stout stakes be fixed upright in the ground, at twenty inches, or two foot distance from one another, and let each stake be three feet high; to these let hoops be fixed cross the bed; the coverings of mats or canvas are to be drawn over them occasionally, and there will be air sufficient to preserve the flowers strong, and their colours lively.

Some persons who are very curious, erect an awning, or shade, of hoops and mats over these flowers, high enough to walk under, taking care that the mats come low enough on the sides, to keep the sun from darting upon the bloom.

The beds of fine tulips and hyacinths, in particular, should have such a frame as this constructed over them: the work is soon and easily done, and the expence of the materials is but trifling, were they to be bought; and no pains should be spared to preserve the beauty of the choicest kinds of these flowers.

*Hyacinths past flowering.*

When hyacinths are past flowering, and the leaves just beginning to decay, let the roots then be taken up; but in particular the fine double kinds.

As soon as these roots are taken up, they should be immediately committed to the ground again, but not in the manner of planting as before, but must be laid sideways into a bed of light earth, covering the roots, but leaving the stalks and leaves out of the ground.

The roots are to be in this bed about three weeks, which is the method recommended by florists, in order that the great moisture, with which these roots are very replete, may be dried up by the warmth of the sun, which would otherwise be apt to rot them; likewise by lying the above time in this bed, the roots plump and harden, which will be well effected by that time the stalks and leaves are perfectly decayed.

The method of preparing the bed, and laying in the roots, is this:

Let a bed wherein the hyacinth grew, or any other bed of light earth, be broken up, one spade deep, breaking all clods perfectly well; then rake the earth up, from each

side of the bed, towards the middle, so as to form an easy rounding kind of ridge, lengthway of the bed.

In this ridge of earth the roots are to be laid; observing, that they are not now to be placed with their bottom downwards, but each must be laid fairly on its side, with the stalks and leaves hanging out.

In that position, let them be laid in two or three rows on each side the ridge, placing the roots about two inches asunder in the row, and see that all the roots be equally covered with the earth.

When the roots have lain in this bed about twenty or twenty-five days, they will be thoroughly hardened and ripened, and must then be taken out of the ground in a dry day, and well cleaned; then spread upon a mat, in a dry shady place, and in ten or twelve days after, put up into boxes till September, or October; then planted again.

*Tulips done blowing.*

When tulips are past flowering, let the seed-pod be immediately separated from the top of the flower-stalk; for the fine kinds of tulips should never be permitted to ripen seeds, for these would draw nourishment and exhaust the root.

When the leaves and stalks of tulips begin to wither and decay, the roots should then be taken up.

Some of the early blowing kinds, will be ready for this by the last week in the month; if they be, let them be taken up in a dry day, and clean them well, and take off all the loose outer skins.

Then spread the roots on a mat, in a dry shady place, to harden a little; and after this, let them be put up in bags or boxes, till the season for planting them.

*Spring Crocus and other Bulbs done blowing.*

Spring crocus roots of all sorts, and snow-drops, and all other such like bulbs as are done blowing, should also be taken up, when their leaves decay.

This should be constantly practised, if you desire to have the several kinds of bulbs produce large and handsome flowers; for when the roots are taken up, all the small roots, or off-sets, are to be immediately separated from the principal ones, and reserve only the largest roots, by themselves, to plant again in the proper places, to blow next year.

But



But, however, the crocus and snow-drops, and the like common kinds of bulbs, may, if you please, remain two or three years in the ground; but you should not omit taking them up the third season, because they will then be grown into large clusters; and, if permitted to remain longer in that condition, their flowers would be small and of little worth.

The roots must be properly dried in the shade, and afterwards put up till planting time, which is September, October, and November.

#### *Autumn Flowering Bulbs.*

The leaves of such bulbs as blow in autumn, will, about the latter end of this month, be decayed; which, when it is intended to take up or transplant any of the sorts, is the only proper time to remove them, and which may be done any time from about the end of May to the same time in June, as the roots then do not grow, or draw nourishment from the ground. It is necessary that these roots be taken up every two or three years at least, to separate the off-sets from the main bulbs; and by these off-sets you gain an increase of roots, some of which will flower the following autumn, and most of these the next year, and by divesting the main root of the off-set, it will consequently flower much stronger.

The colchicums, and autumnal crocus, will be in a condition for the above practice, that is, for removing or transplanting, by the end of the month, at farthest; and also the yellow autumnal narcissus, and such other autumnal flowering bulbs, whose leaves now begin to decay.

They must be taken up in dry weather, and the small off-sets carefully separated from the main root; and they may then either be planted again immediately, or may be spread upon a mat, out of the sun, to dry: they are then to be put up till the last week in July, or the first week in August; but then planted again.

#### *Reasons for taking up bulbous Roots after flowering.*

By this method of taking the choicest bulbous roots of any kind out of the ground, as soon as the leaves decay, it prevents them receiving any damage, either by drought, or the vehement heat of the sun, or by too much moisture, which sometimes is apt to rot some of the roots, but particularly the hyacinth; and it also prevents the roots from

exhausting themselves too much ; which many sorts would do, were they permitted to remain, but especially if it should prove a wet summer ; because they would soon put out new fibres, and the roots would all set to growing at an unseasonable time.

Besides, it is necessary to take up all kinds of curious bulbous roots once every year, in order to separate the small off-sets from each of the principal roots, particularly tulips and hyacinths ; but as for narcissuses, jonquils, iris's, and all other of the like kinds of bulbs, may remain two or even three years without removal ; but it will, however, be proper to take up every sort once in the above time, and there is no time so proper to take them up, as when the leaves and flower stalks of the different kinds begin to decay ; for then the roots are in a state of rest ; but, if permitted to remain three weeks or a month after that period, they would put out fresh fibres, and the roots would begin to form the bud for the next year's bloom ; and, if they were then to be taken up, would, in some measure, check the next year's flower : that is, it would not blow so large as if the next were taken up immediately on the decay of the leaves.

#### *Carnations.*

Carnation plants in pots should, at this time, have all the assistance of art, to encourage them to shoot with vigour.

The stalks now advance apace for flowering, and sticks should be placed for their support, provided it was not done before. Let the sticks be strait, and long enough, and thrust them down as close as can be to the plant ; then let the flower-stalk be tyed neatly to them, in different parts.

Clear the plants also from decayed leaves, if there be any ; and stir the surface of the mould a little : this done, add a sprinkling of fine fresh earth over it, bringing it close up about the plants, and immediately give the whole a moderate watering.

Observe that, in order to have large and handsome flowers, all pods which rise from the side of the stalks, should now be taken off, leaving none but the top buds ; this is the method practised by florists.

The pots should now be placed where the mid-day sun does not come ; and, in dry weather, must be watered once in two days.

*Management*



*Management of tender Annuals.*

The cocks-combs, tricolors, balsams, globes, egg-plants, and other curious annuals, must now be removed, once more, into another new hot bed.

This is principally to be understood of such of these kinds of plants as are intended to be drawn to a large size; and in that case they will now need the assistance of one more hot-bed, and the second or third week in the month is the time to make it.

This bed should be made almost all within the ground. Dig for this purpose, a trench the breadth and length of the frame that is intended to be placed on the bed, and let the trench be dug out eighteen inches deep.

Fill this trench with well-prepared hot dung, shaking it in regularly, and beat it well down with the fork, and let the dung be raised six inches higher than the level ground, so that the bed, from the bottom to the top, will be two feet thick of dung.

As soon as the bed is made, set on the frame and glasses, which will bring up the heat soon, and the bed will be ready to receive the plants, in five or six days after it is made.

The plants must now, in general, be potted before they are set into this bed. The pots for this purpose must be about the middle size, and the plants must be placed in them, when the bed is just in right order to receive them.

Having the pots and some fresh earth ready, let as much of the earth be put into each pot, as will cover the bottom about three or four inches; then take up the plants, each with a ball of earth about its roots, and place one plant with its ball intire, in the middle of each pot, and fill up the vacancy with the fresh earth, within half an inch of the top of the pot, and let them be moderately watered.

Place the pots immediately upon the hot-bed, as close together as can be. Observe that the cavities between the pots, be perfectly well-filled up with earth; and this should be done according as the pots are placed upon the beds, bringing the earth up to the rims of them.

When the pots are all in, put on the glasses, observing to tilt them up a little at the back of the frame, every day, to let in fresh air to the plants.

The plants must be shaded, occasionally, from the sun, for the first week or ten days; let mats be spread over the glasses, the first three or four days, about eight or nine o'clock in the morning, and taken off about four in the afternoon; but after this, let the plants have more and more sun, every day, till they are able to bear it fully.

Be sure to admit air every day to the plants, and particularly when there is a good heat, and when there is much steam; for if this is not observed, the steam will destroy the leaves of the plants, and would in that case make an aukward and unsightly appearance.

They must be duly supplied with water, during the time they are in this bed; and they should have a moderate quantity given them, at least, once in two days.

Observe, as the plants advance in height, to raise the frame, to give them full room to grow: this should be done in the manner as mentioned in the former month.

But where there is the conveniency of a drawing frame, such as mentioned last month, it should now be placed over this bed, and managed in the manner there directed.

But where there is no such convenience, let one of the common frames be used, according to the following method.

Fix at each corner of the bed, an upright post, about four feet high; and on the inside of each post, let some augur-holes be bored, allowing six inches between hole and hole.

Then provide four iron, or wooden pins, one for each post, and fit for the said holes.

Then, when the frame wants to be raised, let the pins be fixed in the post at a convenient height, and set the frame upon the pins. When the frame wants raising again, fix the pins a hole higher, and so proceed as the plants rise in height.

Mind to close up the vacancy at bottom, at each time of advancing the frame; this may be very easily done, by nailing some good thick mats round the outside of the frame.

These are the methods commonly practised for drawing these kinds of plants, where there is not the conveniency of a glass case; and if they are well managed this way, they may be brought to a very handsome size.

*Glass*



*Glass Cases for drawing Annuals.*

But where there is the conveniency of a glass-case, the plants may still be brought to greater perfection.

The glass cases for this purpose, are generally made about six, seven, or eight feet broad, and as long as may be convenient; the height must be five or six feet in front, and seven or eight in the back.

The front must be glass, perfectly upright, and face the south; the back may be either of wood or brick, and both ends may be of the same materials; but would be better if glazed; and the top must also be of glass.

Within this the hot-bed is to be made, but there should be a pit dug to make it in. Let the pit be dug eighteen inches deep; this is to be filled with hot-dung, or bark, carrying it up six inches higher than the surface of the floor.

The pots are to be placed upon this, plunging them to their rims in earth, as before mentioned; but if the bed be made of tan, plunge them therein, having no occasion for earth upon such beds, to plunge pots in.

*Prick out curious Annuals which were sown last Month.*

Where any of the above curious annual plants, such as combs, tricolars, &c. were sown last month, they should now be pricked out.

They must be pricked out on a hot-bed, observing the method directed in the two former months.

*Hardier Annual Flower Plants.*

Plant out the hardier kinds of annuals into the natural ground; this may be done at any time after the twelfth or fifteenth day of the month.

Those which were pricked out last month on a slight hot-bed as there directed, will be arrived to a good size for planting out towards the latter end of the month.

The African and French marigold, and chrysanthemums, are of these kind; also the marvel of Peru, China aster, Indian pink, ten-week stock, and the common kinds of balsams, capsicums, and mignonette; likewise periscarias, and the tree and purple amaranthuses; scabiuses, egg-plant, and love-apples.

All these may now be planted out in the beds, borders, and other parts of the pleasure garden, and they will make an agreeable appearance in two months time.

Let

Let them be planted out in a showery, or moist time; and in an evening, after four or five o'clock, is the best time of the day to plant them. Be sure not to remove them in dry hot weather; for if that was done, not one plant in ten would succeed.

Take particular care in planting them, to mix the different sorts in a proper manner, so that there may be a variety of flowers in every part; and as soon as they are planted, let them all be moderately watered.

If the weather proves dry, the waterings must be repeated, at least, once every other evening, till the plants have taken root.

But where those annuals of the above kinds were not pricked out last month on a hot-bed, or else where, it will now, when time will permit, be the best method, before you plant them out for good in the borders, to prick them first out from the seed-bed, into a nursery-bed of rich earth, in the common ground, there to remain for a month to get strength, and then to be planted out for good in the borders.

The beds for the purpose should be about forty inches broad; rake the surface smooth, and put in the plants about four or five inches distant each way, and water them.

Then it would be a great advantage to place a few hoops across the beds, and let mats be drawn over them occasionally, to shade the plants from the sun, till they are rooted; and the mats may also be used in cold nights, to shelter the plants.

There is a great deal of advantage in pricking these plants out in this manner from the seed-bed, because they can be very conveniently watered and shaded from the scorching sun till they have taken good root and strength, and can be also occasionally sheltered in cold nights, till they are strong, and hardened by degrees, to bear the open air fully, night and day.

They will have acquired that hardiness and strength, in about four weeks after they are pricked out: the plants must then be taken up with small balls of earth, which will readily hang about their roots, and planted carefully, with the balls intire, into the places where they are to remain.



*Sow Ten-Week Stock, &c.*

The seed of ten-week stocks, China aster, and Indian pink, may still be sown. You may also, where omitted in the two former months, still sow the seeds of African and French marigold, balsams, and chrysanthemums; but this should be done the first or second week in the month.

These seeds may now be sown in a small bed of rich light earth, in the natural ground; and, if often refreshed with water in dry weather, and sheltered with mats in cold nights, the plants will come up soon, and will grow freely. But if sown in a slight hot-bed, it will bring the plants on so, as they will flower a fortnight or three weeks sooner.

The plants from this sowing will be fit to plant out next month, and will come into flower in August, and continue till the cold weather destroys them.

*Sow Seeds of hardy Annuals.*

Sow the seed of hardy annual flowers in the borders; there are several sorts that will still succeed.

These are lupines, sweet sultan, and flos adonis, the white and purple candy tuft; lobels, catchfly, and dwarf lychnis; dwarf poppy, and Virginia stock; venus navelwort, and venus looking-glass; snails and caterpillars; the seeds of dwarf annual sun-flower; lavatera and oriental mallow, may also be sown now; likewise nasturtiums, and convolvulus major and minor, and tangier and sweet-scented peas.

All these must be sown in small patches, in the borders, and other places where you would have them flower; for none of these sorts succeed by transplanting.

Let the small patches, where they are sown, be often sprinkled with water in dry weather; and where this is duly performed, the plants will come up strong, and will produce their flowers in July, August, and September.

The climbing kinds of these plants must have sticks placed for them to climb up upon, when they begin to run.

The sorts which require this are, nasturtiums, and convolvulus major, and the sweet-scented and Tangier peas, and the like sorts.

*Auriculars.*

Take good care of the auricular plants in pots, when they are past flowering.

Let the pots, according as the flowers fade, be immediately removed off the stand, or stage, and place them upon a clean level spot, where the plants can enjoy the morning sun freely, till nine or ten o'clock, but not longer; there let them remain till the latter end of August.

Keep the pots, and the ground where they stand, perfectly clear from weeds; and where decayed leaves at any time appear on the plants, let them be immediately taken off; and, in dry weather, refresh the pots often with water.

Remove the boxes, or tubs of seedling auriculars and polyanthus, to a shady place, provided it was not done before; the place must be open to the morning sun only.

They must be often sprinkled with water in dry weather, and kept very free from weeds.

#### *Care of Seedling Bulbs.*

The seedling tulips and narcissus, and other seedling bulbs, should also be screened from the mid-day sun.

#### *Propagate Double Scarlet Lychnis, &c.*

Now propagate perennial fibrous rooted plants, by cuttings of the young flower-stalks.

The double scarlet lychnis, and several other such like plants, will grow freely this way; and some time in the last fortnight of this month is a proper time to plant them; and the method is this:

Let some of the young flower-stalks be cut off close, and divide them into proper lengths; each length must have three or four joints: and they are to be planted in a shady border of rich light earth.

They must be planted about four inches asunder; and two joints of the cutting is to be put into the ground, and the rest left out. Close the earth well about them, and then let the whole have a moderate watering.

There are several other sorts of the fibrous rooted perennial plants, that may be increased by this method; such as lychnidea, double rockets, and the late flowering asters, or starwort, and many others.

#### *Double Wall-Flowers.*

Propagate double wall-flowers by slips; this is the only way to increase the true double bloody kinds.

Choose such slips as have some strength, and from about three to four, five, or six inches long, and let these be slipped off carefully from the mother plant, in a moist or cloudy day; taking them off close to the place from whence they proceed.



Take off the leaves at the bottom of the slips, rather more than half way up, so that there may be two, three, or four inches of a clear stalk, according to the length of the slip. Twist the stalks a little at bottom, and then plant them.

They are to be planted in a shady border, about four or five inches asunder, and put them into the earth up to the leaves, and give them some water.

Do not forget to refresh them often, in dry weather, with moderate waterings, and they will be well rooted by the end of September, when they may be taken up and planted in pots, in order to be moved into shelter in time of severe frosts in winter.

The wall-flowers which were raised last year from seed, will be now in flower, and some of them will probably be double shoots; it sometimes happens when the seed has been saved from the flower, that one plant in ten, or perhaps twenty or thirty, or thereabouts, will come so, and at other times not one in a hundred, and sometimes in five hundred, will come double.

Therefore, where double flowers of a deep blood colour offer among the seeding plants, now is the time to propagate that sort, by taking off as many slips as you can from it, preparing and planting them as above directed.

For the greater chance of having double wall flowers from seed, you should be careful to save the seed, if possible, from such single flowers as are situated near double ones; and if any of those single ones as have five petals or flower leaves, they are to be preferred as the best from which to save seed.

The beginning of this month is still a proper time to sow wall-flower seed.

#### *Tuberoses.*

Plant some tuberosé roots to blow in autumn.

Get some small pots, and fill them with light earth; plant one root in each pot; then place the pots upon a hot-bed, plunging them in the earth to their rims.

Keep the glasses over them, but raise them behind every day, to let out the steam.

Give very little water till the roots begin to push, then let them be moderately watered, about three times a week; and at the same time let the glasses be tilted a good height at the back of the frame, to admit a considerable deal of free air also to them; for this is necessary to strengthen the flower-stalks, as they rise in height.

Observe when the plants have risen near the glass, to raise the frame, as directed for the curious annuals, that they may have room to shoot without being drawn up weak.

Where there is a conveniency of a hot-house, or stove, these plants may be brought to very great perfection there, with very little trouble.

The roots are to be planted in pots as above; and the pots are to be plunged to their rims in the bark-bed, watering them as abovementioned.

#### *Transplant Perennial Flower Plants.*

Transplant the perennial and biennial flower plants which were sowed in March; they will be grown to a proper size to remove by the third or fourth week of the month.

The wall-flowers, in particular, and stock July-flowers, will be ready to transplant by that time; and also columbines, and sweet-williams, single scarlet lychnis, rose-campion, and catch-fly, and the pyramidal campanulas, or Canterbury-bells, and Greek-valerian, with the tree primrose, fox-gloves, French honey-suckles, and holly-hocks, and such other sorts as were sown early in the spring.

They must all be planted now into nursery-beds, where they must remain to get strength, before they are planted out for good.

Dig for this purpose, a spot of good clean ground, and divide it into beds, three feet and a half broad, and rake the surface even.

Then put in the plants by line, at six inches distance each way, and each sort separate. As soon as they are planted, let them be moderately watered, to settle the earth well about their roots.

All these are to remain in the nursery-beds till September or October, then to be planted out for good; they will all flower next year, and make a fine appearance.

#### *Sow Perennial Flower Seeds.*

Many sorts of perennial and biennial flower-seeds may yet be sown; but this should be done in the first or second week in the month, and the plants will come up strong, and will all produce flowers abundantly the next summer.

The sorts which will still succeed, are the different sorts of stock July-flowers, and wall-flowers, sweet-williams and columbines.



columbines, carnations and pinks, and the seeds of scabiouses; Canterbury or pyramidal bell-flowers, may also be sown now; likewise holly-hocks, and French honeysuckles, and some other sorts: choose a spot for these seeds, where the ground is light, free from weeds, and not much exposed to the sun. Let this be neatly dug, and in digging let the earth be well broken; and then mark it out into as many parts as there are kinds of seeds intended to be sown.

Then the seeds are to be scattered on as equally as possible, and raked in with an even hand, that the plants may rise regular, and of an equal thickness in every part.

But the best method to sow all these kinds of seeds, so as to bury them equally, and to have the plants come up regular, is this:

The ground being dug, let the surface be neatly raked; then divide it into small beds, forty inches broad; then with the back of a rake, turn the earth, to the depth of half an inch, off from the surface of the bed, into the alley.

When this is done, let the seeds be scattered carefully on the surface; and then with the teeth of the rake, draw the earth that was turned off the bed, evenly over them.

Then let the beds be very lightly gone over with a rake, just to smooth the surface, and draw off any stones.

#### *Destroy Weeds.*

Destroy weeds in every part where they appear, they are now of quick growth, and will get a head, if not disturbed in due time.

They are not only hurtful to the plants, but appear extremely disagreeable to the eye, especially where they are suffered to grow in the conspicuous parts of the garden.

Therefore make it a rule to cut them off as soon as they appear in these parts, either by hand or hoe; where there is room for the hoe, let that instrument be used in dry days, and then let the borders, or other parts, be neatly raked, to draw the weeds and all other litter off.

#### *Grass and Gravel Walks.*

Mow grass walks and lawns, they will now require it often: to keep these parts in tolerable good order, the grass should be mown about once a week.

Keep

Keep gravel walks now in the best order, let no sort of litter be seen upon them; and when weeds appear, let them be immediately picked out.

These walks should also be duly rolled; this should be done in general about twice a week; however, do not fail to roll them well always once in that time.

After showers of rain, the gravel walks should always have a hearty rolling with the heaviest roller; for this will make the body of the walk firm, and render the surface very close and smooth.

Let the border next the above walks be also kept in perfect good order.

They should be kept perfectly free from weeds and all litter springing from the plants, such as decayed leaves, and all such shoots, &c. as advance in a straggling manner, should all be cleared away; and all the plants as advance to any height, should be kept in an upright position, by tying them up to stakes, and the surface of the borders should be now and then raked smooth, which will give them a lovely appearance.

#### *Support Flowering Plants.*

Now place sticks to all such plants as stand in need of support. There are many sorts that will now need this assistance; and the sooner this is done the stronger and handsomer the plants will grow.

But in doing this work, let some care be taken to proportion the length of the sticks to the size and height of the different plants, which are to be supported.

In placing the sticks, observe always to thrust them down on that side of the plant where they can be least seen; for though the intent is to keep the plant perfectly upright and firm in its place, yet, at the same time, the art is to hide, as much as possible, the stick that supports it.

The same care should be taken in tying them up: the stem or stalks of the plant must be brought close to the stick, and tyed to it in different places; but let each tying be done in a very neat manner, and not in that very careless and clumsy way commonly practised.

It is a very great advantage to the growth and beauty of plants, to secure them well from the power of the wind, and to train them with strait and upright stems; and this, in particular, should always be very duly attended to.

The



May]

( 237 )

## The Nursery.

**T**HE great care of the nursery now, is to destroy weeds in every part wherever they appear, and to give water duly to all such plants as require it.

The seed-beds of all young trees and shrubs should now, in particular, be kept remarkably clear from weeds ; and this must always be done by a very careful hand-weeding.

### *Water Seedling Plants.*

Observe at this time, if the weather should prove dry, that the seed-beds of evergreens and flowering-shrubs, and all young trees in general, should be often refreshed with water.

In watering these beds, take good care not to do it too hastily, for that would be apt to wash the earth away, and expose the tender roots to the sun, which would burn them up.

Therefore let the water be given frequent and moderate, which will be of great service ; and about three gentle waterings a week, or one every other evening, will be sufficient.

### *Shade Seedlings.*

The seedling evergreens, such as pines, cedars, cypress, and many other sorts, should now be shaded from the sun in the middle of hot days.

### *Water new Plantations.*

The plantations of young evergreens and flowering-shrubs, which were transplanted in March, and last month, should, if the weather now proves dry, be often watered.

This is a very needful work in dry weather ; and, where time will permit, it should not be omitted : the waterings should be performed once in five or six days ; but, however, do not fail to give them one hearty watering once a week.

Likewise observe to continue some mulch, on the surface of the ground, over the roots of the more curious or tender kinds of these shrubs, for this will be of great service in preventing the sun from drying the earth too fast about them.

Where

Where this is done in a proper manner, to all new planted trees and shrubs, they will not need, at any time, to be watered oftener than once in six or eight days,

*Propagate Evergreens, &c. by Layers.*

Now propagate evergreens and other shrubs, by layers, and the young shoots of the same year, are now the proper parts to be laid.

This method of laying the young wood, is now principally to be understood of such kinds as do not put out roots freely, from any but the young shoots of the same summer's growth; and the said shoots of some sorts of shrubs will be grown to a proper size for that purpose, by the third or fourth week in the month.

Therefore, about that time, if the young shoots be long enough, let some of the pliable branches, that afford the strongest and best young shoots, be brought down gently to the ground, and there let them be fastened securely with strong hooked pegs; then let the young shoots be laid into the earth, and covered two or three inches deep with it, leaving about two or three inches of the top of each shoot out of the ground.

As soon as they are laid, give a moderate watering to settle the earth properly about them; then lay a little mulch, or some long litter, thinly on the surface.

After this, let the earth be very moderately watered, in dry weather, every five or six days, and be sure not to give too much water at a time, for that would be apt to rot the tender roots, according as they break out.

Though this method of laying in the young wood is designed chiefly for such evergreen and other shrubs, as do not readily put forth roots from the older shoots, yet it need not be confined to any particular sorts; for there are many kinds that may be propagated by the same practice, and the trial may be made on any such sorts as you desire to increase.

The proper time to perform this work, is from about the twentieth of May to the latter end of July; but from, and about the middle of June, to the end of July, the shoots of most shrubs, will be in good order for laying, and if proper shoots are chosen, and these properly laid, they will, many of them, be well rooted, and in a condition to be separated from the mother plant, by the beginning of the following October.



*New grafted and budded Trees.*

Look over the grafts about the last week in this month, and at that time let the clay be taken off, for there will be no more occasion for it; and at the same time let the bandages be loosened.

Let no shoots remain, that rise from the stocks below the grafts, but as soon as they appear let them be immediately rubbed off; and this should be duly practised, that the grafts may not be robbed of nourishment.

Examine also the trees which were budded last summer; all shoots from the stock must be constantly taken off as they are produced, for these would draw the nourishment from the bud.

*Destroy Weeds between the Rows of Trees.*

The ground between rows of all kinds of young trees and shrubs, should now, at all times, be kept extremely clear from weeds.

These now rise abundantly, and very fast in every part; but whenever they appear between the rows of trees and shrubs, there is nothing easier than destroying them at a great rate, by applying a sharp hoe to them in dry days.

## The Green-House.

*Bringing out the Green-House Plants.*

**I**N the first or second week of this month, let all the hardy kinds of green-house plants be brought out into the open air.

The myrtles, bleeders, geraniums, and amomum plinii, may be safely ventured abroad at that time; and also the tree wormwood, Indian bay, olives, and the large magnolia; candy tuft tree, shrubby aster, jasmines, cistusses, and double Indian nasturtiums; and many other such like hardy plants.

The orange, lemon, and citron trees, and all the other tenderer kind of green-house plants, should also be brought out now; but this must not be done till some time between the twentieth and last day of the month.

Let all the plants in general, when first brought out of the green-house, be placed in a warm situation; that is, let

let them all be set where the wind can have but little power; and after they have stood there about ten or twelve days, they will be somewhat hardened to the open air, and may then be removed to the places where they are to remain for the summer.

Let every plant as soon as brought out for the summer season, be cleared from decayed leaves and dead wood; and let the whole plants be perfectly well cleaned from any kind of filth that may appear on the leaves, branches, or stems.

Likewise, if not done a month or two ago, let the earth in the tops of all the pots, be stirred to some little depth; and then lay over it the thickness of half an inch, or an inch, of fresh mould: this done, let the whole be moderately watered; and, at the same time, let the water be given all over the heads of the plants; for this will cleanse the leaves and branches thoroughly from dust, and will greatly refresh the whole plant, and be of great advantage to it.

#### *Aloes, &c.*

The aloes, sedums, Indian figs. and all other succulent plants of the green-house, should also be brought forth this month.

Where the leaves of any of these plants are decayed, or decaying, let them, as soon as they appear, be cut off close with a sharp knife.

#### *Shifting into larger Pots.*

Any of the green-house plants that want larger pots, may now be shifted into them, any time this month; but the sooner the better.

Having the pots or tubs, and some fresh compost ready, let the plants be brought out, and shifted, in a cloudy day, according to the following method:

Take the plant out of its present pot, or tub, with the ball of earth intire; then pare off all the matted roots round the outside and bottom of the ball; and also let some of the old earth be pulled away, and immediately set the plant in the new pot, and fill it up with the fresh compost, and give it some water.

When the plants are set out for the summer season, let those which are shifted be placed in a shady situation, there to remain for a month or six weeks, and then to be removed



removed to the places allotted for them during the summer.

The oranges, lemons, and citron trees, which are not shifted this season, should now be treated in the following manner, provided it was not done in April:

Loosen the earth on the tops of the tubs or pots, quite to the uppermost roots, and also a little way down round the sides. This done, take out all the loose earth with the hand, and immediately fill the tubs or pots again with some good fresh earth; then give a moderate watering, and the work is finished.

Such a dressing as this will now be a very great advantage to these kinds of plants, it will not only promote a healthful fine green colour of the leaves, but will also add new strength and vigour to the whole plant, and cause them to flower strong and abundantly, and to produce strong and handsome shoots.

*Admit fresh Air.*

Observe, that during the time that the plants remain in the green-house this month, to admit a considerable share of free air to them every day, to harden them to it by degrees, so that they may be able to bear it well when brought out.

Let all the windows and doors be opened every mild day, to their full extent; and towards the middle of the month, let them continue open also a-nights; that is, when the air is perfectly still and warm.

*Water the Plants.*

Remember to supply every plant, according to its kind, with a proper share of water.

The oranges, lemons, and myrtles, and all the woody plants, will now require that article pretty often. The large pots, or tubs, will, in warm weather, require it about twice a week, and the small pots will need a moderate watering every two days.

Some of the succulent plants require but very little water, but it will be proper to give them a moderate refreshment now and then.

*Propagate Green-House Plants by Layers.*

Many kinds of green-house plants may be propagated by layers, and this is now still a proper time to lay them.

Myrtles will succeed very well this way, and also jasmynes, pomegranates, and oleanders, and many others of the shrubby kinds.

Choose for this purpose, some of the pliable bottom shoots; let these be brought down gently; and, making an opening in the earth, let them be laid in there, and fastened down with hooked pegs, and cover the body of the shoots two inches thick with earth, leaving not less than three or four inches of the top out.

Then lay a little mulch, or some mowings of short grass, or the like, on the surface, to preserve the moisture; and do not forget to refresh the pots often with gentle waterings.

Some of the plants thus layed will be rooted by Michaelmas; but those as are not, must be permitted to remain till near that time twelvemonth.

But if any of the pots containing these plants were plunged in a hot-bed, the layers would readily put out roots the same season, and be fit to take off in the following autumn.

But the general method of propagating myrtles is, by cuttings; for which see the work of June and July.

*Of Stocks whereon to bud Oranges, &c.*

If the young orange stocks which were raised from kernels sown in March, are come up about three or four inches high, it will be proper to transplant them.

They should be planted singly in small pots, and then plunged in a fresh hot-bed, under glass.

Let them be watered as soon as planted, and let them be shaded from the sun in the middle of the day.

They must be duly watered about three times a week.

Give them also fresh air, by raising the glasses every day.

Keep up the warmth of the bed by moderate linings.

According as the plants rise in height, the frame must be raised; and provided there be a moderate warmth continued in the bed, and the pots kept moist, the plants will, in two or three months, be a foot and a half, or near two feet high.

Inarching may still be performed upon orange and lemon trees, where required; and it may be done any time in the month; observing as directed in April and March.



## The Hot-House.

**T**HE principal care of the hot-house now, is to keep the plants clean, and to supply them duly with the two necessary articles of water and fresh air.

### *Pine-Apples.*

The pine-apple plants in general, will now require a moderate refreshment of water, every four or five days; and about three or four o'clock is the best time of the day to do it.

In watering these plants, take particular care not to apply it too hastily, nor to give them too great quantities at any one time; for that would not only damp the heat of the bark, but would also loosen the plants in their pots, and chill the roots of them, and prove of very bad consequence.

Fresh air is the next very needful article to be considered, and the plants should now be allowed a considerable share of it, every warm sunny day.

Slide some of the glasses open a little way, every hot day, about nine o'clock; and as the heat of the day increases, continue to open them somewhat wider, that a proportionable share of fresh air may be admitted; and shut the glasses again about three or four o'clock.

Where the young pine plants, that is to say, the crowns and suckers of last year, were not shifted into larger pots the former month, it should now be done.

The plants must be shaken out of the small pot carefully, with the ball of earth intire, placing the same immediately into the larger pot, and fill it up round the ball with the proper fresh compost, and give directly a little water; but in shifting these plants, observe if any of them be sickly, or troubled with insects; and if they be, let such be intirely cleared from the earth about its roots, and pull off some of the lower leaves; then pare the fibres quite close, cut off a little of the bottom of the root, and let the whole plant be washed; which done, plant it into entire new earth.

The plants being all shifted, let them be immediately plunged into the bark-bed as before; but before you





( 245 )  
 plunge them, the back-  
 bottom, adding at the same time, about one third, but  
 not less than one fourth part of new tan, mixing both very  
 well together, and then immediately plunge the pots in  
 it.

## J U N E.

### *Work to be done in the Kitchen Garden.*

#### *Melons.*

**T**HE melon plants which are in frames, should still be carefully shaded in the middle of the day; that is, when the sun shines vehemently.

This should now be particularly practised, where there is but a slender depth of earth upon the beds, or where the plants lie very near the glasses; for if they were in that case exposed to the full noon sun, it would be apt to scorch the leaves, and would also exhaust the juices of the vines, their roots, and the young fruit; and even those that are swelled to some tolerable size, would, for want of the proper nourishment, be greatly checked, and would thereby take an irregular growth, and become stunted and very ill shaped.

Therefore, let some thin mats be spread over the glasses every day, when the sun shines warm; but this need not be done before eleven o'clock, or thereabouts; and the mats may be taken off again about two.

In doing this work, observe to lay only the thickness of one single mat over the lights; and the thinner the mats are, the better, for the plants must not be darkened by too full a shade; but a slight shade in hot sunny days will be of great service in promoting the growth of all sorts and sizes of these fruit.

Let these plants have also a large share of fresh air, every day, by raising, or tilting the lights a considerable height at the back of the frame.

Moderate refreshments of water, at times, will also be very serviceable to these plants now, but in particular to such as are growing in beds where there is but a shallow earth.

In that case the plants will, in hot weather, require to be moderately watered about once a week; and in doing this, take care to give but very little water near the stem or head of the plants.

But in beds where there is twelve or fifteen inches thick of good loamy earth, the melon plants will require but little water, and that but seldom.

Continue to cover the glasses every night with mats, till about the middle of the month; for of late years the weather has seldom been settled sooner than that time.

*Bell-Glass Melons.*

The melon plants which are growing under bell or hand-glasses, should now have full liberty to run out.

Let each glass be raised and supported upon three props, about two or three inches high, and lay the vines out carefully, and in a regular manner.

Continue to cover them every night with mats, till about the middle, or towards the latter end, of this month, and then the covering may be intirely laid aside, except the weather should prove very wet; in which case the coverings may be used occasionally.

There is nothing more prejudicial to these plants than too much wet; for this would not only chill the young fruit, and prevent its setting and swelling, but would also perish many of the roots of the plants.

Therefore, when the weather at any time happens to be very rainy, it will be proper to defend these plants, as much as possible, from it; and this must be done by a covering of good thick mats, or canvass, supported upon hoops fixed across the bed.

*Paper Frames for Melons.*

Where it is intended to cover any of the melon ridges with papered frames, it should now be done in the first week of this month.

This kind of frame will be a great protection to the plants, and young fruit, if cold and wet weather should happen about the time of its setting; and it will also screen the plants from the too great heat of the sun.

These frames should always be placed upon the ridges, as soon as the plants begin to advance from under the hand or bell-glasses; the glasses must be first taken away, before the frame is placed upon the bed.

By this method a good crop of melons may be always obtained, provided the frames be properly constructed, and the paper securely pasted on, and well oiled with linseed oil.



Such persons as are not provided with bell or hand-glasses, may, with the assistance of these frames only, raise good melons; provided the plants be first raised by sowing the seed in a hot-bed, under a frame and glasses, in March or April, as there directed; and may be planted out on a new hot-bed in the beginning of May; and the above frames must be immediately placed upon the ridge as soon as the plants are planted therein, and be covered with mats every night, till the middle of this month.

But, however, those who have the convenience of hand-glasses, should always place these over the plants when first ridged out, and to remain till about the beginning of this month, when the plants will have filled the glasses; they should then be entirely taken away, and the papered frame put on.

These frames are made of thin slips of wood, and are constructed in the manner and form of the roof of a house; they should be made firm, but light.

Each frame should be ten feet long, or thereabouts, and three feet and a half wide, that is, at bottom; and the whole should be thirty inches high.

On one side of the frame, there should be two pannels, made to open on hinges; and each of these pannels must be eighteen inches wide, making them within two feet of each end of the frame.

These pannels are to be opened occasionally, to examine the plants and fruit; and to do the necessary work about them; which is better than to take the frames off upon every occasion.

The frame being made according to the above dimensions, get some paper and paste upon it. The middling sort of whited-brown paper will do for this purpose; but the best sort for that use, is the best printing paper, or thick writing paper, such as is sold for eight-pence or ten-pence a quire; and two quire of such paper will cover at least one of the above frames; let this be neatly pasted upon the frame; and when it is perfectly dry, then oil it in the following manner:

Get some linseed oil that hath been boiled, and a soft pliable brush, such as painters use; dip the brush in the oil, and brush the paper all over lightly with it. The oil will render the paper more transparent, and make it proof against rain.

But before the paper is pasted on, there should be some small twine, or packthread, drawn at equal distances along the frame, cornerways, between the slips of wood, drawing it firmly round them, and then draw some more contrary ways a-cross that; this will support the paper when the wind at any time happens to blow strong against it.

These frames should always be made, that is, papered, some time before they are to be used; for the oil should be perfectly well dried in the paper, before the frames are placed out upon the ridges.

*Filling up the Alleys between the Melon Ridges.*

The alleys, or spaces, between the melon ridges, should now be filled up, that the roots of the plants may have full scope of ground to run in.

Where these ridges are made all, or a great part, above ground, the spaces, or alleys, between them, should, in particular, be filled up; and this must be done with dung, and a proper thickness of good earth.

For this purpose it would be a great advantage to use new hot dung, for this would throw a fresh heat into the beds, which would very much promote the setting and swelling the young fruit.

Let the dung be first laid in, and tread it firmly down, raising it full as high as the dung of the beds; then lay the earth over that, raising the whole level with the surface of the beds.

*Cucumbers in Frames.*

Take good care of the cucumber plants in frames; they must be well supplied with fresh air and water.

These plants, in hot weather, will require to be watered every two or three days; and in a morning, about seven or eight o'clock, or four, or five in the evening, are the best times of the day to do it.

Let the plants have air freely, every day, by tilting up the lights a considerable height at the back of the frame; but it will be advisable to shut the lights down a-nights, the greatest part of this month.

About the middle, or towards the latter end of this month, it will be proper to raise the frame high enough to let the plants run out from under it.

*Cucumbers*



*Cucumbers in Bell-Glasses.*

The cucumber plants which are under hand or bell-glasses, must now be suffered to run freely from under them.

Each glass should be raised upon three or four propt; and the vines, or runners of the plants, must be trained out with care and regularity.

Let these plants be also duly assisted, in dry weather, with water; they will require it moderately, about three times a week.

*Pickling Cucumbers.*

The cucumber plants which were sown the latter end of last month, in the natural ground, to produce picklers, &c. should now be thinned. This should always be done when the rough leaf begins to appear in the heart of the plants.

In doing this work, observe to leave in each hole, at least four of the strongest plants, but never more than five or six, which will be sufficient; let the rest be drawn out with care; and clear away all the weeds.

Then earth up the shanks of the remaining plants, within a little of the seed leaves, and immediately give each hole a light watering, to settle the earth; the plants after this, will get strength, and grow away surprisngly.

Let them be often refreshed with water, in dry weather; for they will in a dry time need a little every other day.

*Sow Cucumbers.*

Cucumber seed may still be sown, where required; and the first week in the month is not too late to sow a full crop of picklers. If you put the seed into the ground any time between the first and fifteenth day of the month, it will succeed; but however, where a main crop is depending, we advise to sow the seed the beginning of the month.

We hinted last month, with regard to pickling, that the Kitchen Gardeners about London, in wet cold seasons, often raise their plants on a slight hot-bed: sowing the seed in the third week in May. And where that was practised, it is now time in the first or second week in this month, to transplant them; which should be done when the plants begin to put out their first rough leaves.

Let the method of planting be observed as directed last month.

The plants raised from this sowing, will come into bearing about the middle of August, and they will yield fruit plentifully all the remaining part of that month, and great part of September.

#### *Celery.*

Transplant celery into trenches, to remain to blanch.

That which was sown early will be grown to a proper size for this purpose, by the first or second week of this month, when it should be planted; and some of the second sowing should be planted out towards the latter end of the month.

Choose for these plants, a piece of rich ground in an open situation; there mark out the trenches by line, about a foot wide; and allow the space of three feet between trench and trench, which will be sufficient for the early plantation.

Dig each trench neatly, about six or eight inches deep, laying the earth that comes out, equally on each side; then lay the thickness of two or three inches of very rotten dung along, in the bottom of each trench.

When this is done, let the bottom be neatly dug, burying the dung equally, about four inches deep; then put in the plants.

Plant them in one single row, just along the middle of the trench, allowing the distance of five inches, or thereabout, between plant and plant in the row: as soon as they are planted, give them some water, and repeat it occasionally till they have taken root.

These plants will, in about a month or five weeks after they are planted out, require to be earthed up, and this is done in order to render the stalks white and tender; the earthing them must be performed in dry days; the earth must be broken small, and take care to lay it gently to both sides of the plants, and not to earth them too high at first, lest you bury the hearts: this earthing should, after you begin, be repeated every fortnight or three weeks, or thereabout, till the plants are ready for use.

#### *Endive.*

Transplant endive for blanching; some of the first sown plants will be ready for this by the middle, or towards the latter end of the month.



An open spot of good ground must be chosen for these plants; let it be neatly dug one spade deep, and rake the surface smooth.

Then put in the plants by line, about a foot asunder every way, and let them have some water as soon as they are planted.

But there should not be many of these early sown plants planted out; that is, not to deceive yourself in planting out enough for a main crop; for the plants as they were sown, most of them will be apt to run to seed, before they arrive to any tolerable state of maturity.

Sow endive seed for a principal crop, and to succeed those which were sown the former month.

The best endive to sow for a full crop, is the green curled sort; this sort is not only the best for use, but is the hardiest, for it will endure wet and cold better than any other kind. But you may likewise sow, as a variety for a sallad, some of the white curled sort.

There is a sort with broad leaves, called the Batavia endive; this is the best sort for stewing; it grows very large, and, if tyed up, will cabbage well, and be very white, and eats also well in a sallad; but this sort is not hardy, for it soon rots in a wet autumn, and a moderate frost will kill it.

Let this seed be sown in an open spot, not too thick, and rake it in equally. It will be proper to sow some of this seed at two different times this month, which is the only way to have a regular supply of good plants.

But for the main autumn and winter crop, do not sow any before the third or fourth week in the month; for that which is sown earlier is very apt to run up for seed early in autumn, and before it arrives to its full growth.

#### *Lettuces.*

The lettuce plants which were sown in May, should now be transplanted into an open spot of good ground.

Let this be done in moist weather; for these plants will not succeed well if planted out in a dry time; but where there is a necessity of planting them out in dry weather, let the following method be practised.

Draw with a small hoe, some shallow drills about a foot asunder, and then plant one row of lettuces in each drill, setting the plants a foot also from one another, and give them some water.

By placing these plants in drills, they can be more conveniently watered; and a smaller quantity will do, than if planted on level ground, for the moisture will be much longer detained; this is therefore the best method of planting them at this season.

*Sow Lettuce Seed.*

Sow lettuce seed to raise some plants to supply the table in August and September.

The best kinds to sow now, are the cos, Silesia, and brown Dutch lettuces, for autumn service. But it will be adviseable to sow a little seed of each of these sorts, and there will be the greater chance of having good plants.

It will be necessary to sow some of each of these seeds, twice this month: that is, let a little be sown some time between the first and tenth, and sow some more about the twentieth of the month.

*Cresses, &c.*

Sow cresses and mustard, and other small sallet seeds, at least once every week.

These seeds must now be sown in the shade; and the place where they are sown should be often refreshed, in dry weather, with water; and this should be practised both before and after the plants begin to appear.

*Prick out Colliflowers.*

The colliflower plants which were sown in May, for the Michaelmas crop, should, in the third or fourth week in this month, be pricked out into a nursery bed of rich earth.

Prepare for them a bed about forty inches broad, in an open situation; then put in the plants, three inches asunder, or thereabout, and give them a little water to settle the earth well about their roots.

It will be proper to shade them from the hot sun, till they have taken good root; for this will be a great advantage; and they must also be occasionally watered; that is, if the weather should prove dry.

The plants are to remain in this bed a month, to get strength, and then to be planted out for good in the places where they are to remain to produce their heads.

Continue to look over the plantations of early colliflowers now and then, in order to break down some of the



the inner leaves, over the young heads, according as they appear.

These plants, especially those as are still to come into flower, should in dry weather be well watered; which will keep the plants in a growing state, and produce very large flowers or heads.

Make a bason round each plant, to contain the water.

If they have one or two hearty waterings, that is, about two pots to each plant, so as to moisten the earth as far as their roots extend, they will want no more; and the bason which was formed to contain the water, may then be filled up again.

### Turneps.

Now sow a full crop of turneps for autumn use.

The seed may be sown any time in the month; but some time between the tenth and twenty-fifth of the month, is the best time to sow the principal autumn crop.

However, let the seed be sown, if possible, in a dripping time; or, at least, when there is a prospect of rain falling soon. Take good care to sow this seed equally, and rake it in immediately; being careful to do this with a very even hand.

Hoe the turneps which were sown in May, and thin the plants in a regular manner.

This work should always be begun when the plants have gotten rough leaves about an inch broad; for then the work can be performed with expedition and regularity; and, if done in time, will be a great advantage to the growth of the plants.

Leave the plants eight inches distant from one another, or thereabout.

### Carrots and Parsneps.

The crops of carrots and parsneps, now demand particular care.

They must be cleared thoroughly from weeds; and let the plants, where they want, be thinned out to proper distances; but let this be done in due time; for it is a great advantage to these plants, to allow them timely room to grow.

Let them be thinned regularly, allowing six or eight inches distance between plant and plant.

But in thinning the carrots, it will be proper to observe the same rule as directed in May; that is, let those which are to stand to take their full growth, be allowed the same distance between plant and plant, as above mentioned; but where the carrots are intended to be drawn while young, thin them only to about four or five inches distance from one another.

#### *Red Beet.*

The crop of red beet should be thinned and cleared from weeds.

The seeds of these plants are often sown in drills, ten inches or a foot asunder, and it is a very good way; and where that method was practised, you can now readily clear out the weeds and thin the plants; observing to thin them to ten or twelve inches distance in the rows, so as they may stand that distance every way from one another.

And where the seed was sown broad-cast, so as the plants stand promiscuously, they must also be cut out to the above distance, and the roots will grow to a large size.

White and green beet is propagated only for their leaves, which are used in soups; and sometimes, when the leaves of the true white beet is grown to a large size, they are by some stripped to the mid rib, which is also peeled and stewed, and eaten like asparagus.

These plants must also be allowed good room to grow, for their leaves spread a great way; let them therefore be thinned to the same distance as advised for the red beet.

#### *Onions.*

Clean the crops of onions; and where the plants stand too close, let them now be properly thinned.

In doing this, take good care to leave the most promising plants; leave them, in general, about four or five inches asunder.

These plants should be kept constantly very free from weeds.

For the particular manner of cleaning and thinning these plants, see the work of May.

#### *Leeks.*

Now transplant leeks; the plants will be grown to a proper size for this purpose by the third or fourth week in the month.

They



They must be planted in an open spot of good ground ; plant them in rows eight inches asunder, and set the plants about six inches from one another in the row.

#### *Broccoli.*

Prick out from the seed-bed, the young broccoli plants which were sown in May.

Dig for them a bed or two of good mellow ground, and rake the surface even ; then put in the plants three or four inches asunder every way. Water them immediately, and repeat it occasionally, in dry weather.

Let them remain in this bed about a month or five weeks ; and then plant them out for good.

Sow more broccoli seed. This sowing should be performed in the second or third week of the month ; that is, if to succeed the plants of those sown in May ; but if none was then sown, it is most necessary to sow some in the first week in this month.

The plants raised from this sowing, will produce good heads in March.

#### *Brown Cole.*

The brown cole, or bore cole plants, which were sown in the beginning of last month, or in April, should also be pricked out now, from the seed-bed, into a nursery-bed. Put in these plants four inches asunder each way ; and there let them be about a month ; by which time they will have acquired strength, and must then be planted out where they are to remain.

#### *Kidney-Beans.*

Plant another crop of kidney-beans ; they will succeed those which were planted last month.

Any of the dwarf kinds may still be planted, any time in this month. But, in order to have a regular supply, it will be proper to plant a few in the first week ; and let some more be planted about the twentieth or twenty-fifth of the month.

The climbing, or running kinds of kidney-beans, of any sort, may also, where required, be planted now.

The best kinds of them to plant at this time, are, the white Dutch sort, and also the scarlet blossom, and large white kind ; these sorts are exceeding good bearers, and none better to eat.

These

These running kinds should be planted in the first, or second week of the month, at farthest; for they do not succeed so well when planted later; and those which are planted at that time, will begin to bear abundantly in August, and will continue till October, provided the weather proves any thing mild till that season.

In planting the different kinds of kidney-beans, do not fail to allow each sort room enough; that is, let drills be opened for the running kinds, at least three feet and an half, or four feet asunder; and allow for the dwarf kinds, two feet and a half, between drill and drill.

In planting any kinds of kidney-beans, it will now be proper, if the ground be very dry, to water the drills well before you put in the beans. This should not be omitted in a dry time, as it will promote the free sprouting of the beans, and they will rise sooner, and more regularly.

Now draw up some earth to the stems of the kidney-beans which were planted last month; for this will strengthen the plants, and bring them forward greatly in their growth.

Likewise, place sticks, or poles, to the running kinds of kidney-beans, which were planted the beginning of May; and let this be done in proper time.

This should be done as soon as the plants begin to send out their runners, for they will then catch the sticks readily.

#### *Asparagus.*

Asparagus still continues in perfection; observing to cut or gather the buds, as directed last month.

But let it be remembered, that you must desist from cutting any more after about the twentieth, or twenty-fourth of the month, otherwise it will greatly weaken the roots; for so long as you continue to cut the buds, the roots continue to send up new shoots, though every time will be smaller; and the roots would so greatly exhaust themselves, as not to be capable of producing any but very small buds next year.

Before you let the asparagus run up to stalks, you should now clear the beds perfectly from weeds; for that work cannot be so readily done after the stalks have shot up to a great height.

Great care should now be taken to keep the asparagus planted last spring perfectly clear from weeds.

And the young plants which were sown in the spring will now be up, and should be carefully hand-weeded.



*Peas and Beans.*

Peas may still be sown; and you may also plant beans.

Though those peas and beans which are planted at this season, do not always succeed; it will, however, where there is ground at liberty, be worth the trial, to put in a few of each; and if the season should prove somewhat moist, there will be a great chance of reaping a tolerable crop from them in September; at which time they will be a rarity.

The best beans to plant now, are the small kinds; none better than the white blossom, and mazagan, and the like. I have gathered plentifully from these sorts at Michaelmas.

But the large kinds of peas, such as marrowfat, &c. may still be sown; and it will be also proper to sow a few of the best kinds of the horse-pur peas.

Observe, that if the weather and ground be very dry, it will be proper to soak the peas and beans, in water, for a few hours. Let the water be taken from a pond or river; and let the seed lie in it eight or ten hours; then sow or plant them.

Let them be planted in such a part of the ground where it inclines to be naturally moistest; but do not for the sake of this, plant them in a shady place; for in such a situation, the plants of this sowing would dry up, and come to nothing. And remember to allow them sufficient room between the rows, for much depends upon that at this time of sowing.

Top your beans which are now in blossom, observing the rules mentioned last month.

*Savoy and Cabbages.*

Now is the time to plant a full crop of savoy and cabbages, for winter service.

Likewise plant out the red cabbages which were sown in the spring, and they will be well cabbaged by October.

Let the plants be set in rows, two feet asunder; and plant them eighteen or twenty inches distant from one another in the row.

But in gardens where there is no ground vacant from other crops, or where there is a necessity of making the most of every piece of kitchen ground, you may, in these cases, plant the savoy and cabbage plants, between rows of forward beans, and early colliflowers, or such like crops.

crops as stand distant in rows, and are soon to come off the ground.

*Sowing Cabbage Seed.*

You may now sow cabbage seed; the plants from this sowing will produce fine young heads in November and December.

*Planting Pot Herbs, and other Aromatic Plants.*

Plant out from the seed-bed, the young thyme, savory, sweet-marjoram, and hyssop.

The plants will be ready to remove about the third or fourth week in the month; but let it be done, if possible, in a showery time. Prepare some beds for that purpose, three feet and a half broad; rake the surface smooth, and then put in the plants.

Plant them by line; setting them six or eight inches asunder every way, and water them.

These herbs are sometimes planted in edgings, along that of a bed or border; which is often practised in private gardens.

But when this is intended, you may, if you please, sow the seed in that order in the spring; sowing it in small drills, and so permitting the plants to remain where thus sown; but the plants will grow more straggling than those that are transplanted.

Plant out also the borage, burnet, clary, marigold, angelica and cardus, and all other pot and physical herbs as were sown in the spring or last autumn.

Plant them a foot or fifteen inches distance every way asunder.

But the borage seed succeeds best without transplanting; only observing to thin the plants to about a foot distance every way; and the marigolds may also be treated in the same manner; but these will succeed well enough either way.

Plant, where wanted, slips of sage; they will still take root tolerably well, any time in this month; plant them in a shady border.

The slips or cuttings of thyme, savory, and hyssop, may also still be planted where required.

Likewise plant, where required, slips, or cuttings of lavender, and lavender-cotton, rue, rosemary, and southernwood, and the like kinds of plants.

Let



Let the above slips or cuttings be planted in a shady situation ; and, in dry weather, let them be now and then moderately watered : if this is done, not one in ten will fail.

*Mint, &c.*

Gather mint towards the end of this month, for drying, provided the plants are in flower ; and also for that purpose gather all such kinds of physical plants as are now in flower.

These sorts of plants should be always gathered when they begin to flower ; for they are then in the greatest perfection, and much the best for their several purposes ; nor should they be gathered before that period.

They must be cut in a dry day, and immediately spread, or hung up, in a dry airy room, out of the reach of the sun, where they may dry gently. Never lay these things in the sun to dry ; for that would exhaust them too much, and render them useless.

Cut pepper-mint for distilling ; and also spear-mint, and the like.

These, and all other plants that are intended to be distilled, should also be gathered for that purpose, when they are beginning to flower : therefore, if they do not flower this month, defer cutting them till next.

But be sure to cut them in a dry day ; and let the plants be also thoroughly dry.

*Watering, in general.*

Water, in dry weather, all the different kinds of plants which have been lately planted out : this should be duly performed till the plants have taken root.

*Cardoons.*

Plant out cardoons into the place where they are to remain to blanch.

These plants must be allowed a pretty deal of room, in order that they may be conveniently earthed up to the proper height.

Choose a spot of the best ground for them, in a free situation, and let this be very well dug ; then put in the plants in rows, allowing a yard and a half between the rows ; and set the plants three feet and a half from one another in the row. Dig no trench, as by some practised,

as for celery ; but you may either plant them on level ground, or may make holes like a basin, in the places where the plants are to stand, at the distance above mentioned ; and so put one plant in each hole.

Let them be watered as soon as planted, and at all times, till they have taken root.

The reason for setting the above plants at so great a distance from one another, is, as before said, in order that you may be able to obtain a sufficient quantity of earth between them, to land them up to a due height for blanching ; for where the plants arrive at their full growth, or between three and four feet high, they should be earthed up almost to their tops, first tying the leaves of each plant close together with hay or straw bands.

But for the method of earthing them, see the work of September and October.

These plants are of the species of an artichoke, their leaves being very like them ; but it is the stalks or leaves only of the cardoons that are used ; which is principally in soup and for stewing ; but they must first be rendered perfectly white and tender, by landing up, as above mentioned.

## The Fruit Garden.

### *Apricot-Trees, &c.*

**W**HERE the apricot, peach, and nectarine-trees, were not looked over, and put into proper order last month, it must now be done.

This work should be begun the beginning of the month, and followed with the utmost diligence, till the whole is compleated ; for where these trees are suffered to remain long in the wild confused manner that they naturally grow into at this season, it would not only prove detrimental, in a great degree, to the trees, but would also very much retard the growth and ripening of these kinds of fruit.

Therefore, let these wall-trees be now, in general, gone over ; taking good care to clear away all the ill-grown, and ill-placed shoots ; for this will not only strengthen, but make more room, to train the useful shoots in a proper manner to the wall.

That



That is, let all such shoots as are very luxuriant in their growth, be, in general, displaced; and, also, all the foreright shoots; and all such as are not well placed for training-in, must likewise be taken off.

Let them be taken off quite close to the place from whence they are produced.

But observe to leave, in every part of these trees, a sufficient quantity of the best shoots for the purpose of bearing next year; that is, leave all the regular and moderate growing shoots, that are any thing well situated, and can be conveniently laid in; and, at the same time, let them all be laid in close to the wall, in a neat manner,

Do not shorten any of the shoots, for the reason mentioned last month; but lay them in, large and small, at their full length.

Let the shoots, in general, be laid, or nailed in, as regularly as can be; and take particular care to lay them in such a manner as the leaves may afford a moderate shade, in hot sunny days, to the fruit; for all kinds of wall-fruit thrive much the best under a slight coverture of leaves: the leaves will also shelter the fruit somewhat from the cold night air.

#### *Thinning Wall-Fruit.*

Thin the wall-fruit, where it is produced, and still remaining too close upon the trees.

This is to be understood, principally, of apricots, peaches, and nectarines; and in thinning them, let the same rule be observed now, as that mentioned in the last month, on the same kinds of fruit.

#### *Apple-Trees, &c.*

The apple, pear, plum, and cherry-trees, both against walls and espaliers, will now have made strong shoots; and where it was not done in May, it is now full time they were gone over, and properly regulated.

Let those trees be looked over with very good attention, and let them now be properly cleared from all useless and unnecessary shoots; that is to say, let all luxuriant shoots, wherever they appear, be taken off close: all foreright shoots must also be taken away; and also such shoots as are produced in parts of the trees, whereby they cannot be properly trained in; and such as are absolutely not wanted for a supply of wood, must all be displaced.

But

But in ordering these trees, it must be observed, that altho' there is no need to leave such a general supply of young wood, as in peaches, and nectarines, &c. which bear their fruit always upon one year old shoots, yet there is a necessity to leave every summer a supply of young wood, in every part of the tree; but as to apples, pears, plums, and cherries, their branches will not begin to bear till they are two or three, and some four or five years old; that is, the branches of cherries generally begin to bear at one and two; the plum and apple, two or three; but those of the pear, are at least three, but are sometimes four or five years before they begin to bear: but when the said branches of all these kinds begin to bear, they continue bearing more and more, for many years; so that, as above hinted, there is no occasion after the trees are once furnished fully with branches to leave such a general and constant supply of young wood as in the trees above mentioned; but, notwithstanding, it will be proper to leave here and there in every tree, some of the best grown and well placed shoots; and this should not, on any account, be now omitted; for some of these will very likely be wanted to lay in to supply some place or other of the tree, in the winter pruning.

And where there appears to be an absolute want of wood, in any part of these trees, do not fail, in that case, to leave, if possible, some good shoots in such parts.

It is always the best method, to leave in a moderate way full enough of the best shoots at this season; they will be ready in case they should be wanted to fill up any vacancy, or to supply the place of old useless or dead wood, when you come to prune in winter; and such shoots as are not wanted at that time, can then be very easily cut away; and there is nothing like having enough of proper young wood to choose from, at the principal pruning time.

Let all the shoots which are now left, be nailed, or otherwise fastened up close to the wall or espalier, in a regular manner; and each shoot at its full length.

*Method to fill vacant Parts of Wall-Trees with Branches.*

At this season it will be proper to observe, that where there is any vacancy of any kind of wall or espalier trees, and two, three, or more branches may be wanted only to fill the vacancy, and suppose there be only a young shoot produced in or near that place, it will, in such case,



be proper in the first or second week of the month to shorten the said shoot or shoots, to three, four, or five eyes, according to their strength; and by this practice each shoot so treated, will send forth two or three, or perhaps four lateral shoots the same season, to fill up the vacancy.

The above method of shortening the young shoots of the same season, may likewise be practised on young trees, to procure a supply of branches to form a head.

#### *New planted Trees.*

Examine new planted fruit-trees; that is, such as were planted last autumn, winter, or spring; in particular standard trees: see that they be well secured, so that they cannot be rocked about by the wind, to disturb their roots.

This should be duly attended to, but particularly standard trees, which have tall stems, and full heads; for it will evidently appear that those trees, which are secured, will make stronger shoots than those that are not; likewise take care to keep the earth well closed about the stems of new planted trees, that the sun, or wind, may not have access that way, to draw the earth near the roots.

Look to the young apricot, peach, and nectarine trees, which were headed down in the spring; they will have made some strong shoots, and the said shoots should now be nailed to the wall, to secure them from the power of the wind.

#### *Watering.*

Water must still be given in very dry weather, to new planted trees; but in particular to such as were planted late in the spring.

#### *Vines.*

The vines against walls which were not looked over, and properly regulated last month, will now require it very much.

Where this work has been omitted in the former month, it should now be forwarded with all convenient expedition, otherwise it will be impossible to procure at the proper season, large and well ripened grapes; for when the vines are permitted to run into disorder, it is a great disadvantage to the fruit, for the bunches will not only be small, but will also be very irregular, and the grapes will ripen late; and at best, will be ill tasted.

Therefore,

Therefore, where it was not done in May, let the vines be now, in general, gone over; and let them be thoroughly cleared from all the useless shoots; and then let all the useful shoots be immediately nailed in close to the wall, in a regular and neat manner.

Observe now, in ordering the vines, as in the former month, to nail in all the strong shoots as have fruit upon them; and all such other shoots as are strong and rise in parts of the wood where wanted, must likewise be left, and laid in close; but clear away all small weak shoots in every part; and likewise take off all such shoots as are barren, and rise in places where not wanted, or cannot be readily trained in.

Those vines which were looked over, and ordered in May, should now be looked over again.

In doing this, observe to clear away all shoots whatever, that have been produced since last month; and be sure to rub off all those small shoots, which rise from the sides of the same summer shoots.

#### *Vineyards.*

The vineyard still demands a good share of attendance: the vines must not be suffered to run into confusion, for in preventing this depends the whole success.

Therefore let the bearing shoots be trained to the stakes, with some degree of regularity, so that every shoot may enjoy the same benefit of the sun and free air. At the same time displace all weak and straggling shoots, and all such as cannot be trained in proper order to the stakes.

Destroy weeds in the vineyard; this is also a very necessary work, for it is absolutely a very great advantage to the growth and timely ripening of the grapes, to keep the ground near the vines clean.

#### *Budding, or Inoculating.*

Budding, or inoculating, may be begun upon stone fruit, in the third or fourth week in the month.

The sorts proper to begin upon, are the early kinds of apricots, peaches, and nectarines.

Cloudy weather best suits this work; but if no such weather happens, it will then be most proper to do it in a morning or evening.

The proper stock to bud the above fruits upon, is that of the plum, raised from the stones of that fruit; and when the



the stock is two or three years old, it is a proper size to bud upon. See the work of February, where are directions for raising them, both from seed and suckers.

The bud must be inserted in the stock at about six inches from the ground; that is, if the tree is intended to be a dwarf for the wall; but for a standard, the budding may be performed at the height of three, four, or five feet. Observe always to choose a smooth part of the stock to make the incision to receive the bud.

But the manner of performing this operation, is inserted in full, in the work of the nursery, for July.

#### *Strawberries.*

The strawberry beds must now be duly supplied, in dry weather, with water.

The waterings should, in a very dry time, be repeated every two or three days, from the beginning till about the middle of the month; for about that time the principal crop of most kinds of strawberries will be about setting, and swelling to their respective sizes; and while the fruit are taking their growth, the plants should be encouraged by keeping the earth in the beds always in a middling degree moist, and the advantage will plainly appear in the size, as well as the quantity and quality of the fruit.

#### *Planting Strawberries.*

Where new plantations of strawberries are wanted, it will, about the middle, or latter end of the month, be a proper time to provide some plants for that purpose.

Remember, however, to choose the young plants of the same year.

In choosing the plants, let them be taken from such strawberry beds as bear well, and produce large fruit. Choose a parcel of the stoutest plants of the same summer's growth, as above hinted, taking them carefully up with the roots.

Trim the roots a little, and cut off any strings from the head of the plant; then let them be immediately planted.

But it will not be so proper to plant them now into the beds, or places where they are to remain; but rather plant them into a nursery bed, in a shady situation; a shady border will be a proper place: there put in the plants about three or four inches asunder; and, as soon as planted, give a gentle watering to settle the earth to their roots.

There let them remain till September, or October; by which time, they will be strong, and in fine order to transplant, and are then to be planted out for good; they must then be planted a foot asunder every way.

The above method of procuring strawberry plants at this season is not commonly practised; but it is much the best way, for the plants will be much stronger and finer by September, than any that can be procured at that time from the old beds.

If you, any time in this month, plant out some of the young plants of the alpine, or prolific strawberry, they will bear fruit the same year; that is, they will bear in August, September, and October; and, in mild seasons, this sort of strawberry will bear till near Christmas, provided the plants are in a warm border.

#### *Preserving Cherries from Birds.*

Hang up nets before early cherry-trees, against walls, to protect the fruit from sparrows, and other devouring birds.

Likewise, where large nets can be conveniently drawn over the choicer kinds of standard cherry-trees, it should also be done the beginning of this month.

#### *Destroying Snails.*

Destroy snails; look for them in a morning and evening, and after showers of rain in particular, upon the apricot, peach, and nectarine trees.

### The Pleasure, or Flower Garden.

#### *Transplanting Annuals.*

**N**OW plant out all the hardier kinds of annual flowers into the different parts of the garden, where they are to remain.

The sorts proper to plant out now, are French and African marygolds, chrysanthemums, pericarias, the tree and purple amaranthuses, and scabiouses; the egg plant, stramonium, palma christi, love apple, and the tobacco plant.

Plant out also the marvel of Peru; balsams, and capficums; the China asters, Indian pinks, and ten-week stocks,



stocks, with the large convolvulus, and such like sorts; but this last generally succeeds best when sown where it is to remain.

Observe, that all the above, and such other annual plants as are now to be transplanted, must be removed in a showery time.

Let them be carefully taken up, with balls, or, at least, with as much earth as will readily hang about their roots; and in that manner plant them in the beds, borders, or other parts of the garden. In planting them take good care to close the earth well about their roots and stems.

As soon as planted, give every plant a little water; and in dry weather repeat the watering occasionally, till they have all fairly taken root.

Observe, as the larger kinds of these plants advance in height, to let them be properly supported with sticks; for the beauty of these sorts depends greatly in being neatly supported, and trained with upright stems.

#### *Tender Annuals.*

The cocks combs, and tricolors, globes, double balsams, double stramoniums, and egg plant, and such other curious annuals as were, in order to draw them up tall, placed in drawing-frames, or glass-cases, will now need to be often refreshed with water.

These plants, in warm sunny weather, will stand in need of that article, at least, three times a week; but give it to them moderately at each time.

The plants must also be allowed a good share of fresh air every day; and this must be admitted to them by tilting up the lights a little with props, or by sliding them a little way open.

Mind, as such of those plants as are placed in drawing frames, advance in height, to let the frame be raised accordingly, in the manner directed in the former month.

The balsams that are in flower, and grown to any tolerable size, and also the combs and tricolors, and such like, as are pretty strong, may be brought into the open air, in the last week in the month; but, if not arrived by that time, to a proper size, let them remain a week or two longer.

*Tulips, Crown Imperials, Jonquils, &c.*

Tulips will be now, in general, past flowering, and their leaves will be decayed; it is then proper time to take the roots up out of the ground.

Let this be done in dry weather; and as soon as they are taken up out of the ground, spread them upon mats in the shade, to dry.

When they are thoroughly dried, and somewhat hardened, let them be very well cleaned; and separate all the off-sets from the large roots; and then put up each sort separately, in bags or boxes, till September, October, or November; at which time plant them again.

Take up also, where it is intended, the roots of crown imperials, narcissuses, and jonquils, fritillarias, snow-drop roots, and the roots of spring crocus, and such other bulbous roots as have done blowing, and whose leaves decay.

Let them, as soon as taken up, be separated from the encreased parts, that is, from the small roots, commonly called off-sets; and these, when had another year's growth, will also produce flowers: when the off-sets are taken off, let the roots be spread thin, and separately, upon mats to dry: when that is effected, part the off-sets from the principal roots, and let the whole be cleaned, and put up till the season for planting, which is about Michaelmas; or, at least, some time between that and the beginning of December.

This is also a proper time to transplant bulbous roots that have done blowing, and whose leaves are on the decay.

That is, the bulbs, when their stalks and leaves decay, may then be taken up, and the off-sets all taken away from the main roots; then prepare and dig the ground. When that is done, the principal roots may, if thought convenient, be immediately planted again in the places where they are to blow.

All bulbous roots, at least the choicer kinds, such as tulips and hyacinths, should always be taken up once every year, in order to separate the off-sets from the principal root; and the most proper time is, soon after the bloom, when the leaves and stalks decay, for then the roots draw no sort of nourishment from the ground; and when they are in an inactive state, is most certainly the best time to remove them.



The common sorts of bulbous roots, when taken up and parted from the off-sets, may, then, either be planted again directly, or may be dried and cleaned, as before said, and put in boxes, and kept three, four, or five months.

But the tulip roots, and hyacinths, in particular, should be kept above ground till about Michaelmas time, or a month longer; for they will shoot much stronger, and produce larger flowers, than the roots that are in the ground all summer.

And also the crown imperials, orange lillies, narcissuses, bulbous iris, jonquils, and the like, that are taken up at the decay of the leaves, will likewise bear to be kept above ground several months.

*Guernsey Lilly-Roots:*

Transplant Guernsey, and Belladonna lilly-roots; the leaves will now be decayed, which is the proper time to remove them.

But these need not be taken up oftener than once in two or three years, especially the Guernsey lilly, which is then most necessary to be done, to separate them from the increased parts, or off-sets; and by taking them up, and parting them, and then planting them singly into a new dug bed, or pots of new compost, it will encourage them greatly, and they will shoot and flower much stronger.

The off-sets should also be planted in a bed, or pot, or boxes by themselves, and will be strong enough to flower in two or three years.

These roots should be planted in a bed, or pots of light sandy earth.

They commonly flower in September and October; at which time they should be sheltered occasionally, in very wet or stormy weather, with a covering of hoops and mats.

And during the winter season, the beds or pots wherein the roots are rearing, should be sheltered with a frame or an occasional covering of mats.

*Ranunculus and Anemone Roots.*

The ranunculus and anemone roots, that are past flowering, should also, as soon as their leaves begin to wither, be taken out of the ground.

There is a great deal of care required in taking up these roots: it should be done in a dry day, and when the

ground is also pretty dry; some people, for the greater certainty of finding all the roots, and their small off-sets, but especially of the fine sorts, sift all the earth of the bed as deep as they are planted, paring it up neatly an equal depth, and so search for the roots among the little lumps of earth and stones that remain in the sieve. Lay the roots, when taken up, to dry, out of the reach of the sun and secure from wet.

When properly dried and cleaned, put them up in boxes, and place them in a dry room, till the time for planting them again.

#### *Hyacinth Roots.*

The curious hyacinth roots, which were laid sideways into a bed, or ridge of earth, last month, to swell and harden, will be now in a condition to be taken up.

Take them up in a dry day, and clean them; then spread them upon mats in the shade, for a few days; and put them up in close and dry boxes, till September or October; then plant them again.

Where hyacinth roots of the fine double kinds still remain in the beds where they blowed, they should be taken up in the beginning of the month.

#### *Management of Autumnal Flowering Bulbs.*

This is a good time to take up, and also to transplant all such bulbous and tuberous roots as blow in autumn.

In particular, colchicums, autumnal crocusses, and narcissuses, where it was not done in May; also autumnal hyacinths, and such other autumnal flowering bulbs, or tuberous roots, whose leaves are decayed.

When the roots are taken up, let all the off-sets be taken away: the roots may then be planted again directly, or may be kept out of the ground some time; but not longer than till the first or second week in August; because, if kept longer out of the ground, they will not blow with any tolerable degree of strength in autumn.

Transplant cyclamens; the leaves are now decayed; that is, take up the roots and part them; then new prepare the mould, and plant them again.

These roots may be planted either into pots, or in a bed in the full ground; but if the latter is to be practised, the roots should be planted close under a warm wall, for



if planted in a more open situation, they will not flower well, and besides the roots will be apt to suffer in winter.

But when these roots are planted in pots, they may be moved into a green-house, or placed under a garden frame in winter.

This plant generally begins to flower in February or March, according to its situation.

### *Propagate fibrous rooted Plants.*

Propagate perennial fibrous rooted plants, by planting cuttings of the flower stalk.

By this method, the double scarlet lychnis, lychnideas, and several other such like perennial plants may be increased.

The method of preparing the cuttings, and planting them, is this:

Let some of the stoutest flower-stems be cut off close to the head of the plant. Cut these into lengths, allowing three or four joints to each. Plant them about four inches asunder, in a shady border, putting two joints of the cutting into the ground: water them as soon as planted.

It will be a good method to cover the cuttings close with hand-glasses; for this will greatly promote their taking root.

### *Transplant Seedling Plants.*

Transplant from the seed-bed, the wall-flowers, stock July flowers, sweet-williams, and columbines, which were sown in March or April.

They must now be planted into nursery beds. Let them be set about six inches asunder; and as soon as planted, give them a good watering, to settle the earth properly about their roots.

The plants are to remain in this bed till about Michaelmas; and are then to be planted out again for good, into the borders or places where they are to remain. They will make a fine shew with their flowers the next year.

Transplant also the hollyhocks, tree-primrose, fox-gloves, and pyramidal campanulas, which were sown in the spring.

Likewise the Canterbury bells, and Greek valerian; single rose campion, rockets, scarlet lychnis, and such other perennial plants as were sown two or three months ago.

These must also be planted about six inches a-part, in nursery beds, there to remain till September or October; by which time, they will make strong and handsome plants; and are then to be taken up and planted out where they are to remain to flower.

They will all flower next summer, and will make a beautiful appearance, provided they are properly placed in different parts of the garden.

#### *Carnations.*

Take care of the choice carnations: they will, towards the latter end of the month, begin to break their pod for flowering, at which time they must be well attended.

One great article in the beauty of this curious flower, is to have it open regularly; but this the larger flowers will not always do, without the help of an ingenious hand.

Therefore, in order to favour the opening, and more regular spreading of the petals, let the inner cup, or flower pod, be cut open a little way, in several places.

This should be done just as the flower begins to break the pod. It is best to do it with a small pair of narrow pointed scissars, cutting the pod therewith, a little way down from each notch, or indenting at the top.

But take good care not to cut the pod too deep at first, but rather open it but a little at each place; and, in a day or two after, if that is not sufficient, cut it down a little more.

But in doing all this, take care to leave so much of the bottom of the pod intire as will answer the purpose of keeping all the petals, or flower-leaves, regularly together.

Remember that the carnation plants in pots, should, where it was not done in May, be now placed upon the stage; but the top of the stage must not be covered until the flowers are opened, and then the cover must be constantly kept on, to defend them from the fierce sun, and from heavy rains.

The pots must be pretty often watered; they will require it, at least, three times a week. The rule is, to keep the earth a little moist; that is, in a middling degree.

Likewise, let the flower-stalks of these plants, as they rise in height, be neatly tyed up to the sticks. The stalk should be tyed in several places, bringing it to touch the stick; but do not tie it too strait.

*Carnation*



*Carnation and Pink Seedlings.*

The carnation plants and pinks, raised this year from seed, will be ready, by the middle of the month, to be removed from the seed-bed into a nursery-bed.

Prepare for that purpose, a bed or two of good earth, three feet and a half broad; break the clods well, and rake the surface of each bed even.

In each bed, put in six rows of plants by line, placing them six inches asunder, in the row. Water them gently, as soon as planted; and, in dry weather, repeat the waterings, at least, once every two days, till they have taken good root.

In ten or twelve weeks time, they should be removed again into another bed; they are then to be planted a foot asunder each way. Some of them may also, at that time, be planted out into the borders, among other plants.

They will all flower next year, and, when in flower, should be examined with good attention, but in particular the carnations: for out of the whole, there will no doubt be some new, and also very good flowers; and these are to then be increased by layers, according to the general method: laying is a sure method to propagate the sorts you desire; for the layers that are layed this year will flower next summer, and produce the same flower in every shape and character as the mother plant: but it is not so with the seed; for if you sow the seed of the finest carnation, there will sometimes arise from that if of one single flower, several, all differently marked, and perhaps not one like the original, nor any that can be reckoned very good flowers; and, on the contrary, there will sometimes as abovesaid, come many new and valuable flowers from seed: so that sowing some seed every year, is the only way to obtain new variety.

*Laying Carnations.*

Propagate carnations by layers. This work is generally begun about the middle of this, and continued, according as the plants are fit, till the end of next month.

The general method of performing the operation of laying these plants, is this:

In the first place, provide some rich light earth, in a barrow, or basket, and a parcel of small hooked sticks, or pegs, together with a sharp penknife.

Having these ready, clear away weeds, and any litter about the plants; then stir the surface of the earth a little; and then lay thereon as much of the new earth as will raise the surface round each plant to a convenient height, so as to receive the shoots, or layers, readily.

When this is done, proceed to prepare the shoots in order for laying. They must be prepared in the following manner:

Pull off the leaves on the lower part of the shoot; but let those which grow upon the head of the shoot, remain; only cut two inches, or thereabout, off their tops. Then, about the middle of the shoot, fix upon a joint, and placing the knife on the under side of it, slit the shoot from that joint, rather more than half way up, towards the next above.

Then make an opening in the earth, and immediately lay in the shoot, and secure it there with one of the hooked stick. Mind to raise the shoot gently up, so as to make the head of it stand as upright as possible; and see that the slit be open; then cover up the body of the shoot with more of the same mould; and in that manner proceed till all are layed.

As soon as all the shoots belonging to one plant are layed, give them a gentle watering, which will settle the earth regularly about all the layers.

The waterings should be, in dry weather, often repeated; but let it be done with moderation, and always lightly, so as not to disturb, or wash the earth from the layers.

In six weeks time, or thereabout, the layers will be finely rooted, and are then to be taken off from the old roots, and planted, some of the best into small pots, and the rest into nursery-beds, there to remain till October; at which time they may be taken up with balls of earth about their roots, and planted in the borders; or may remain in the nursery-beds all winter, where they can with garden frames, or other covering, be securely and readily protected in time of hard frost, snow, or much rain; and are to be transplanted into the borders the latter end of February, or in March.

*Double Sweet-Williams and Pinks.*

Double sweet-williams and pinks, may also be increased by laying down the young shoots.

The



The shoots of these plants will be ready for laying any time between the middle and end of the month. They are also to be prepared and laid in the same manner as carnations.

The layers of carnations, pinks, double sweet-williams, and the like, raised this year, will all blow next summer.

*Another Method of propagating Carnations and Pinks.*

But there is another method much in practice in propagating carnations and pinks, but particularly the latter, and that is by cuttings, or (according to the gardeners phrase) by pipeing, which is thus performed :

About the middle or latter end of this, or beginning of next month, the plants will have made proper shoots for this operation ; however, any time between the middle of June and July, the cuttings may be taken off, observing you are to take only the upper part of that shoot which is to be taken ; and if the piping or cutting hath, when taken off, two joints, it is sufficient ; some florists take them off with a knife, cutting them close above a joint ; and others choose to take them off with the hand only, and the method is this : take the head of the shoot between the ends of your fingers and thumb of your right hand, and with the left hold the lower part of the shoot, then pulling the head of the shoot gently, it will readily part and come out of its socket, about the third joint from the top.

Having procured a quantity, let their tops be trimmed pretty short, and if the bottom of the cutting appear ragged, cut that even ; they must then be immediately planted in a bed, or in pots of light rich earth.

The earth must be broken very fine, and the surface made very smooth, then taking the cuttings one by one between the finger and thumb, thrust them gently near half way into the earth, putting them about an inch, or an inch and a half distant from one another : mind in planting to make no hole to receive the cutting, but only thrust the end gently into the earth, which will make way for itself ; and as soon as a quantity is planted, give them immediately a gentle watering.

They must be shaded from the sun from about nine in the morning, till about five or six in the evening.

If these cuttings were to be covered closely with glasses it would be a great advantage, it would make them take

not very free, and they would be fit to transplant sooner by a fortnight or three weeks than those that are fully exposed.

They must be frequently sprinkled with water, just to keep the earth a little moist, and no more.

Note, Pinks may be propagated by slips; but these should be planted in March, April or May: choosing such slips as are not more than five or six inches long, putting them into the ground, within an inch and a half of their tops, and water them.

#### *Support Flowering Plants.*

Continue to support with sticks, all the tall growing plants, according as they grow up and require it.

This work should be duly attended to, for there is none more necessary, and nothing looks better than to see all the plants standing firmly in their places, and neatly trained with straight and upright stems.

#### *Trimming and ordering Flowering Plants.*

Go round now and then, among the perennial and biennial plants, that are now, and such as are still to come into flower, and trim such of them as want it.

That is, cut off all straggling, broken, and decayed shoots; and, where ragged, or dead leaves appear, pull these off also.

Examine such plants as branch out so as to form heads. They should be somewhat assisted in their own way; that is to say, let all shoots that rise from the main stem near the ground be cut off close: and any shoots from the head, that advance in a straggling manner from all the rest, should also be reduced to order.

Many of the annual plants should be treated in that manner; in particular, the Africans, and French marigolds; and also the chrysanthemums; and such other heads as branch out in the like manner.

For by training these plants up with twelve or fifteen inches of a clear single stem, they will form handsome and regular heads; and will produce much larger and fuller flowers than if suffered to branch out all the way from the bottom.

Cut down the flower stems of all such perennial plants as are past flowering.

In



In doing this, let the stems be cut off close to the head of the plant; and at the same time clear the plants from dead leaves, if there be any such.

But where it is intended to save seeds from any of the perennial or biennial plants as produce such, it will be proper to leave, for that purpose, only some of the principal flower stems, cutting off all such as are weak and fraggling.

#### *Cut Box Edgings.*

Cut box edgings: about the middle of the month is the proper time to begin that work. It should be done in moist weather.

These edgings should be cut very neat; they should not be suffered to grow higher than three inches or thereabout, nor much broader than two.

Where the edgings of box are kept to near that size, they look exceeding neat; but where permitted to grow to five or six inches, or more, in height, and perhaps as much in breadth, they then have a very clumsy appearance.

#### *Clearing the Borders from Weeds, &c.*

The borders in general should now be kept remarkably neat; let no sort of litter be seen upon them, and keep them very clear from weeds.

This should be constantly attended to, never permitting weeds to remain upon any of the borders, especially those near walks; but when weeds appear thereon, let it be always a rule to destroy them while young, either by hand or hoe. Let the hoe be used in dry days, cutting the weeds up clean within the surface; then let the borders be neatly raked.

#### *Evergreens and Flowering Shrubs.*

The clumps or quarters that are planted with flowering shrubs or evergreens, should also be kept exceeding neat, and free from weeds.

Examine the evergreens and flowering shrubs: when they have made any remarkable strong disorderly shoots, they should have the said shoots reduced to order, either by cutting them close, or shortening, as it shall seem most proper; so as to train, or confine the plant to something of a regular form.

#### *Waterings.*

*Waterings.*

New planted shrubs of every kind should still be now and then watered in dry weather, in particular such as were planted late.

Water also, in dry weather, all the pots of double rockets, rose campion, catchfly, campanulus, scarlet lych-nis, and double sweet-williams; and all other plants that are contained in pots.

They will want water at least three times a week, but in particular the small pots; for these containing but a small portion of earth, will consequently require to be often refreshed with water.

Likewise, let the earth in the top of all the pots, be now and then stirred to a little depth; for this will not only appear neat, but will also encourage the plant.

Remember also to give water in dry weather to the seedling auriculas, and polyanthus, and also to all other seedling plants.

*Auricula Plants.*

The auricula plants in pots should, where it was not done last month, be now placed upon a clean spot in the shade; but not under trees, &c.

The pots must in dry weather be often watered; the plants kept clean from decayed leaves, and the pots from weeds,

*Mow Grass Walks and Lawns.*

Mow grass walks and lawns duly according as they want it.

Let them be mown generally about once a week; and, if this be done in a compleat and neat manner, it will, even in a moist season, keep almost any walks or other pieces of grass in tolerable good order.

The edges of grass walks and lawns should also be kept cut very close, for this will add greatly to the beauty and neatness of them.

*Gravel Walks.*

Gravel walks should also, at this season, be kept extremely neat and clean; and should be duly and very neatly rolled.

The



The principal walks should be rolled at least twice a week, with an iron, or stone roller. But there is nothing like a good iron roller for that work, for such a roller is not only much easier for men to draw along, but will also make the surface of the gravel appear much smoother than any other.

### The Nursery.

#### *Inoculate Apricots, Peaches, and Nectarines.*

**B**EGIN to inoculate apricots, and also the early kinds of peaches and nectarines. This work may be begun towards the eighteenth or twentieth of the month.

The above trees generally succeed best, when budded upon plum stocks. The stocks should be raised from the stones; and when they are two or three years old, they will be of a right size to bud on.

Mind that the cuttings from which the buds are to be taken, be cut from healthy trees, and such as shoot moderately free.

The method of performing this work, may be seen in the work of next month, in the article Nursery.

#### *Management of Trees which were budded last Year.*

Examine the trees which were budded last summer; some will now have made vigorous shoots, and should be supported.

For that purpose it will be proper to get some stakes about two feet long; drive one to each tree that has made a vigorous shoot; tie the shoot to the stake at two different places, and this will prevent its being broken or separated from the stock by the wind.

Such persons as are desirous of having the above young trees soon to form heads, may, to those as are intended for walks or espaliers, now pinch or stop the young shoots from the bud, to four, five, or six inches; and they will soon put forth three or four shoots near the stock, which is the proper place to form a wall tree.

But this work of pinching the young shoots should be done the beginning of the month.

*Grafted Trees.*

Look also to the grafts ; and, where any have made vigorous shoots, let some stakes be driven into the ground, and then let the strongest shoots be tyed up neatly to them.

*Inoculate Roses.*

Inoculate roses : this is often practised upon some of the curious sorts, which cannot be encreased by the general method ; that is, by suckers from the root ; for there are some kind of roses that produce no suckers.

Therefore, where an encrease of such kinds is wanted, it must be produced by inoculation ; and this is the most proper time to do it.

They must be budded upon some of the common rose stocks, but the best for stocks are, the Frankfort rose, and the damask kinds.

*Propagate hardy Exotic Trees, &c.*

Make layers of hardy exotic trees. This may be practised this month, on many of the hard wooded exoticks, and other trees and shrubs, in particular the evergreen kinds.

But take notice, it is the young shoots of the same summer's growth that are now to be layed. Therefore, having fixed on the plant, let such branches as are furnished well with young wood be brought down gently to the ground, and secured there with hooked sticks : then let all the young shoots on each branch be laid, covering them two or three inches deep with earth ; but leave at least two or three inches of the top of each shoot out of the ground.

They must be watered in dry weather ; that is, the earth about the layers must be kept always a little moist, but not wet ; and, if this is well observed, many of the layers will be well rooted by Michaelmas or thereabout.

By this practice of laying the young wood, you may propagate almost any such trees or shrubs as you desire : but it is chiefly for the hard wooded kinds of evergreens, or others which do not put out roots freely from older shoots or branches ; but such trees as shed their leaves, and even for evergreens whose wood is soft, it is best, for the generality, not to lay them till after Michaelmas, or

*Watering*



in February or March; choosing at these times the last summer's shoots.

*Watering Seedling Trees, &c.*

Give water in dry weather to the beds of all seedling trees and shrubs.

This should be particularly practised to the beds of seedling exotick plants, and to young cedars, cypresses, pines, firs, and junipers; also to bays and hollies, evergreen oaks, and arbutus; and to all other evergreen seedling plants.

But in watering these young plants, let some care be taken; that is, do not water them too hastily, lest you wash the earth away from their roots, which are yet but very small and tender. Two or three moderate waterings in a week will be enough, and the evening is the proper time to do that work.

*Shade Seedling Plants.*

The beds of some kinds of seedling plants should also be shaded in very hot days from the sun; but in particular the tender kinds of exoticks, especially the evergreen plants.

But they must not be shaded too close, nor yet too long at a time; for that would draw the plants up weak, and make them too tender. The proper time is from about eleven till two or three o'clock, or thereabouts.

*Weeding young Plants.*

Weed also with great care the seed-beds of young plants of every kind; for weeds will at this time rise as fast as in April and May, and no labour should be spared to destroy them in time before they grow large: but, above all, among the seedling plants; for there they are most liable to do the greatest damage.

*Watering new planted Trees, &c.*

Water new planted trees; that is, such as were planted late in the spring. They should, where time will permit, be watered, in dry weather, about once a week, all this month.

Do not forget, however, to give water now and then to the choicest evergreens which were transplanted in March and April.

Like-

Likewise, let some mulch be kept upon the surface of the ground, about the choicest kinds of new planted trees and shrubs; for this is certainly of very great service. It will not only save some trouble in watering, by its preserving the moisture longer in the earth, but it will also protect the roots from the drying winds and sun; by which means the plant will be able to shoot with more vigour, both at root and top.

Observe, therefore, whether the mulch laid some time since about new planted trees be much wasted: if it be, let some that is fresh be added, in particular, to the choicest plants, and such others as were planted late.

#### *Transplanting Pines or Firs.*

Transplant some of the young pines which were raised this season from seed.

This must not be done till the last week in the month; for the plants will not be fit to bear removal till about that time.

Prepare for them some beds about three feet broad, and prick the young plants therein about three inches asunder every way, and then let them be watered.

They must be shaded from the mid-day sun, till they have taken root, which is to be done by fixing some hoops across the bed; and every sunny day let mats be drawn over the hoops about ten o'clock, and taken off again about three or four.

Where this is duly practised, the plants will soon take root; and those which are pricked out at this season will get strength by Michaelmas to enable them to endure the winter's cold better than if they were to remain in the seed-bed.

The pricking out these plants at this season should be particularly practised where the plants stand very close in the seed-bed.

---

#### The Green-House.

**B**RING out all such plants as are still remaining in the green-house. And let this be done in the first week in the month.

When.



When the plants are all brought out, let them be immediately cleared from dead or decayed leaves, and cut out all broken branches and dead wood.

Then let the earth in the top of all the pots be stirred; and, where it was not done last month, let a little of the earth be also now taken out of each pot, and then fill up the pots again directly with some new compost, and give each a little water.

When this is done let the head of each plant be immediately watered all over, for this will cleanse the leaves and branches from dust, and will also refresh the plants, and make them appear lively and more agreeable to be seen.

*Management of Orange and Lemon Trees when brought out.*

Take care of the orange and lemon trees. They will be now in bloom, and should be properly encouraged.

They should be well supplied in dry weather with water. It should be given to these plants in a dry season, about three times a week, but once every two days will not be too much.

And to encourage these plants to shoot and flower strong, it will be proper to bestow one more little dressing upon them, as soon as they are brought out of the house.

That is, let the earth in the top of the tubs or pots be once more carefully stirred up and broken, and then over this spread a sprinkling of new mould; when that is done, give a light watering to settle the earth again close to the roots of the plants.

*Care of Orange Trees in Bloom.*

Examine also the quantity of bloom upon the orange and lemon-trees. They generally produce much more than is proper to be left to come to fruit; and this must now be regulated by taking off many of the blossoms,

But this must be done with care and regularity. In the first place observe the condition of the tree; and, according to its strength leave a greater or lesser number of blossoms upon it. Leave none but what are upon strong branches, and these must be regularly thinned, leaving the largest blossoms, and such as are best situated upon the branches.

By

By this practice of taking off the greatest part of the orange blossoms, it will be a great advantage both to the trees and fruit; for by leaving only the largest flowers, and these thin and at regular distances, the fruit by that means will also set regularly upon the branches, and will swell more freely; and the tree having but a moderate quantity to nourish, these will certainly grow to a handsome size.

Besides, when the trees are but moderately loaded with fruit, they will continue in health, and will shoot freely and regularly in every part.

*Shifting into larger Pots.*

When green-house plants are in want of larger pots, let them now be shifted into such, this being still a proper time to do that work.

In doing this, mind to shake the plant out of the pot with the ball of earth intire about its roots; and then pare off all the matted roots round the outside of the ball; and take away also some of the old earth equally round the side, and from the bottom; then place the plant into the larger pot, and fill up the pot immediately with the new earth.

After that give some water, this will make the earth settle in properly about the ball, and close it well about all the roots.

When this is done, let the plants be removed to a shady situation, and where it is somewhat defended from strong winds. The plants are to remain there five or six weeks, and then be moved to an open exposure.

*Watering in general.*

Remember now, in dry weather, to let all the green-house plants be properly supplied with water.

They will, in general, want water in dry weather every two or three days, for as their roots are all confined within the small compass of a tub or pot, they consequently can receive no nourishment but from the earth contained therein. It must therefore be a universal rule to keep the earth in the said pots or tubs at this season always moist.

*Clear*



*Clear away decayed Leaves.*

Let no decayed leaves, when seen, remain upon any of the green-house plants; and let no weeds grow in the pots.

*Cuttings of Myrtle.*

Plant cuttings of myrtle; that being the best and most ready method to propagate these plants.

This should be done in the third or fourth week in the month; the shoots will then, and not before, be in right order for cuttings.

In the first place, get some large pots, and fill them with good light earth; then proceed to take off the cuttings.

In choosing the cuttings, mind to take them from such plants as are in health; choose such shoots as are from about three or four to six inches long, and be sure to take such as have some strength.

Having procured such cuttings, pull off the leaves at the bottom of each; that is, clear from the leaves about two thirds of each shoot, then plant them into the pots; plant them about two inches asunder; and plant each cutting full two thirds into the earth; and let them, as soon as planted, be lightly watered.

Then place the pots in a common garden frame, and put on the glasses; but raise or slide them a little way open to admit air. The plants must be shaded with a mat every sunny day from about ten till three or four o'clock; and this must be duly practised, till the plants have taken root; which will be in about five or six weeks time.

Do not forget to give them water; they will want it about two or three times a week, but give a little at each time; for too much wet would destroy the cuttings.

When they have got root, be sure to take away the glasses and all other coverings, that the plants may enjoy the free air.

*Planting Cuttings of Geraniums, &c.*

Plant also cuttings of geraniums; all the sorts of this plant may be increased by that method; and also the African sage tree, amber-tree, cistus's and double nasturtiums; and many other exotick shrubs.

The

The cuttings of these sorts should be about six, seven, or eight inches long; and may be planted in pots, treating them, as abovesaid, in the management of the myrtle cuttings.

But the above cuttings, and many other green-house shrubs, may also be planted in a bed of rich light earth in the common ground. Plant the cuttings in this bed three inches a-part, and put each about two parts out of three into the ground, and water them.

Then the bed may be covered with a common hot-bed frame, or hand-glasses; and shaded every day when the sun shines, from nine in the morning till four o'clock in the afternoon; and this is to be done every day till the cuttings have taken root.

A slight hot-bed would promote the early rooting of the above cuttings.

Remember, however, to water them very moderately about three times a week; and keep them free from weeds.

#### *Propagating Succulent Plants.*

Now is the time to begin to prepare to propagate succulent plants by cuttings.

The sorts commonly raised that way, are euphorbiums and ficoideesses; all the kinds of cereusses, sedums and Indian fig, and such like kinds.

Therefore, where it is intended to propagate any of the above plants, or other succulent kinds, let some cuttings be now taken off from good plants. The cuttings are not to be immediately planted, but must be laid upon a shelf in an airy room. Lay them out of the reach of the sun, and there let them lie eight or ten days; by which time the wound, or cut part at the bottom of the cutting, will be healed up, and they are then to be planted.

Succulent cuttings must never be planted till the wound made by taking them from the mother plant be healed; because, were they to be planted while the wound is green, the very moisture which would come from that part would bring on a mouldiness and rot the cuttings.

But all cuttings do not require to lie the same time; some perhaps six or eight days, and others, ten, twelve, and sometimes fourteen days, and this must be regulated according as the cuttings are less or more succulent.

These



These cuttings must be planted in pots; the pots must be filled with a light dry compost: and, when the cuttings are planted, such pots as contain the hardier sorts, may be placed in a frame without heat; and shaded in sunny days from nine in the morning till four or five in the evening: they will thus take root; in particular the fedums, Indian figs and ficoideffes, and such like plants of the hardier kinds. Defend them from wet by putting on the glasses; which should be constantly kept on, but raised on props to give air.

But the more tender succulent cuttings must have the help of a hot-bed to promote their taking root, particularly the euphorbium, torch thistle; and all the other kinds of ceruses.

A bark hot-bed is the best, into which plunge the pots to their rims. But where such a bed cannot be obtained, make one of new horse-dung. Lay on some earth and plunge the pots in it, put on the glasses, and shade them five or six hours in the middle of the day with a mat.

Give them air every day by raising or sliding the glasses a little open, and give them now and then a little water.

#### *Inarching, &c.*

Inarching may still be performed upon orange-trees where it is desired to propagate them that way.

Lemons may also be inarched now, likewise citrons, pomegranates, and the curious kinds of jasmines may still be propagated by that method of grafting.

#### *Layers of Green-House Shrubs.*

Now make layers of green-house shrubs; there are several sorts that may still be propagated by that method.

The sorts which will readily take this way are, myrtles, and the choicest kinds of jasmines, pomegranates, and also granadilles and oleanders, and many other such like sorts.

Let it be observed, if you now lay the young shoots of the same year, which will be a proper length by the middle or end of the month, they will more readily succeed.

Let therefore such branches as are well furnished with young shoots, be bent down to the earth in the pot, and secured there, and then lay all the young wood.

#### *Transplanting*

*Transplanting Seedling Exoticks.*

Now transplant into larger pots, the exotick plants which were raised this year from seed.

But these plants need not now be planted into very large pots; such as the auricula pots are the proper size. Fill the pots with light earth; and into each pot set one plant, and give it a little water.

Then remember that such pots as contain the tender kinds, must be immediately plunged into a moderate hot-bed. Put on the glasses, and shade them till the plants have taken root.

Let them have fresh air every day by opening or tilting up the glasses; and, about two or three times a week, let them be very moderately watered.

But the hardier kinds will not need the help of a hot-bed; let the pots in which these sorts are planted, be placed in a shady warm spot, in the open air; and they will take root very well with the help of a little water now and then.

## The Hot-House.

**T**HE hot-house will now need to be particularly well attended; the plants will want water, and must have also fresh air. It is, indeed, the principal work now wanting to be done, to supply the plants properly with these two articles.

The pine-apple plants, in particular those in fruit, will now want very regular attendance.

These plants must now, for one thing, be duly supplied with water; they will, in general, require a little every four or five days; but make it a rule, never to give them too much water at one time.

Admit also to the pines, and all other plants in the hot-house, a good share of fresh air.

This must be done every warm day; for, without a due portion of air, the pines will not nourish their fruit well. Therefore, about nine in the morning, let some of the glasses be opened; that is, either draw some of the top glasses



glasses a little down, or slide some of the upright glasses in front, a little way open.

But the glasses must all be shut close every night; and the proper time to shut them is about five or six in the evening.

*Care of the Succession Pine-Plants.*

Take care also of the Succession pines; that is, the plants which are to produce the fruit next year. They must, as well as the plants now in fruit, have a due share of attention.

These plants are sometimes placed in a stove, or pit, by themselves. Where this is the case, mind to allow them every warm day the benefit of fresh air.

They will also stand in need of frequent refreshments of water; they will require it almost as often as the fruiting plants.

# JULY.

## *Work to be done in the Kitchen Garden.*

**N**OW prepare such pieces of ground as are vacant, in order to receive such seeds and plants as are proper to supply the table in autumn and winter.

### *Planting Savoys and Cabbages.*

Get ready, in particular, some good ground, to plant out a principal crop of savoys and winter cabbages.

Let an open spot of ground be chosen for these plants; and let it be properly dug, and immediately put in the plants. Let them be planted about eighteen or twenty inches asunder every way; which, at this season, will be room enough.

### *Planting Broccoli.*

Transplant also a full crop of broccoli. The plants must now be planted where they are to remain; and, for that purpose, dig a piece of the best ground.

Let the plants be set in rows, allowing the distance of two feet between each row; and plant them about twenty inches distance from one another in the row. Give them a little water as soon as planted; and if the weather should prove dry, let the waterings be repeated once every two or three days, till the plants have all taken root.

But these plants, and also cabbage and savoys, and such like, should, if possible, be planted out in a dripping time; which will be an advantage to the plants, and will save much trouble in watering.

### *Sowing Broccoli Seed.*

Now sow also some broccoli-feed. This is to be the last sowing, and should be done some time before the tenth of the month.

This seed should now be sown in a rich spot, where the sun has not much power; and, in dry weather, should be now and then moderately watered; this will bring up the plants soon, and forward them in their growth.

The



The plants raised from this sowing, will be ready to plant out for good, in the latter end of August, or beginning of September, and will produce their heads in April, and at the beginning of May.

*Transplant Endive.*

Plant out now, to supply the table in autumn, a parcel of the strongest endive.

Endive requires good ground; it must be well dug, and the surface raked even; then put in your plants, the distance of a foot every way from one another; and water them as soon as planted. In dry weather, the waterings must be repeated, once in two days, till the plants have taken root.

*Sow Endive-Seed.*

Sow also some endive-seed. This sowing is to raise some plants for the principal winter crop.

For the greater certainty of procuring a regular supply all winter of good endive, it will be proper to sow some seed, at two different times, this month. Let some, therefore, be sown some time between the first and tenth; and sow the next parcel about the eighteenth or twentieth, or between that and the twenty-fourth of the month. Let this seed be sown tolerably thin, in an open rich spot, and rake it in with an even hand.

Let the bed or border whereon this seed is sown, be now and then, in dry weather, watered: this will bring up the plants soon, and they will rise regularly.

*Kidney-Beans.*

Plant a late crop of kidney-beans. Either the dwarf or running kinds may still be planted.

But the seed must be put into the ground the first week in the month, otherwise this crop will not succeed. Let them be planted in a situation where the plants may be somewhat sheltered from the nipping morning frosts, which sometimes happens in September; for this crop will continue bearing, provided the weather keeps any thing mild, till October.

In planting these beans, it will now be proper to observe the following caution.

That is, if the weather be at this time very hot, and the ground also very dry, it will, in that case, be advisable,

before

before the beans are planted, to lay them to soak in river or pond water. Let them be laid in the water, in a morning, and continue there about six or seven hours, and then be immediately planted.

It will also be proper, where the ground is very dry, to water the drills, before you put in the beans.

But it must be observed, that this soaking the beans is only to be practised at times as above said, when the ground is very dry, and the weather also hot and dry; otherwise, it is better only to let the drills be very well watered, and then the beans may be immediately planted, and covered with the earth.

#### *Colliflowers.*

The colliflower-plants which were sown in May, for the autumn crop, must now be planted out where they are to remain.

Let them be planted out in a moist time: plant them in rows, two feet asunder; and allow the same distance between plant and plant, in the row; let them be directly watered, and afterwards, at times, till they have taken good root.

This plantation will begin to produce their heads in the beginning of October, and will continue, sometimes, coming in gradually, till the middle or end of November.

#### *Small Salled.*

Sow, where required, the different sorts of small-salled, herbs; such as cresses, mustard, and raddish.

Where these small herbs are daily wanted, there should, in order to have a constant supply of such as are young, be some seed sown, at least, once every six days, or a week.

This seed must still be sown in a shady border, sow them in drills; and must, in dry weather, be daily watered, otherwise the plants will not come up regularly.

#### *Onions.*

Sow some onions to stand the winter. This must be done in the last week in the month, and not before.

For this purpose, dig a rich spot in a sheltered situation, and divide it into beds three feet and a half or four feet broad. Immediately sow the seed tolerably thick, and let it be raked in. The plants will soon rise, and will get strength by Michaelmas, to enable them to resist the win-

ter's



ter's cold; when they will be very acceptable in the months of March and April, to use in salads, and for other purposes.

Mind, when the plants are come up, to let them be timely weeded; otherwise the weeds, which will rise with the onions, will soon get the start, and destroy the whole crops.

*Carrots.*

In the first or second week in this month, you may, if you choose, sow some carrot seed, to raise some young carrots for the table in autumn.

The carrots raised from this sowing will come into use after Michaelmas, and will be very fine in October and November.

*Transplant Celery.*

Now is the time to prepare some trenches, in order to plant out a good crop of winter celery.

For these plants, let an open spot of rich ground be chosen, and clear it well from weeds; and there mark out the trenches about a foot broad, and allow full three feet and a half between trench and trench. Dig out each trench about one moderate spade deep, but not to shovel out the crumbs, laying the earth that comes out neatly in the spaces between the trenches, observing to lay it equally, and spread it as even as possible: and then lay in the bottom of each trench, some good rotten dung, and dig it in.

Then get the plants; choose the strongest, and trim the ends of their roots; cut two or three inches, or thereabouts, off the tops of their leaves, and then plant them. Plant one row along the middle of each trench, setting the plants five or six inches distant in the row; immediately give some water, and let this be repeated, in dry weather, until the plants have got root.

*Turneps.*

Any time in this month is a fine season to sow turneps, for the service of autumn and winter; that is, the plants raised from this sowing will be in excellent order from about Michaelmas till Christmas. It will be a great advantage, if there falls some rain, to take the opportunity of such times to sow the seed.

In sowing this seed great care should be taken not to sow it too thick: sow it as regularly as possible, and take the same care in raking it into the ground.

This seed is very small, two or three ounces will sow ground enough for a middling family: two ounces of seed will sow at least fifteen or sixteen rod or poles of ground: for when sown in the field, the common allowance is about a pound, or a pound and a quarter, or at most a pound and a half to an acre of ground.

See the turneps which were sown in June: do this in dry weather; cut down all the weeds, and thin out the plants to about seven or eight inches distance.

#### *Plant out Lettuce.*

Transplant lettuces: the coss, and Silesia, and also the common cabbage, and brown Dutch kinds, which were sown last month, will now all want to be transplanted.

Choose for them a spot of the richest ground; dig it neatly, and let the surface be raked even; then put in the plants by line: set them the distance of twelve inches from one another.

Water them as soon as planted; and at times, till they have all taken root.

#### *Sow Lettuce.*

Dig also a spot of rich ground, and sow some lettuce seed. Either the coss, Silesia, or brown Dutch, are still the most proper kinds. Sow some of this seed in the first or second week, and let some more be sown in the last week in the month.

These two sowings will raise a proper supply of good plants, to furnish the table regularly all September, and great part of October; and, if favourable weather, will continue till November.

#### *Sow Winter Spinage.*

Now get ready some ground to sow some winter spinage.

The best sort to sow now, are, the prickly seeded kinds; these being much the hardiest, and best able to endure the cold and wet in winter. But this crop must not be sown till some time in the last three or four days in the month; and even then, is only advised to be sown in such gardens where the soil is cold or poor, or in exposed or cold situations; that the plants may get strength before winter. But



in warm rich soils, the first or second week in August is time enough. See the work of that month.

Choose for this seed a clean well lying spot, that enjoys the winter's sun, and let it be then neatly dug; and, as soon as the ground is dug, sow the seed. Do not sow it too thick, and let it be immediately raked in; or, if you choose, you may first tread in the seed, and then rake the ground.

You may sow in the same spot a little seed of the brown Dutch, or common cabbage lettuce.

### *Turnep-rooted Radish.*

Now is the very best time in the whole year, to sow the turnep-rooted radish.

There are two sorts, one black, and the other white, and are generally known by the name of the black, or white, Spanish radish.

This kind of radish is by many people much esteemed; and the most proper time to sow the seed, is between the tenth and twenty-fourth of this month. It should be sown in an open spot.

When the plants have been some time, they must be hoed out to about five inches distance; they will then have proper room to swell, and will be ready to draw for the table about Michaelmas, and will continue good, especially the black sort, till Christmas; or till hard frosts destroy them, but at the approach of such weather may be taken up, and preserved in sand.

Sow also, where required, the seed of the common sort of radish; but the seed of this kind must not be sown until the last week in this month; the plants will soon come up, and will be ready to draw in the first or second week in September.

### *Sow Cole-Worts.*

This is now the time to sow coleworts. These plants will serve the family well, in the spring, when the favours, and such like greens, are all consumed.

What is to be understood by coleworts, is no other than cabbage plants; which, when their leaves are from about as broad as a man's hand, till they begin to cabbage, are generally cut for use, under the name of coleworts.

To have good colewort plants, sow some of the best sort of Yorkshire, or sugar-loaf cabbage seed; for the common,

open, or field coleworts are now banished most gardens; and the advantage of sowing the above sort of seeds is, that such plants as are not hoed by way of coleworts, may be permitted to stand; and such of them as do not, will cabbage at a very early time.

But if you desire to have coleworts for winter use, you should sow some seed the latter end of June, or the first week in this month; and from that sowing, they will be fit for use early in November and December.

But let it be observed, that if you desire to have the plants principally for spring use, the seed must be sown the third, but, at latest, the fourth week in the month. Dig, for this purpose, an open spot of good ground, and divide it into beds four feet wide. Sow the seed therein, moderately thick, and rake it in regularly.

The plants will come up in about a week, and will be grown pretty strong by September, and are then to be transplanted. They must be planted out in rows, a foot asunder, and must be set about eight inches distant from each other in the row; but see the work of August and September.

#### *Pull Onions.*

Examine, towards the latter end of this month, the forwardest crops of onions. When their leaves begin to wither, it is then the proper time to take the roots out of the ground.

But it is rare that these roots are fit to take up in this month; but, if they be, they must be managed in the following manner.

These roots must be taken up in dry weather; and as you take them up, pull off their leaves, only observing to leave to each onion, four or five inches of the stalk. As soon as taken up, they should be spread to harden, upon a clean and dry spot of ground; and there let them lay, at least, twelve days or a fortnight, remembering to turn them once every two, or three days at least, that they may dry and harden regularly.

When they have lain the proper time, they must then be gathered up in a dry day, and carried into the house.

They must be laid up in a dry and airy room; but let them be first very well cleaned; that is, clear them well from earth, and all loose outer skins; and when thus cleaned, bring them in, and spread them thin on the floor.

Let



Let the windows of the room be kept constantly open, in dry weather, for about a week or so, after the onions are housed; and after that admit no more air that way to them, but keep the windows constantly shut, only observe to turn them now and then, and pick out any that are decayed.

*Pull Garlick and Shallots.*

Pull up also, garlick and shallots, when full grown. This is known by the leaves; for when the root is swelled as much as it will, the leaves will then begin to wither.

*Melons.*

Take care now of the melons; and, in particular, the plants whose fruit are beginning to ripen.

These plants must now be allowed but very little water, for much moisture at this time would spoil the taste of the melons: but, however, in very dry and hot weather, the melon plants, upon some beds, will, notwithstanding, require to be, at times, moderately watered.

Therefore, in watering melons, regard should always be had to the nature of the earth, and its general depth upon the beds. Where there is a considerable depth of good loam upon them, that is, at least, twelve or fourteen inches, the plants which grow upon such beds, should not, when their fruit is full grown, be allowed any more water; for good loam, where there is a tolerable depth upon the beds, will retain a moderate and proper degree of moisture a long time.

There is much advantage in allowing a proper depth of mould upon melon beds, and in having good loam; the plants not only thrive best in such earth; but when there is any proper depth on the beds, the plants will not, at any time, want to be often watered, and the less water there is given to melon plants, the better will the fruit set; and, when ripe, will have a more rich and delicate flavour.

But such melon plants, as grow in common light earth, and where there is withal but a moderate depth upon the beds, will still, in very hot weather, require to be sometimes watered; but this must be done with moderation, and not repeated above once a week.

*To protect Melons from much Rain.*

The weather sometimes happens, at this season, to be very wet; when that is the case, the melon plants should, at such times, be occasionally protected.

The plants which are in frames, can be readily sheltered, in such weather, with the glasses; but the plants which were planted out under hand or bell-glasses, are more exposed, and cannot be so readily sheltered; but as these plants are now full of fruit, all possible means should be used to protect them, when the weather happens at this time to be uncommonly wet.

For the protection of them, that is, the bell or hand-glass melons, there is nothing so proper as the papered frames, such as directed in the former month.

These frames are to be kept constantly over the beds; and they not only defend the plants from cold and wet, but when the weather happens to be very hot, they also answer the purpose of screening the plants from the too great power of the sun; and, at the same time, admit its influence both as to the light and heat, in a proper degree, to promote the growth of the plants and fruit.

But where there is not the convenience of such frames, let some other method be practised, to defend the bell-glass melons.

For one thing, let the fruit, or, at least, as many of them as are swelled, or are swelling, be covered with the bell glasses; that is, either move the fruit carefully under their own glasses, or, where there is any spare glasses, let them be brought and placed over the best fruit.

The next thing to be practised, for want of better conveniences, to protect the bell-glass melons, is this:

When the weather proves, at this time, to be very wet, or cold, let some hoops be carried over the ridges, or beds, placing them sixteen or eighteen inches distant from one another; and then, at times, when it rains hard, or in cold nights, let some large and thick mats be drawn, at such times, over the hoops; or, where it can be procured, some painted canvas: such as might be made out of old sail cloth, would do for this purpose better than mats.

But these kinds of covering are only to be used occasionally; and should not be suffered to be on longer than just to defend the plants from heavy rains, and when there happens to be a cold night.

*Cucumbers.*



Cucumber plants now also demand care, and none more than those which were planted under hand or bell glasses.

These plants will now be in full bearing, and therefore must be well supplied, in dry weather, with water. They will require it, in a dry time, at least three times a week; that is, to give them a moderate watering once every other day.

Where these plants are properly supplied, in dry weather, with water, and kept clear from weeds, they will continue to bear handsome and well-tasted fruit, till the middle of September.

#### *Cucumbers for pickling.*

Take proper care also, of the cucumber plants which were sown in the natural ground to produce picklers.

Their vines will now begin to advance, and should be laid out in regular order: but where it was not done before, it will first be proper to dig the ground neatly between the holes of these plants; but take care not to go so near as to break or disturb their roots; and as you proceed in digging, let the vines be, at the same time, laid out in a neat manner, at regular distances; observing to lay some earth between the plants, pressing it down gently, in order to part, and make them spread different ways, as you would have them run; mind also to draw the earth up round each hole, to form a basin, to contain the water when given in dry weather.

This digging will be a great advantage to the plants; for they will soon send their roots into the new broken earth, and the effects of it will soon appear in the strength and fruitfulness of their vines.

These plants must also, in dry weather, be duly supplied with water; they will require it at such times every other day, at least.

#### *Artichokes.*

Artichokes now come fast into use, and the plants must be managed in this manner:

In the first place, it will be proper to observe, that if you desire to have large artichokes, you must, in order to encourage the main head, cut off all the suckers or small heads which are produced from the sides of the stems; and these in some families are dressed for the table.

Likewise observe, that as soon as the artichoke (that is, the principal head) is cut, to let the stem be immediately broken down close to the ground. This practice is, by many people, utterly disregarded; but it should not; for the stems, if permitted to remain, would greatly impoverish the roots, and injure them much more than is generally imagined.

*Cardoons.*

Where cardoons are wanted, and where they were not planted out last month, it should now be done the first week in this.

*Gather Seeds.*

Gather seeds of all sorts according as they ripen.

Let this be done always in perfect dry weather; and as soon as they are cut, let them be spread immediately in a dry place, where the air can freely come. There let them lay to harden, observing to turn them now and then; and when they have laid a fortnight, or three weeks, they may then be beaten out, and well cleaned from the husks and rubbish, and put up in boxes, or bags.

*Leeks.*

Transplant leeks; choose a piece of good ground, and it will be an advantage to the plants, to dig in some thorough rotten dung.

When the ground is dug, mark out beds four feet broad.

Then get the leeks: choose the strongest plants, and trim the roots, and cut off the tops of their leaves; then plant them, observing to put six rows in each bed, and set the plants the distance of six inches from one another in the rows.

*Herbs for drying.*

Gather mint and baum, as also cardus, and all such kinds of physical and pot herbs as are now in flower, in order to dry, to serve the family in winter.

These kinds of herbs should always be cut for the purpose of drying, when they are in the highest perfection, which is when the plants are in flower. Let them be cut, in dry weather, and spread, or hung up in a dry airy place, out of the reach of the sun; and there let them dry gently; for they should be always dried in the shade.



*Herbs to distil.*

Likewise gather herbs to distil. Many of the proper kinds will be now in flower, and that is the proper time to cut all such herbs as are intended for the purpose of distilling.

*Plant Sage.*

Plant slips of sage, where it was omitted in the former months, and also, the slips of hyssop. Winter savory, and such like herbs, may still be planted, and will succeed.

Choose such slips as are about six or seven inches long; they must be planted in a shady border, and, in dry weather, and must be often watered.

In planting the slips or cuttings of any of the above kinds of plants, mind to take such as have strength, and put them at least two thirds of their length into the earth.

*Gather Flowers of Physicall and Pot-Herbs.*

Gather, about the latter end of this month, some chamomile flowers, and the flowers of marigolds and lavender, to lay up for the future service of the family.

Let them be gathered in a dry day, and spread to dry in a shady place; then put them up in paper bags till wanted.

*Watering.*

Watering should, at this time, be duly practised, in dry weather, to all such plants as have been lately planted out, till they have taken root.

This work should, at this season, be always done in a morning or in an evening. The proper hours are, in a morning, any time between sun-rising and eight o'clock; and between the hours of four and eight, or nine, in an evening.

*Clear the Ground.*

Clear the ground now from the stalks of all such plants as have done bearing.

In particular, clear away the stalks and leaves of the early crops of colliflowers, and let the piece be hoed and made perfectly clear from all manner of rubbish and weeds.

Likewise pull up the stalks and haulm of such beans and peas as have done bearing, and all such other plants as are past service; and let all weeds be at the same time cleared off the ground.

The ground will then appear neat, and will also be ready to dig, in order to be sown or planted with autumn or winter crops.

It is also a great advantage to kitchen ground to be timely cleared from the rubbish; for the stalks of some plants continue to draw nourishment, which, together with the weeds, would greatly exhaust the ground.

## The Fruit Garden.

### Wall-Trees.

**I**N gardens where there are wall-trees that have not yet had their summer pruning and nailing, that very needful work should now be done in the beginning of the month; otherwise, the fruit upon such trees, will not only be small and ill grown, but will also be very ill tasted, in comparison to the true flavour of these fruit.

And, besides retarding the growth, and debasing the taste of the fruit, it is also detrimental, in a very great degree, to wall and espalier trees, to neglect the summer ordering and nailing, entirely till this time; and in particular to apricots, peaches, nectarines, and such like trees as produce their fruit principally upon the one year old shoots.

There is a very great advantage in beginning betimes in the summer, to train the useful shoots in a proper direction; and at the same time to clear the trees from all ill placed and luxuriant wood; for when the useless wood is timely cleared out, and the useful shoots laid in close and regular to the wall, the sun, air, and gentle showers, will have all along proper access, not only to promote the growth, and improve the flavour of the fruit, but also to harden or ripen the shoots properly, which is absolutely necessary to their producing good fruit and proper wood next year.

But, however, where there are wall-trees still remaining unregulated, do not fail to let that be done in the beginning of this month.

In doing this observe, as said in June, to clear out all luxuriant wood; and all foreright and other ill placed shoots are also to be displaced; but mind in particular to

leave



leave in the apricot, peach and nectarine-trees, as many of the well placed moderate growing shoots as can be conveniently laid in; and let them, at the same time, be all nailed in close and regular to the wall.

Do not shorten any of the shoots at this time, but let every one be laid in at its proper length.

Look also again over such wall and espalier trees as were ordered and nailed in the two last months; and see if all the proper shoots which were laid in last month keep firm in their places; and where there are any that have been displaced, or are loose, or project much from the wall, let them be now nailed in again close in their proper position.

Likewise, observe if there have been any straggling shoots produced since last month, in places where not wanted, and let them now be displaced.

#### *Management of Fig-Trees.*

Now begin to nail fig-trees; nail in as many of the shoots of these trees at this time as you can conveniently. Lay them in strait and regular, and do not top or shorten any of them. See the work of August.

#### *Vines.*

Vines should also be now looked over again, in order to clear them from all such shoots as have been produced since last month.

In vines, many small shoots generally rise, one at least from every eye of the same summer's shoots, which were laid in a month or two ago; and the said small shoots, must now, according as they are produced, be all as duly displaced.

All other shoots wherever placed, that have been lately produced, must also now be rubbed off close; and all such shoots as shall rise any time this month, should, as they come, be continually taken off.

Where this is observed and duly practised, the bunches of grapes will be large and perfectly grown; and every bunch will also ripen more regular and sooner by at least three weeks, than where the vines are neglected, and permitted to over-run with useless shoots.

*Destroy*

*Destroy Wasps and other Insects.*

Now hang up in the wall-trees some vials filled with sugared water, in order to catch and destroy wasps, and other devouring insects, before they begin to attack the choice fruit.

Let at least three such vials be placed in each of the largest trees; and, even in the lesser trees, there should not be less than two vials hung up in each; and this should be duly practised in the peach and nectarine-trees, and such like choice kinds.

Where this is timely done, it will be a great protection to the choice fruit; for the insects, which will now begin to swarm about the wall trees, will, by the smell of the liquor, be decoyed into the vial, and be drowned.

The vials should be often looked over in order to empty out such insects as are from time to time caught therein. They should also be often refilled with a fresh quantity of the abovesaid sweetened water.

*Destroy Snails.*

Continue to destroy snails. Search for them early in a morning, and in an evening, and after showers of rain.

These vermin do most damage to the choice wall-fruit; and now in particular to the apricots, peaches, and nectarines; which trees should now be often and diligently looked over, in order to take and destroy them.

*Budding.*

Bud in general apricots, peaches and nectarines, plums, cherries and pears.

That work may be done any time in this month, but the sooner the principal budding is done the better.

Let every sort be budded upon its proper stock; apricots, peaches, nectarines and plums, should be budded upon plum stocks. They generally make the strongest, and most lasting trees, when budded upon stocks raised from plum stones.

Pears may be budded upon pear stocks; and these must be raised by sowing the kernels. Pears also succeed well, in particular for the wall, when budded upon quince stocks.

Cherries are to be budded principally upon cherry stocks, which must be also raised by sowing the stones.

Such cherries, plums, or pears, as were grafted in the spring and miscarried, may now be budded with any of the



the same kinds of fruit; for these trees will succeed either by grafting or budding.

Budding generally succeeds best when performed in cloudy weather, or in a morning or an evening after three or four o'clock; for the great power of the mid-day sun, is apt to dry the cuttings so much, that the buds would not readily part from the wood.

In performing this work it must be observed, that where the trees are to be raised for the wall or espalier, the budding must be performed low in the stock; that is, the height of five or six inches from the ground; but for the method of performing this work, see the work of the nursery for this month.

Budding may also be performed now upon trees that bear fruit.

What is meant by this, is, where there are wall or espalier trees, that produce fruit not of the approved kinds, such trees may now be budded with the sorts desired, and the budding is to be performed upon the shoots of the same summer's growth.

Several buds may be put into every such tree, by which means the wall or espalier will be soon covered with the desired kinds, and in two or three years after budding, will begin to bear.

## The Pleasure, or Flower Garden.

*Cockscombs, Tricolors, and other curious annual Plants.*

**B**RING out now the cockscombs, tricolors, double balsams, and all other curious annuals as have been kept till this time in drawing frames or in glass cases.

When they are brought out let them be immediately well cleared from all decayed leaves; and at the same time stir the earth a little in the top of the pots, and then add a sprinkling of sifted earth over it.

When this is done let every plant be immediately supported with a stake of a proper height, particularly the combs, tricolors and other tall plants. Let one handsome strait stake be fixed in each pot, and let the stem of the plant be tyed neatly to it in different places.

Then

Then let every plant be immediately watered, not only the pots, but let the water be given all over the head of the plants: this will refresh them and cleanse their leaves from dust, and the whole will make every plant appear lively and decent; they are then to be placed where they are to remain.

They must, in dry weather, be very doly supplied with water; and this must be practised in general to all such annualls as are planted in pots.

*Transplant Annuals into the Borders, &c.*

Where there are any of the common or any other kinds of annual plants still remaining in the seed-bed, or in the nursery-bed, wherein they were pricked from the seed-bed, they should in the beginning of the month be taken up with balls, or at least with as much earth as you can about their roots, and planted in the border or places allotted for them to blow.

Let every plant as soon as planted be immediately watered, and such as have long stems must be supported with stakes.

*The Care of choice Carnations.*

Continue the attendance and care of the choice kinds of carnations.

Observe their flower-pods; and, as they begin to break, let them be assisted by opening the pods deeper, in the manner as directed in the former month: this is very necessary to promote their regular spreading; for in this consists the principal beauty of the choice carnations.

To preserve carnations longer in beauty, they should when in bloom, be protected from wet and the mid-day sun.

The most ready method to do this is to place the pots where they can be occasionally shaded and sheltered; but curious persons place these pots on a stand or stage; this is a wooden building, with a platform for the pots, about two feet high, and wide enough to contain two or three rows of them, the length in proportion to the number of pots, and it is proper to have the top of the stage covered; but this cover must be supported at a convenient height, so as not to hide the flowers, or draw them up weak. For that purpose let a light frame of open work be made in the manner of the roof of an house, or it may be made arch ways,



ways, and make it just the breadth and length of the stage. This kind of roof is to be placed over, and supported upon a row of posts on each side of the stage; or may be contrived to be supported upon only one row of posts, which must be erected just along the middle of the stage.

The posts must be about two or three inches square, and must stand about five or six feet asunder. They must also be of a proper height, so as to support the roof in such a manner as to defend the flowers from wet, and the scorching heat of the sun; and at the same time to admit of viewing them with pleasure.

The roof is, when the plants are in bloom, to be covered with painted canvas or oiled paper; or, for want of these, with some large thick garden mats.

Do not forget to refresh the pots duly with water; in very hot weather they will require a little once every other day.

The sensitive plants, if you raised any, should now be again plunged in a moderate heat under glasses to forward them, except you have the conveniency of a hot-house, where you may keep them constantly in the bark-bed.

But those who have no such conveniency, must, as above, place the pots containing them on a moderate heat, or at least must be kept continually under glasses, either in a green-house, glass-case or garden frame; but in winter they must be kept constantly in a hot-house, or on any hot-bed where a constant good heat is kept up.

Those plants are singularly curious on account of their leaves, which on the least touch immediately drop and quickly contract themselves, and do not rise or recover again in less than an hour.

*Lay Carnations and double Sweet-Williams.*

Continue to lay carnations to propagate them; and also double sweet-williams.

This work may be performed any time this month, but the sooner it is done the better; and in doing it the same method is to be practised now in every article as directed in June.

Examine the layers from time to time, and see they keep securely in their places; when they have started, let them be pegged down again in their proper position.

Let

Let them in dry weather be often watered, and let this always be done with moderation.

*Transplant Carnation Layers.*

Take off and transplant such carnation layers as were laid about the middle or towards the latter end of June. They will, by the last week in this month, be tolerably well rooted.

Let them at that time be examined, and if they have made tolerable roots, let them be taken off with great care. When they are taken up let the lower part of the stalk be cut off close to the slit part of the layer; and cut off the top of the leaves, and let them be immediately planted.

The layers of the choicest kinds may be planted singly in small pots, and when planted let the pots immediately in a shady place, and let them be from time to time moderately watered till the plants have taken fresh root.

They are to remain in the small pots till the beginning of March, and then to be planted into the large pots, where they are to remain to blow.

But the layers of the common kinds of carnations, should, when taken off, be planted in a bed of rich earth. Let the bed be three feet broad, and rake the surface even; and then plant the layers in rows, setting them about five or six inches asunder; and let them be directly watered.

Let them remain in this bed to get strength till October, observing to weed and water them occasionally till that time; they are then to be taken up with balls and planted in the borders.

*Transplanting Perennial Plants.*

Transplant, where it was not done in June, the perennial plants which were sown in March or April.

The wall-flowers, and rock July flowers, in particular, will now want transplanting from the seed-bed, and also the sweet-williams, columbines, Canterbury or pyramidal bell-flowers, with the Greek valerian, tree primrose, single scarlet lychins and rose champions; French honey-suckles and hollyhocks; and all others of the perennial and biennial kinds.

They must now all be planted in nursery-beds. Prepare some beds for that purpose three feet and a half broad, rake



rake the surface even, and then immediately put in the plants, each sort separate; plant six rows in each bed, and place the plants about six inches asunder in the row.

They must be watered as soon as planted, and occasionally till they have taken root. They will get strength by October, at which time they are to be taken up with balls and planted in the borders.

#### *Auricular Plants in Pots.*

Look now and then to the choice auricular plants in pots. When dead leaves at any time appear upon the plants, let them be immediately taken off, and let no weeds grow in the pots.

The plants will also in dry weather require to be pretty often watered, and this must not be omitted.

#### *Transplant the Seedling Auriculas and Polyanthus.*

Transplant the seedling auriculas which were sown last autumn, or early in the spring, as also the polyanthus as were sown in the spring season; for it is now time to remove them out of the seed-bed.

Choose a spot for them well defended from the mid-day sun. Let the ground be very neatly dug; rake the surface even, and immediately put in the plants.

Let them be planted about four inches asunder each way, observing to close the earth very well about them; and let them be gently watered. They must after this be kept clear from weeds, and, in dry weather, should be moderately watered every two or three days during the summer season.

#### *Take up Bulbous Roots.*

Take up bulbous roots; many sorts will now be past flowering, and their leaves will be decayed, and should then be taken up in order to separate the off-sets from the principal roots.

The crown imperials, red lilies, bulbous iris's and narcissus's, and many other bulbs, will now be in a condition for this practice.

Let them be taken up in a dry time, and, after separating the off-sets, the principal roots may be then either planted again immediately, or may be properly dried and cleaned, and put up till October or November; when the borders

borders can be conveniently dug, then the roots can be regularly planted.

The small off-sets which are taken at any time from bulbous roots, should, as many as you want, be planted by themselves in a nursery-bed, and there remain a year or two to gather strength, and then are to be planted out among the other proper roots in beds or borders.

#### *Scarlet Lychnis, &c.*

The double scarlet lychnis, and several other plants of the like kind, may still be propagated by cuttings.

The cuttings are now to be prepared and planted in the manner as mentioned in the former month, and to be treated in every respect as there directed; but they must be planted in the beginning of the month, that they may have time to make proper roots before winter.

#### *Mow Grass Walks and Lawns.*

Mow grass walks and lawns; and let this be duly performed about once a week, which will keep the grass in general in tolerable good order.

The grass should also be now and then rolled: this is necessary to render the surface firm and even; and where it is performed in a due and proper manner, is a vast addition to the neatness and beauty of the plats or walks.

Proper rolling also renders the grass much easier to be mown. The mowing can be performed with more exactness and expedition.

#### *Gravel Walks.*

Gravel walks should also be kept exceeding clean and neat. Let no weeds grow; nor suffer any sort of litter to be seen upon them; and let them be also duly rolled.

To keep these walks any thing neat, they should, at this season, be always rolled at least twice every week.

#### *Cut Box Edgings.*

Continue to cut edgings of box where it was not done the former month.

Let this be done in a moist time, for when box is cut in dry hot weather, it will turn brown and make a very shabby appearance; observe in cutting these edgings to keep them pretty low, and do not let them get too broad.

Never



Never let them grow higher than three or four inches at most; and very little broader than two, and they will then appear neat.

#### *Clip Hedges.*

Now begin also to clip hedges. In doing this work it should be observed, that such hedges as are trimmed in the beginning of this month, will need to be cut again in six weeks or two months time, or thereabouts.

Therefore, where only one trimming in a season is intended, it will in that case be proper not to begin to clip such hedges until the end of this month, or rather the beginning of August.

But where there are horn-beam, elm, lime, thorn, or such like hedges in gardens, either by way of fence or ornament, they should, in order to keep them perfectly neat and close, be clipped twice in the summer.

The first trimming should be performed about Midsummer, or within a fortnight after that time; and the second should be done in the middle or towards the latter end of August.

#### *Destroy Weeds in the Borders.*

Destroy weeds in the borders, and let this be always done in due time, particularly let none stand to come to seed.

The borders, in particular, next the walks, should be at all times kept very clear from weeds, and from all manner of rubbish.

When the borders are at any time hoed, let them be immediately raked, in order to draw off the weeds and all other litter; and this will make the surface smooth and clean, and will appear exceeding neat.

The clumps and other places planted with flowering shrubs and evergreens, should also be kept very clean. The ground should, when weeds appear, be hoed, and then neatly raked.

#### *Trimming Flowering Shrubs and Evergreens.*

Look at this time over the flowering shrubs and evergreens; and, with a knife, let such as are grown rude be trimmed.

What is meant by this is, where the shrubs have produced strong and rambling shoots, so that the different shrubs

Shrubs interfere with each other, let the shoots of such shrubs be now either cut out, or shortened in such a manner as to form the head of the plant somewhat regular; and also that every shrub may be seen distinctly without touching one another.

*Supporting Flowering Plants.*

Continue to stake and tie up the stems of such flowering plants as stand in need of support.

There are now many sorts that demand that care, and it should always be done in due time before the plants are broken by the wind, or borne down by their own weight. And in staking and tying up the different kinds, observe, as said in the last month, to let every stake be well proportioned to the height of the plant it is to support; for it looks ill to see the ends of stakes sticking up high above the plant they support.

Observe also to let the stems of the plants be tyed in several places to the stake; and let the tying be done in a neat manner, not suffering long ragged ends of the tying to hang dangling in sight; this is often disregarded, but it has a slovenly appearance.

*Cutting down decayed Flower Stems.*

Go now and then round the borders, and cut down the stems of such flowering plants as are past flowering.

But this is now principally to be understood of the perennial fibrous rooted plants; the bloom of many of these kinds will now be past; and the stems should always, according as the flower decays, be (except where seed is wanted) immediately cut down; then the plant, though past flowering, will appear decent.

Let the stem be cut down close to the head of the plant, and at the same time clear the plant from any decayed leaves.

## The Nursery.

*Budding. Directions for performing the Work.*

**B**UD apricots, peaches, and nectarines. This is now the principal season to perform that work; and let them be budded upon proper stocks.

There



There are no stocks so proper to bud these kinds upon as plums; and these should be raised by sowing the stones. And when the stocks are in the third year's growth, they are then fit to be budded: the rule is, that when they are from about half an inch, or a little less, to about an inch in diameter, in the place where the bud is to be inserted they are then of a proper size.

These stocks may also be raised from suckers which rise from the roots of plum trees.

Bud also plums, pears, and cherries, and let these sorts be also budded upon proper stocks.

Plums should be budded upon plum stocks raised from the stones. Pears succeed best when budded upon quince or pear stocks raised by sowing the kernels; but the quince stocks are to be raised from cuttings, or by layers or suckers from the roots of the trees.

The quince is the proper stock whereon to bud pears as are intended to be dwarfs for walls or espaliers, and those for standards should be budded on pear stocks.

In performing the operation of budding, regard must be had whether the tree is intended to be a dwarf for the wall or espalier, or for a standard; and must be accordingly performed lower, or higher in the stock, but remember that the head of the stock is not now to be cut off.

Where the trees are intended for the wall or espalier, the budding must always be done near the ground; that is, choose a smooth part of the stock at about the height of five or six inches, and in that part of the stock let the bud be put in.

This is the proper height to bud the stocks in order to raise dwarf trees; they will then readily furnish the wall or espalier from the very bottom, with proper bearing wood.

But when it is intended to raise standard trees, the budding may be performed higher in the stock.

To raise standards, the stock may be budded at the height of three, four, and even six feet. But for this purpose mind to choose stocks that are grown to a proper size, for this must always be observed when the stocks are to be budded at that height.

The manner of performing the work of budding, or inoculating, is this:

In the first place be provided with a sharp pen-knife, with a flat ivory haft—The haft should be somewhat taper,

and quite thin at the end; which knife and haft is to be used as hereafter directed: and also provide some new bass mat for bandages; and let this, before you use it, be soaked in water.

In the next place you are to provide a parcel of cuttings from such trees as you intend to take the buds from: these cuttings must be shoots of the same summer's growth, and must be taken from such trees as are in health, and shoot freely; minding to choose such shoots as have strength, and are free in their growth, but not luxuriant.

Having your cuttings, knife, bass, and every thing ready, then proceed in the following manner:

With the above knife make a cross cut in the rind of the stock, minding to make the cut no deeper than the bark; then, from the middle of the cross cut, let another be made downward, about two inches in length, so that the two cuts together form a T.

Then get one of your cuttings, or shoots, and take off the bud in this manner:

You are to begin towards the lower, or biggest end of the shoot; and, in the first place, cut off all the leaves from the said shoot, observing to leave the stalks of them remaining: then, about half an inch, or a little more, below the said bud or eye, make a cross cut in the shoot; and then, placing your knife as much, or rather more, above the eye, cut off the bud, with part of the wood. Then immediately let that part of the wood which was taken off with the bud, be separated from it: this you may readily do with your knife, placing the point of it between the bark and wood at one end, and so pull off the woody part, which will readily part from the bark; then quickly examine the inside of the bud, to see if the eye be left; for if there appear a small hole, the eye is gone with the wood, and is therefore hereby useless: take another; but if there be no hole the bud is good, and is to be immediately inserted in the stock; observing, for the reception of the bud, to raise gently, with the haft of your knife, the bark of the stock, downwards on each side, from the cross cut, and directly thrust the bud gently in between the bark and wood, placing it as smooth as possible; observing, if the bud be too long for the incision in the stock, to shorten it accordingly, so as to make it to slip in readily and lie perfectly close in every part.

Having



Having thus fixed the bud, let the stock in that part be immediately bound round with a string of bass mat, beginning a little below the cut, and proceeding upwards, drawing it closely round to the top of the slit, but be sure to miss the eye of the bud, bringing the tying close to it below and above, only just leaving the very eye open; and this finishes the work for the present.

In three weeks or a month after the inoculation is performed, the buds will have taken with the stock, which is discoverable by the bud appearing plump; and those that have not taken will appear black and decayed: therefore, let the bandages of those which have taken be loosened; and this is done in order to give free course to the sap, that the bud, according as it swells, may not be pinched; for were the bandages suffered to remain as first tyed, they would pinch the buds, and spoil them. To prevent this, it would be most adviseable to loosen them all in about three weeks, or, at farthest, a month after budding; which concludes the work till next March.

At that time, and in the beginning of this month, you are to cut off the heads of the stock, observing to cut them off about a hand's breadth above the bud, and this part of the stock left above the bud, is to serve to tie the shoot to, which the bud makes next summer; for the buds never begin to shoot till the spring after budding.

The general season to bud or inoculate is, from about the middle of June, till near the same time in August, according to the forwardness in growth of the shoots of the different trees you would bud from; and this you may always easily know by trying the buds; and when they will readily part from the wood, as above-mentioned in the work, it is then the proper time to bud the several kinds of fruit, and other trees and shrubs that will grow by that method.

*Examine the Trees which were budded last Summer.*

Look over the trees which were budded last summer, and let all shoots that arise from the stock, besides the bud, be displaced; for these would rob the proper shoot of some nourishment.

*Grafted Trees.*

Grafted trees should also be at times looked over, in order to displace all such shoots as are at any time produced from the stocks.

Examine also, where any of the grafts or buds have made vigorous shoots; and let every such shoot be supported with a firm stake.

*Transplant seedling Firs.*

This is now a proper time to transplant seedling firs and pines.

But this is to be understood principally where the plants stand very thick in the seed-bed; and it is better (though at this season it is attended with trouble) than to suffer them all to remain in the seed-bed till the spring; because they would, where they stand very thick, be apt to draw and spoil one another.

They will succeed very well when transplanted at this time, but only require much care to shade and water them.

Beds must be prepared for them about three feet broad: the surface must be raked even, and then put in the plants about three inches a-part, and let them be immediately gently watered.

The plants must be duly shaded every day from the sun, until they have taken root; and this must not be omitted, otherwise the sun would burn them up.

Let them be also duly supplied with water till they have taken fresh root. The waterings should in dry weather be often repeated, but always very moderate.

They will soon take root, provided they are duly treated as above directed; and will get some strength by Michaelmas to enable them to endure the cold in winter; which they generally do better than those which are permitted to remain in the seed-bed till March.

But, to repeat the caution, be sure to let such seedlings as are transplanted at this time, be properly shaded from the sun, or all will be lost.

*Inoculate Roses.*

Inoculate roses. This is to be understood principally of some of the curious kinds, such as the moss, provence, and others, that produce no suckers; for it is by suckers from the root, that most of the common kinds of roses are propagated.

Therefore, such kinds of roses that send up no suckers, may be propagated by inoculation, and this is the proper time.

The budding is to be performed upon stocks raised from rose suckers taken from any of the common kinds.

Some



July]

## THE NURSERY.

377

Some sorts of roses as do not produce suckers, may also be propagated by layers, which should be layed in the autumn season, or some of the same years shoots may be layed at Midsummer, or a little sooner, and they will sometimes be rooted by Michaelmas.

### *Bud Jasmines.*

Jasmines should also be budded now: this is the most certain method to raise the curious kinds.

The common white jasmine is the proper stock to bud the curious kinds upon; and the budding should be performed in the first or second week in the month.

Some of the curious sorts of jasmines may also be propagated by layers, but they should be layed in the spring, observing to lay the young branches of the last year; or if some of the young of the same year be layed in June, they will sometimes put out roots the same year.

And some of the curious sorts may also be propagated by cuttings, particularly, that called the cap-jasmine, but they should be planted in pots plunged in a hot-bed. This sort must be kept in the green-house all winter.

This is also the proper time to inoculate many other curious kinds of trees and shrubs.

### *Watering.*

Watering in very dry weather must still be duly practised in the seed-beds of all young trees and shrubs.

These beds will, in a very dry time, require to be watered at least once every two or three days; and it will be a great advantage to the young plants in general, provided the waterings be done with moderation; that is, not to water them too heavily, or give too much at any one time.

### *Destroy Weeds.*

Destroy weeds: and let it be done with care and diligence, whenever such appear in the seed-beds of young plants of any kind.

Nothing is so destructive in seed-beds as weeds; they should be therefore always taken out with care; before they grow to any great head; for if permitted to grow large, they will do the young trees and shrubs of every kind more injury in two or three weeks, than they would be able to recover in twelve months.

Let the nursery in general be kept always as clean as possible from weeds; for this will not only be an advantage to the plants, but it also looks well to see a nursery clean.

When weeds appear between rows of transplanted trees, such may be at all times easily and expeditiously destroyed, by applying a good sharp hoe to them in dry days.

One thing is to be particularly observed in the article of weeds, viz. not to suffer any, or any part of the nursery, to stand to perfect their seeds; for, was that permitted, the seeds would shed upon the ground, and lay a foundation for a seven years crop.

## The Green-House.

### *Orange and Lemon Trees.*

**O**RANGE and lemon trees should now be well attended when the weather is dry, in order to supply them with water as often as needful: they will stand in need of this article at least two or three times a week.

Orange and lemon trees, which have now young fruit set upon them, should be looked over with good attention, in order to thin the fruit where they are produced too close to one another.

In doing this, mind to thin them regularly, leaving no two or more fruit too near to one another; nor even so near as to touch when full grown: and let the number of fruit in the different trees be proportioned to the particular strength and growth of each.

Let the fruit be left only on such shoots or branches as have apparently strength enough to bring them to any due size; and let the number of fruit on each branch be proportioned to its strength.

Take care to leave the forwardest, and most promising and best placed fruit: do not leave too many on a weekly tree, but observe a due medium on the most healthy and strongest trees.

Those trees which have now a sufficient quantity of fruit set upon them, should be divested of all flowers, that after making their appearance; there may be no unnecessary growth



growth to exhaust the nourishment, which is now so necessary to the growth of the new set fruit.

*Refreshing the Orange and Lemon Tree Tubs with new Earth.*

Where the pots or tubs of orange trees were not lately refreshed with some new earth in tubs, that work should now be performed; it will be of great use in forwarding the growth of the new set fruit, and it will also greatly enliven the plants, and do them much good.

In doing this, take care to loosen the earth in the top of the tubs to a little depth, and take some out; then fill it up again directly with fresh earth, and give some water.

*Propagate Myrtles, &c.*

Plant cuttings of myrtles to propagate them; also geraniums, and African sages, cistus's, and several other exotic shrubs, which may be propagated by planting cuttings of them any time in this month; but if done the beginning of the month, there will be the greater chance of their succeeding.

These sorts will readily take root in common earth without the assistance of artificial warmth, and particularly most of the shrubby kinds of geraniums; but those sorts as have succulent stalks should be planted in pots, and plunged on a moderate hot bed.

In choosing the cuttings, let them be taken from such trees as are healthy and strong, and shoot freely. Choose proper shoots; these should be principally the same summer's growth, and such as have some strength, and the proper length is from five to about eight inches, but the myrtle cuttings should not be more than from about four to five or six inches long, and must be all the same summer's shoots.

Having procured such, let the leaves be taken off more than half way up; and then plant them.

But although the above cuttings, and several others of the hardier sorts of green-house shrubs, will take root without the help of artificial heat, and particularly as above hinted, all the shrubby kinds of geraniums which will grow in a bed of common earth, yet if planted in pots and plunged in a gentle heat, would greatly forward their rooting.

But, however, when a hot-bed cannot be readily obtained, and that it is intended to propagate the myrtle,

geranium, or any other of the common green-house shrubs by cuttings; let a bed, or otherwise large pots, of rich light earth be prepared.

Into these pots let the cutting be planted, at about two inches distance, putting each cutting so much into the earth, that only about two or three inches of the top may appear.

As soon as they are planted give a moderate watering, and this settles the earth close about every plant.

Then immediately place the pots in one of the common garden frames, and put on the lights, but not quite close, leaving a hand breadth or so open at top.

After this, the cuttings are to be shaded with single mats every day when the sun shines, till they are rooted, and must be moderately watered every two days.

It is the best method to plant the myrtles and all other cuttings of green house plants in pots; and then, if they should not happen to be well rooted before winter, the pots with the cuttings can be moved into the green-house.

The pots for this purpose should be rather of a large size.

They must be filled with rich earth, within half an inch, or an inch of the brim: water them moderately every two or three days, in hot weather.

#### *Succulent Plants.*

This is also a proper time to plant cuttings of most kinds of succulent plants.

Particularly euphorbiums; all the sorts of ficoideæ, and sedums; with the torch thistle; and the other kinds of ceruses, and also the Indian fig; and many other succulent kinds.

The method of propagating these kinds of plants, is easy enough; and it is done principally by cuttings, and the management of them is this:

In the first place, it will be proper to observe, that the cuttings of many of these kinds of plants will take root tolerably free in a bed or pots of light compost, without the help of artificial heat; but yet the assistance of a moderate hot-bed would make them more certainly take root; therefore it will be proper to prepare a hot-bed of moderate substance.

This bed may either be made of dung or bark: bark is the best, but where that is not, dung will do. Make a

bed



bed for a one light box, or some hand-glasses, and cover the dung four or five inches deep with fresh earth.

Next, let it be observed, that as many of these succulent plants differ widely in the manner of their growth, no particular length can be properly assigned the cuttings, but must be taken as they can be found, from two or three, to six, seven, or eight inches in length, according to the growth of the particular plants.

Having fixed upon the cuttings, let them, with a sharp knife, be separated, at one cut, from the mother plant, and let them be immediately laid in a part of the stove where the sun can never come; and there let them lay till the bottom, or cut part, be dried, or healed, over a fire, because, if they were to be planted before that was effected, the moisture from the wound would rot the cutting in that part.

When they have lain ten or twelve days, they will be in a condition to be planted; then let some pots be filled with some dry, light compost. This being done, plant the cuttings in the pots, and close the earth well about them.

Then immediately plunge the pots to their rims, in the hot-bed; put on the glass; and shade them with mats, in the middle of sunny days, till the cuttings are rooted; and give, now and then, a little water.

But some of the hardiest kinds of these plants, will take root in a common bed of rich earth, without heat; but, notwithstanding, a moderate hot-bed will greatly promote the rooting of all the kinds.

#### *Watering the Green-House Plants.*

In dry weather, the green-house plants in general, should be very duly supplied with water, for this now becomes a very needful article to these plants.

Some of these plants will require a little water, in dry weather, every day; particularly the plants in small pots. Others will need a refreshment every other day; and some once in three or four days, according to the size of the different pots, or tubs, and as they are less or more exposed to the sun. Let them, therefore, be looked over every day, and let such as want it, be accordingly supplied with that article.

But let this be now particularly observed, in such places where the plants are exposed to the full sun; for, in such

a situation, the plants will want to be very often watered.

*Clear the Pots from Weeds.*

Let all the pots, or tubs, be now kept very clean; that is, let no weeds, or any sort of litter, be seen upon them.

*Shifting into larger Pots.*

Where any of the green-house plants, young or old, are in want of larger pots, they may still be removed into such.

In performing this operation, mind to take the plant out of the present pot, with the ball entire; and then, with a sharp knife, pare off all the matted roots on the sides and bottom of the ball of earth; and, at the same time, take away some of the old, both from the sides and bottom of the ball.

The ball being thus trimmed, set the plant immediately in the larger pot, and fill up all round with some fresh earth, and then give some water.

The pots are then to be removed to a place where the plants can be defended from boisterous winds, and shaded, the greatest part of the day, from the sun.

*Loosening and giving some fresh Earth to the Pots in general.*

At this time it will be proper to examine the earth in all the pots and tubs; and, where it is inclinable to bind, let the surface be carefully loosened to a little depth, breaking the earth small with the hand; and add, at the same time, a little sprinkling of fresh earth, and then lay the surface smooth.

This little dressing will do the plants, at this time, more good than many people might think; but, in particular, to such plants as are in small pots.

But this might now be practised on all the pots and tubs in general; and it would very much refresh all the different sorts of plants.

*Propagate Green-House Plants by Layers.*

This is still a proper time to make layers of many kinds of exotick shrubs. Let it be observed, it is the shoots of the same summer's growth that are the most proper parts to lay now into the earth.

Many



Many sorts may be propagated by that method, and a trial may now be made on such kinds as you desire to encrease; but let it be done in the beginning of the month.

By that method, you may propagate myrtles, jasmines, pomegranates and grandillas, and such like shrubs.

*Bud Orange and Lemon-Trees.*

About the middle, or towards the latter end of this month, you may begin to bud orange and lemon-trees.

These trees are propagated by inoculating them upon stocks raised from the kernels of the same sorts of fruit; these kernels must be procured in the spring, and such as are found in rotten fruit are as good or rather better than any for this purpose.

These kernels must be sown in the spring; that is, in March, in pots of rich earth; the said pots are to be plunged in a hot-bed; and in a month or six weeks at farthest, the plants will come up, when they must be allowed some air and water at times: in six weeks or two months after the plants are up, they should be transplanted.

They must be planted singly, into halfpenny or three farthing pots, at the same time giving them some water; the said pots are to be plunged into a new hot-bed, observing to give air by raising the glasses, and shade them in the middle of sunny days; the glasses are to be kept over them constantly, till about the first or second week in August; but observing as the plants rise in height to raise the frame, that they may have full liberty to shoot; but in August, as above said, they are to be exposed by degrees to the open air: this must be done by raising the glasses a good height, and afterwards taking them quite away.

With this management you may raise them to the height of eighteen or twenty inches by the middle of August: they must be moved into the green-house, about a week or ten days before Michaelmas, placing them near the windows, and there to remain all winter.

Then in the spring; that is, about March or April, it will be of much advantage to plunge the pots again in a gentle hot-bed, managed as above; it would bring them forward greatly, but observing to begin in May to harden them to the air, and to let them enjoy the full air the beginning of June.

The young plants thus managed, will, in the second summer, be fit to be inoculated, which must be in the third or fourth week in July, or first week in August: at the time of budding it will be proper to take them into a green-house, or where they can be defended from wet, and enjoy the light and plenty of air. When in the green-house, &c. it will be proper to turn that side of the plant where the bud is inserted, from the sun; and if the sun shines freely upon the plants, it will be proper to screen them with mats during the greatest heat.

Some people, in order to make the buds take more freely, plunge the pots into a moderate hot-bed, for a week or two.

The plants must be kept in the green-house all winter; but in the spring, about the month of March or April, a moderate hot-bed, in a glass case, must be made with bark, if it can be had; if not, a bed of hot dung; and lay some earth thereon to plunge the pots in: into either of these beds the pots are to be plunged; observing, at this time, to cut the head of the stock off two or three inches above the bud. In this bed they must be well supplied with water, and there must be fresh air admitted every day, by raising or sliding some of the glasses a little way open. By the middle or latter end of July, the buds will have made shoots perhaps a foot or eighteen inches, and sometimes two feet long, or more, at which time you must allow them more and more free air every day; and so begin, in August, to expose them fully, to harden them, so as to be able to stand in the green-house all winter among the other plants.

---

### The Hot-House.

**E**VERY calm and clear day, admit air freely into the hot-house.

For now, as the pine-apples will begin to ripen, fresh air is a very necessary article. This is needful to improve the flavour of the ripening fruit, and also to promote the growth of those which are still swelling.

The



The pines must also, in general, be very duly supplied with water. They will need it pretty often; but let moderation be at all times observed.

But, in particular, such plants whose fruit are beginning to ripen, must be very sparingly watered; but it will, notwithstanding, be proper to allow them some, tho' too much would very much debase the flavour of the fruit.

*Of propagating the Pine-Apple Plants.*

According as the pine-apples ripen, and are cut, care should be taken immediately of the old plants, to prepare them to produce some suckers, in order to raise a supply of young plants for a new plantation.

Therefore, as soon as the fruit is cut, let the pot, with the old plant, be taken up, and let all the leaves be cut off, within about a hand's breadth of the top of the pot; and at the same time, pull off the under-leaves round the bottom of the plant; and then take a little of the old earth from the top of the pot, and fill it up again with some fresh compost, and give some water.

When this is done, the pot, with the plants, is to be immediately plunged to the rim, in a bark or dung bed, where there is a tolerable brisk heat; and, from time to time, moderately watered.

The old plants, with this management, will soon put out some good suckers; and when they are grown to the length of about four, five, or six inches, are then to be taken off from the mother plant, and prepared for planting in the following manner:

Let them, as soon as taken from the old plant, be laid in a shady part in the hot-house, and let them lie a few days, till the bottom is become perfectly dry and firm; they are then to be planted, and the method is this:

Get some small pots, and fill them with the proper compost: this done, let one sucker be planted in each pot; fix it properly, and let the earth be well closed, and give each a very little water, just to settle the earth equally about the plants.

Then let the pots be directly plunged to their rims in the bark. There should be a tolerable good heat to make them strike.

But some gardeners, for want of other conveniences, make a bed of some new horse dung, to strike their suckers and crowns, and it is a very good method.

This

This bed should be made for a one, two or three, light frame, according to the number of plants. The bed must be made, at least, two feet and a half, or three feet high; and as soon as it is made, put on the frame: and, in five or six days, or, at least, when the burning heat is over, lay in as much bark, either new or old, or any kind of dry earth, as will cover the bed all over, about five or six inches thick.

Then, when the dung has warmed the bark, or earth, let the pots be plunged in it to their rims, and put on the glasses; observing to raise them a little every day, to let out the steam, and to admit air, and shade them from the mid-day sun.

*Crowns of the Pine-Apple.*

The crowns which grow on the top of the pine-apples, are also proper for propagating the plants: these should, when taken from the fruit, be returned, in order to be planted.

These generally make strong and healthy plants: but before the crowns are planted, let them, as soon as taken from the fruit, be laid in a shady place, in the stove, and to remain till the bottom is quite dry, and then planted singly in small pots, and treated just in the manner as directed above, in the management of the suckers.

*Shifting the Succession Pine-Apple Plants.*

Now shift the pines which are to produce fruit next season, into the pots where they are to remain.

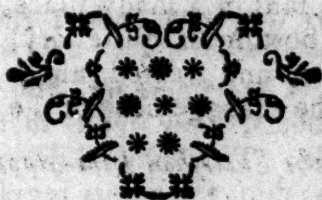
But this need not be done till the last week in the month. Therefore, by that time, let the pots, and a proper quantity of new compost be provided, and brought to the place where the plants are: then, having all things ready, let the pots, with the plants, be taken up out of the bark, and let them be shifted according to the following method:

In the first place, put some compost into the new pot, to the depth of three or four inches. Then let the plant be shaken out of its present pot, with the ball, if possible, entire, and place it immediately into the larger pot, and fill up round the ball with more of the compost, and let the top of the ball be covered with it about an inch deep.

In this manner, let the whole be shifted, and let them be immediately gently watered, and then plunge them directly again into the bark.



But the bark must first be stirred up with a fork, to the bottom; and, at the same time observing, that if the bark is much wasted, or is become very earthy, and not likely to produce a due warmth, you should add about one third, or, at least, one fourth of new bark, working both well together; and then let the pots be plunged to their rims, and let them be placed in a regular manner; that is, place the largest plants in the back row, and so on to the lowest in front.



# AUGUST.

## Work to be done in the Kitchen Garden.

### Winter Spinage.

**N**OW prepare some good ground, where it was not done last month, to sow a full crop of winter spinage.

This must be done some time in the first, or second week in the month. But in poor ground, and cold situations, the seed should be sown in the first week; but in rich, warm ground, it should not be sown till the second week in the month. Choose a piece of rich ground, that lies tolerably dry in winter. Let this be neatly dug, and immediately sow the seed, and tread it in, and then rake the ground.

Observe it is the prickly seeded kind that is to be sown now, for this sort will best endure the cold and wet in winter.

When the plants are come up, and got leaves an inch broad, or thereabouts, they must then be thinned, and cleared from weeds. This may be done, either by hand or hoe, observing to thin the plants regularly, leaving them the distance of four inches, or thereabouts, from one another; they will then have proper room to spread, and gather strength, to be able to endure the cold.

Besides, when spinage is allowed room to spread itself regularly, the plants will produce very large and thick leaves; and every such leaf is worth three that is produced from such plants as crowd one another.

### Cabbage Seed.

Sow early cabbage seed, to produce plants for the service of next summer.

The proper sorts to sow now, are the early sugar-loaf, and early Battersea or Yorkshire kinds.

But this seed must not be sown until some time between the sixth and twelfth of the month: nor must it be sown later; there being an advantage in sowing it just at that time;



time; for, was the seed to be sown sooner, many of the plants would be apt to run to seed in March; and was it to be sown later in the month, the plants would not get proper strength before winter.

Therefore, at the time mentioned, dig an open spot of rich ground, and mark out beds, three feet six inches broad; then sow the seed moderately thick, and immediately rake it in with a light and even hand.

The seed of the long sided and other large late kinds of cabbages may also be sown in the beginning of this month.

But the seed of the late kinds may be sown five or six days sooner than the Yorkshire and other early kinds of cabbages, as they are not so apt to run to seed.

#### *Brocoli.*

Prepare some ground in the beginning of this month to plant out the second crop of brocoli. An open spot, not shaded by trees, should be chosen; and spread some thorough rotten dung over the piece, and dig it in, and this will be an advantage to the plants.

These plants are now to be planted in rows two feet asunder, and allow twenty inches distance between plant and plant in the row, and give each plant a little water.

Draw the earth about the stems of the brocoli which were planted out last month; for this will strengthen the plants, and promote their growth.

#### *Savoys.*

Transplant savoys. Plant them in rows eighteen or twenty inches asunder, and set the plants the same distance from one another in the row. This plantation will come in at a good time, and the plants will be in excellent order to supply the table after Christmas.

#### *Onions.*

Get ready some ground, where it was not done last month, to sow some spring onions.

This must be done in the first, but at farthest the second week in the month: and for that purpose choose a clean dry-lying spot; and when the ground is dug, mark out beds three feet and a half or four feet broad; then sow the seed tolerably thick, but as equally as can be; then tread it in, and rake the ground even that the plants may rise regularly in every part of the bed.

The

The plants from this sowing will supply the table in the spring for sallads, or other uses; they come in about the end of March, and continue till April and May; and if you let some of them stand till June, they will bulb and grow to a tolerable size, but will soon after run to seed.

Sow also some Welch onions: this is done in case the others should be destroyed by the frost; for the Welch onions will survive almost the severest winter; notwithstanding their blades will sometimes die down to the ground in October or November, the roots remain sound, and new leaves will sprout up again in about six weeks after the others are decayed.

Let this sort be also sown in beds as directed above, for it is the best method; then a person can stand in the alleys and readily weed and clean the plants without treading upon them.

These Welch onions never apple or bulb at the roots; but as they are so very hardy as to resist the hardest frost, when the English onions would be all killed, it is therefore adviseable to sow a few of them every year at this time; as they will be found to be very useful in the months of March, April and May; and even continue till the spring sown onions come in.

#### *Carrot Seed.*

Carrot seed should now be sown, to raise some plants for spring use; but the seed for this crop must not be sown till the third or fourth week in this month. The plants raised from this sowing will supply the table at an acceptable time the succeeding spring.

Let this seed be now sown in beds. Do not sow it too thick, and take care to rake it in regularly.

#### *Radish Seed.*

Radish seed may still be sown, to raise some plants for autumn service. Sow it in an open spot; and in dry weather let the bed be sometimes watered. If you sow this seed in the beginning of the month, the plants will be ready about the middle of September; and that sown about the middle, or towards the latter end, will be fit to draw about Michaelmas, and will continue tolerably good all October.

The proper sort of radish seed to sow, at this time, for an autumn crop, is the salmon or scarlet kind.

*Colliflower*



*Colliflower Seed.*

Colliflower seed should be sown towards the latter end of this month, to raise some plants to produce an early crop next summer.

The proper time to sow the seed is some time between the eighteenth and twenty-fourth of the month; and it must not be sown sooner than that time, otherwise the plants will be apt to button (as it is called) or flower, in winter, or early in the spring; which flowers never exceed the size of an ordinary button, and thereby you are disappointed of having an early crop, at the due season; therefore mark the time as above. But, in order to have a more certain crop and regular supply of colliflowers, it will be proper to sow some seed at two different times this month.

The first sowing must be at the time above mentioned; and the general rule is to allow the distance of a week or thereabouts between the first and second sowing.

The first sown plants are principally for the earliest crop, and should be planted out for good in the latter end of October, under bell or hand-glasses. Some of the same plants may also, at that time, be planted under a south wall, and there remain, without any other shelter, during the winter. They will sometimes stand it tolerably well; but, if you choose it, you may also at that time plant a parcel of the first sown plants in frames.

But the colliflower plants raised from the second sowing are properly to be the main crop; and these, for their more certain preservation, must, in the last week of October, be planted in frames, and there remain (being occasionally defended with glasses) all the winter.

But let it be observed, that if you have no bell or hand-glasses, or that you do not intend to plant out any plants under such glasses in October, as above; but that you either intend, or are necessitated to winter them all in frames, or on warm borders; you, in that case, need make but one sowing, which should be, as before said, some time between the eighteenth and twenty-fourth of the month.

But here it will be proper to set down, in what manner the plants, both from the first and second sowing, provided you sow twice, should be managed until they are fit

to be transplanted into the beds or places where they are to remain all winter. And, to begin with the seed,

The seed is to be sown as above directed, either at once, or at two different times, as you shall think necessary, according to the above directions; observing at the proper time to let a small spot of clean rich ground be neatly dug, and mark out a bed about a yard or three feet and a half broad; immediately sow the seed, and rake it in with particular care; or otherwise, you may first rake the surface smooth, and then sow the seed, and sift over it about a quarter of an inch of light earth. In dry weather let the bed be from time to time moderately watered: this will make the plants come up soon; they will rise equally, and all take a regular growth.

When the plants are come up, continue, in dry weather, to water the bed moderately, at least every two days.

Then, about the twentieth, or some time between that and the twenty-fifth of next month, the plants should be pricked out from the seed-bed: at that time let another rich spot be dug for them in a sheltered situation; and mark out a bed the same breadth, as above; into this bed the plants are at that time to be pricked about two or three inches apart, and shaded from the sun, and occasionally watered, till rooted.

But one thing is proper to be observed, in the management of these plants, and particularly those intended to be planted out under the hand glasses in October; and that is this, if the weather should at the above time prove cold, and at the same time the plants but backward in their growth, it will in that case be proper to make a slight bed of warm dung to prick the plants in, which will bring them greatly forward.

This bed need not be made above twelve or fifteen inches, at most, thick of dung: lay the thickness of six inches of earth all over the surface, and put in the plants as above.

In either of the above beds, the plants are to remain until the last week in October, or at farthest the first week in November, and then to be transplanted into the proper places, to stand the winter.

The first sown plants, in particular; or, if you have but one sowing, the largest of these, are at that time to be planted out for good in rows, and covered with the bells, observing to place two or three of the strongest plants un-



der each glass; the glasses to stand three feet distance each way from one another.

But if you desire to make the most advantage of the above glasses, you may plant four or five plants under each; and in the spring to thin out the worst, leaving but one, or at most two of the strongest plants under each glass; and those as are thinned out, to be planted in another spot, in the open ground.

The second sown plants, or at least those intended to be wintered in frames, are also, in the end of October, or first week in November, to be transplanted into their winter beds. At that time you are to observe, that if the plants are backward in their growth, it will be proper to make a bed for them in the following manner:

A place is to be prepared for the bed, where the plants may have the full winter sun.

Let a trench be dug about six inches deep, and the breadth of a common cucumber, or melon frame, and the length of one, two, or more frames, according to the quantity of plants.

Then get some new hot dung, and with this let a bed be made in the above trench, making it about a foot thick of dung, and lay thereon the depth of five, or six inches of rich light earth, and here the plants are to be set in rows from the back to the front of the frame: plant them two inches and a half apart in the rows; allow the distance of three inches between row and row, and as soon as planted let them be moderately watered.

Then put on the glasses; but observe, to leave them open about a hand's breadth, that the steam which the dung will occasion, may freely pass away; and when the plants have taken root, let the lights be taken quite off every mild dry day.

The plants, with the assistance of the above slight hot-bed, will soon take root; and if they are small, will forward them greatly in their growth, so as to acquire a due degree of strength, before the time of the severe weather begins.

They are to remain in the seed bed all winter; for the heat is only intended to strike the plants and set them a going at first; for it will not last much above a fortnight.

Although I have mentioned the planting the above plants on a moderate hot-bed, yet, where there is not dung to be conveniently had, or that the plants are tolerably

bly forward in their growth, they may be planted in a bed of natural earth, defended, as above, with a frame and glasses; but a little heat, just to strike the plants, will be a great advantage.

In one or other of these beds, the plants are to remain all winter; and are, during that time, to be defended, in rainy and severe weather, by putting on the glasses; but, in mild and dry days, no covering must be over the plants; they must have the free air at all such times.

These plants are to remain in this bed, until the latter end of February, or beginning of March, but then to be transplanted into the quarters of the kitchen garden at about thirty inches, or three feet, distance, each way, from one another.

I have saved colliflower plants through the winter, in a bed of common earth, and covered it occasionally only with garden mats; the bed being in a warm situation, and arched over with hoops, and covered with mats in bad weather; such as in time of hard rains, frosty or snowy weather.

And I have sometimes preserved these plants over winter, by planting them close under a warm wall.

But these two methods are only to be practised by persons as have not better conveniences; but those in possession of frames and glasses, should always take the advantage of them, to preserve their plants through the winter.

#### *Asparagus.*

Let the plantations of asparagus be well cleared, and kept at this time perfectly free from weeds; in particular that which was planted in beds last March or April.

Also let the feeding asparagus, which was sown in the spring, be kept very clean; and this must be done by a very careful hand-weeding.

#### *Transplant Celery.*

Transplant more celery. Let an open spot be chosen; mark out the trenches, and prepare them in the manner directed last month. Get the plants, cut off the tops of their leaves, trim the ends of their roots, and then plant one row in each trench.

Observe to set the plants four or five inches distant in the row.

Immediately



Immediately after they are planted, let them be watered; and, if the weather should prove dry, the waterings must be repeated duly every other evening until the plants have taken root.

*Earth up Celery.*

Continue to earth up, as it advances in height, the celery which was planted in trenches the two last months.

Let this be done in dry weather; and, when the plants are also dry, let the earth be well broken: then lay it up lightly to the plants: observe to earth them up a due height on each side; take particular care not to break down their leaves, and also not to bury the heart of these plants.

*Artichoke Plants.*

Examine now the artichoke plants which were planted last March, or April.

Many of these plants will now be in fruit; and, besides the principal or top fruit, there will rise many small heads or suckers from the sides of the stems; but, in order to encourage the principal head to grow to a large size, all these side shoots should be displaced.

This is constantly practised by persons who prefer one large handsome head to three or four small ones; but when you practise this, the suckers should always be taken off, before they exceed the size of an egg; and these are in some families dressed and eaten.

These, the gardeners about London call suckers; they gather them as above, and tie them in bunches, and carry them to market, where they have a ready call for them; but especially Covent-Garden, or Spital-Fields markets.

Remember, as said last month, to break down the stems of the artichokes, as soon as you cut the fruit.

*Small Sallad Seed.*

Now sow small sallad seeds, such as mustard, cressies, radish, rape and turnep.

When a constant supply of these are wanted, there should be a little seed of each kind sown once every week.

Let them be sown in a shady border: draw shallow drills, sow the seeds pretty thick, and cover them about a quarter of an inch; in dry weather they must be duly watered.

*Lettuce*

*Lettuce Seed.*

Sow lettuce seed, at two different times this month. The proper sorts are, cos and St. Remy; the brown Dutch, and common cabbage lettuce are also very proper kinds to be sown at this time.

The first sowing is to be performed some time before the tenth of the month, and is to raise plants for supplying the table in October and November; the second sowing must be done some time between the eighteenth and twenty-fourth of the month; and the plants raised from this sowing are to be planted out upon warm borders in order to stand the winter, to supply the table next April and May.

Let each sort of this seed be sown separate; take care to rake it in evenly; and, in dry weather, it will be proper to water the bed or border now and then where the seed is sown.

But some of the plants raised from both the first and second sowing, particularly the brown Dutch and common cabbage lettuce, may, when fit (that is, in October) be planted in shallow frames; where they must be covered every night, and in all wet, or other bad cold weather, with the glasses; in hard frosts they must also have a thick covering of dry litter, such as straw, or fern, laid over the glasses, and about the outsides of the frames. If thus properly managed, they will be tolerably well cabbaged in December, January and February; at which time they will be esteemed a great rarity, and highly acceptable.

Transplant some of the lettuces which were sown last month, to supply the table in autumn.

Let these be planted ten or twelve inches asunder, in a rich spot, and give them directly a little water. In dry weather, they must be watered as occasion requires, till they have taken root.

*Fennel, Cardus, and Angelica.*

About the middle of this month, you may sow seeds of fennel, cardus, and angelica.

The seeds as are sown now, are to raise plants for the next year's use; and by sowing them at this season, they will come up strong in the spring.

Note, These seeds will grow, if sown in the spring season, but not so early, nor do they generally come up so strong, as the autumn sown plants.

*Destroy*



*Destroy Weeds.*

Take care now to destroy weeds in every part, among all the crops: let this always be done in due time, before the weeds get to any great head, and take particular care that none stand to seed.

This should be well observed in every part of the ground; not only among all the crops, but also in such vacant pieces of ground as have been lately cleared from summer crops.

For every weed that is suffered to stand to scatter its seeds upon the ground, lays the foundation of hundreds for the year to come; therefore every opportunity should be taken to destroy them before they arrive to that maturity.

This is easily done if taken in time, and particularly in all such places where there is room to bring in a hoe; with a sharp hoe, taking advantage of dry days, a person may soon go over a great deal of ground.

Never suffer large weeds to lie upon any spot of ground when they have at any time been hoed down, but rake them up, and also clear them away.

*Transplant Endive.*

Transplant another parcel of endive. Choose an open spot, and let it be properly dug; then get some of the strongest plants, trim the extreme end of their roots, and the tops of their leaves a little, and then plant them twelve inches each way from one another.

Water them as soon as planted; and, in dry weather, let the waterings be repeated once every two or three days, until the plants have taken root.

The endive which was planted out in June, will, about the middle, or towards the latter end of the month, be full grown, and the plants should be tyed up to promote their blanching.

Choose a dry day to do this work; then get some fresh bafs, examine the plants, and let a parcel of the largest be tyed, observing to gather the leaves up regularly in the hand; and then, with a piece of the bafs, tie them together in a neat manner; but do not tie them too tight.

The cardoons which were planted out in June, will now be arrived to some height; and it will be proper to begin

Q

to

## 338 THE KITCHEN GARDEN. [Aug.

to draw some earth up round each plant; and as they arise in height, let the earthing be accordingly repeated.

Take care not to draw the earth into the heart of the plants.

For their further management, see September and October.

### *Onions.*

Examine the crops of onions: when their leaves begin to fall and wither, the roots have had their full growth, and must then be taken up. Let this be done in dry weather, immediately spread the roots to dry, and manage them as directed last month.

### *Garlick and Shallots.*

Garlick and shallots must also be taken up as soon as they have had their proper growth. This is also known by their leaves, which, when the roots have done drawing nourishment, will begin to wither.

### *Herbs to distil and dry.*

Gather herbs to distil. This must be done when the plants are in flower, because they are then just in their prime.

Gather also herbs to dry, to serve the family in winter. They must be cut in a dry day, and immediately spread to dry in an airy room; but lay them out of the reach of the sun. When properly dried, tie them in bunches, and hang them up in a dry room till wanted.

### *Sowing Coleworts.*

Where it was omitted last month, you should now sow some seed for coleworts.

But this must be done in the beginning of the month; otherwise the plants will not get strength to be fit for use at any tolerable time in the spring.

### *Transplanting Coleworts.*

Examine the colewort plants which were sown last month; let them be looked over, about the middle, or towards the latter end of this month; and see, where the plants stand very thick, to let some be drawn out regularly, and plant them into another spot.



Let them be planted in rows, ten or twelve inches asunder; and let the plants six inches distant in the row.

By this practice, the plants remaining in the seed-beds will have more room to grow; and those which are now transplanted, will come into use three or four weeks sooner than the plants which are left in the seed-bed until next month.

*Propagate Sweet Herbs.*

Propagate, where wanted, the different sorts of aromatick plants: the slips, or cuttings, of many sorts, may still be planted, and will grow.

Particularly the slips of sage, hyssop, mastic, and marjorum, will still succeed; but must be planted in the beginning of the month. The slips, or cuttings, must be about six or seven inches long; but if these slips could be now slipped off from the plants, with roots to them, it would at this time be a great advantage; and must be planted in a shady border, putting each cutting two parts out of three into the earth; and, in dry weather, duly water them.

Plant also, where wanted, slips of lavender, rue, and rosemary: and you may also plant slips of wormwood and southernwood.

But these slips should now, if possible, be such as have roots to them; as you will sometimes find such arising from the roots of the main plants, where they have been planted pretty low, that their branches touch the ground, when they will have taken root.

These cuttings should also be from about six to eight, or nine inches, in length; planted in a shady border, and occasionally watered.

*Management of Aromatick Plants.*

Now, in the beginning of this month, it will be proper to cut down the decayed flower-stems of many kinds of aromatick plants; such as hyssop, savory, lavender, and all other such like kinds.

At the same time, it will be proper to shorten all the straggling and other young shoots, in order to keep the plants within due compass; which also will make them produce numbers of new short shoots, and they will, by that means, form close snug heads before winter.

## 340 THE KITCHEN GARDEN. [Aug.

But this work should, if possible, be done in a moist time, and with a pair of garden shears: let the decayed flower stems, and the young shoots, or branches, be trimmed pretty close.

The plants, after this, will soon begin to put out new shoots; and these will get strength, and make the plants appear neat all winter.

### *Gathering Seeds.*

Gather seeds, in due time, according as they ripen.

Let this be done, in dry days; and as soon as they are cut, spread them upon mats, or cloths, to dry and harden. But they must be spread where rain, if it should happen, cannot touch them; and let them be now and then turned: when it has lain a fortnight, or thereabouts, to dry, let it be beaten, or rubbed out, and well cleaned.

Then spread the seed thin upon cloths, in a dry but shady place; where let it lie a day or two to harden it properly; it is then to be put up in bags, or boxes.

This is now a good time to sow the seeds of corn salad, otherwise lamb lettuce; and also the seeds of chervil, for winter and spring service.

Both these plants will come up the same autumn, and are very hardy, and will be fit for use all winter, and the spring season; when some more seed of each sort should be sown, to succeed these.

The lamb lettuce, or corn salad, are commonly used in winter and spring fallads; and the chervil is chiefly used in soups.

The seeds of both sorts may either be sown in drills or in broad-cast, and raked in.

But the plants of the corn salad should be thinned to three or four inches distance.

### *Ripening Melons.*

Take particular care now of the ripening melons; if there should, at this time, happen to be much rain, the roots of the plants, and all the best fruit, must be well defended from it; and this is to be done by the methods proposed for their protection last month.

### *Cucumber Plants.*

Cucumber plants also demand good attention at this time; particularly the principal crop, which were sown in the open ground, to produce fruit to pickle.

These



These plants, for one thing, must, in dry weather, be remarkably well supplied with water. They will stand in need of this, in a dry time, at least, three or four times a week. Let them not want for moisture, in dry weather, and the plants will not fail to produce fruit abundantly.

Let the plants be also looked over, in a regular manner, about three times a week, in order to gather the young fruit according as it becomes fit for the purpose of pickling; for when once the fruit are come to the proper size, they will soon grow too large for that use.

#### *Sowing Turneps.*

This is still a proper time to sow turneps for a late crop.

But let the seed, if possible, be sown in the first or second week in the month, and there will be no fear of success; but I would not advise to sow the seed later than the third week in the month, for that which is sown after that time seldom succeeds well.

Hoe and thin the turneps which were sown last month. To do this work, take advantage of dry days; and let it be done before the plants are too far advanced in the growth: this work should always be begun when the rough leaves of the plants are about the breadth of a man's thumb; then the work can be done with expedition and regularity.

Let the plants be thinned out to the distance of about six or eight inches.

## The Fruit Garden.

### *Vines.*

**L**OOK over vines again, both in vineyards and on walls, and let them be once more cleared from all useless shoots.

All shoots whatever, that have been lately produced, either from the old or young wood, must now be entirely displaced; for such are quite useless, and, if left, would darken the fruit very much, and greatly retard its growth: therefore, let all such shoots be rubbed off quite close.

Examine also, at the same time, with good attention, all the bearing, and other proper shoots; and, where any

have started from their places, let them be immediately fastened close to the wall, or stakes, in their proper direction. This should, at all times, be duly observed, that every shoot and branch of fruit may have an equal advantage of sun and air to ripen them. Likewise, examine the fruit; and, where the bunches are entangled in each other, or with the shoots, let them be relieved so that every bunch may hang in its proper position.

You may now, if you choose it, in the beginning of this month, top all the shoots that have fruit on them, and all others that have advanced above the top of the wall, or any way beyond their due bounds.

### *The Vineyard.*

Destroy weeds between the rows of vines in the vineyard, and let them always be cut down as soon as they appear; then rake the ground, clear the surface from the loose weeds, and all manner of rubbish.

Keeping the surface of the ground in vineyards perfectly clear from weeds, and free from rubbish of every sort, is a very great advantage to the growth and ripening of the grapes; and unless the surface be always kept so, particularly at this season, the bunches of these fruit will never ripen perfectly.

A perfect clean surface in the vineyard answers, in a great degree, the purpose of a wall, by returning the sun's heat upon the vines and fruit.

Where weeds are permitted to grow, no reflexion of heat can come from the surface; but, on the contrary a moist vapour arises between the rows, and about the plants and fruit, which very much retards the growth and ripening of the grapes.

### *Wall-Trees.*

Wall-trees still demand attention; particularly peach, nectarine, and such like kinds.

Let them be once more carefully looked over, and see whether all the branches and shoots remain securing in their proper places. Where any have been displaced by winds, or other accidents, let them be nailed up again in a secure and neat manner; and where any of the shoots are loose, or project considerably from the wall, let such also be nailed in close and securely.



To have the shoots all lay close and regular to the wall, it is a very great advantage to the fruit; and, besides, it looks decent.

Likewise observe, at the same time, where any straggling shoots have been lately produced; and let all such be now taken off, that there may be no useless wood to darken the ripening fruit too much from the sun.

*Cleaning the Border about the Fruit-Trees.*

Let all the fruit-tree borders be now kept remarkably clean: let no weeds grow, nor suffer any kind of litter to be seen upon them.

By keeping these borders neat, it is not only agreeable, in the greatest degree, to the eye, but a clean smooth surface, throws up a reflexion of the sun's heat, on the tree, which certainly greatly promotes the ripening and improves the flavour of the fruit.

*Fig-Trees.*

Take care of fig-trees; the figs will now be full grown, and will begin to ripen, and therefore require a share of sun to promote their ripening, and to give them a true flavour.

All the strong shoots must therefore be now laid in close to the wall: but take care to use the knife on these trees but very little at this time. Cut off no shoots but such as grow directly foreright; therefore lay in all the fair growing side shoots; for these young shoots that are now laid in, are to bear the fruit to be expected next year; and as these trees produce their fruit upon none but the year old shoots, it is the safest way to leave enough at this time, for what is not wanted to lay in at the general season of pruning, can at that time be easily cut away.

But, whatever you do, be sure not to shorten any of the shoots, but lay in every one at full length, for the shoots of these trees must never be shortened.

Observe to lay them in regularly, not across one another, and let them be well secured, for the wind and rain has great power over these trees on account of their broad leaves.

*Budded Trees.*

Go over the stocks or trees which were budded in July, and let all the bandages be loosened.

This should always be done in about three weeks, but never exceed a month, after the budding is performed; otherwise, as the bud will swell, the sap will be stopped in its regular course, and the parts about the bud will be pinched, and will swell irregularly, and not one bud in five succeed.

Likewise examine that part of the stock below the bud, and when there are any shoots sent forth in that place, let them be taken off close.

#### *Budding, &c.*

Budding may still be performed; but this must be done in the beginning of the month.

#### *Defending Wall-Fruit from Insects, &c.*

Continue to defend the choice wall-fruit from insects and birds.

Birds are to be kept off by fixing up nets before the trees of such fruit as they would eat. This is a sure defence against these devourers; therefore it will be well worth while for such persons as have nets to fix them up before some of the choicest fruit, particularly grapes, figs, and late cherries.

Wasps and flies are also to be guarded against, for these insects will devour the most delicate fruit at a surprising rate, and, if not prevented, make great havock.

The only method to prevent this, is, to continue to place baits in different parts of the trees to catch them; that is, let a quantity of vials be filled with sugar-water, and hang three or four in each of the principal trees; this will greatly protect the fruit, for the sweetness of the water will entice the insects to neglect it, and they will continually hover about the mouth of the vials, numbers will daily creep in to drink, and when once they enter, not one in a hundred can get out again.

### The Pleasure, or Flower Garden.

#### *Water, annual Plants.*

**T**AKE care now of the annual plants in pots; they must, in dry weather, be well supplied with water: let them be watered at least three or four times a week.

Support



Support them well with handsome stakes, and let the stalk or stems of the plants be neatly tied to them, according as they advance in height.

When dead leaves appear on these plants, let them be immediately taken off, for nothing looks worse, therefore keep the pots always very clear from weeds.

*Water perennial Plants.*

In dry weather give water also pretty often to all the perennial flower plants in pots.

But this must be done in general; that is, those plants which are past flowering will want water as well as those which are still to bloom.

Take care now of all such perennial plants in pots as have done blowing; let the stalks when the flowers decay be immediately cut down; loosen the earth in the top of the pot, take some out, replace it with the same quantity of new, and then set the pots in a shady place for the remainder of the summer.

*Propagate fibrous rooted Plants.*

Now is the proper time to encrease many of the double flowering fibrous rooted plants: this is to be done by slipping and parting the roots; and the proper time to begin to do it is about the middle of the month.

Many sorts may now be encreased by that method; particularly, the double rose campion and catchfly, double scarlet lychnis, and double rocket; also the double ragged robin, batchelors button, gentianella, and polyanthes, and several other such like kinds of fibrous rooted perennials.

The method is this: where the plants have grown into large tufts, let the whole of each root be taken up entirely out of the earth; then let it be parted, or divided into as many separate plants as you shall see convenient, but not into very small heads; but, in parting them, take care to do it in such a manner as every plant or slip so separated may be properly furnished with roots.

When the roots are thus parted into several slips or distinct plants, let the roots of every such slip or plant be trimmed; that is, cut off the ends of the roots; pick off any dead or broken leaves, and trim the others as you shall see necessary, and then plant them.

They must be planted in a shady border, or where they can be occasionally shaded with mats. Let them be set about six inches apart, close the earth well about them, and give them some water. Some of the strongest slips may be immediately planted again in the borders. Let the waterings be occasionally repeated, until the plants are rooted, and also during the summer. These will all take root in a very short time, get strength, and make tolerable good plants by the latter end of October: at that time they may be taken up with balls, and planted some into pots, and the rest into borders: they will all blow next summer.

#### *Saxafrage.*

This is now a proper time to propagate saxafrage.

The double white saxafrage, flowers in the spring season, and makes a beautiful appearance.

They are easily propagated by off-sets from the roots, which they produce plentifully: they are generally planted in pots, but may also be planted in the borders or beds, planting several of its small roots in a place, that the flowers come in bunches; otherwise they make but little show.

The pyramidal saxafrage makes a most beautiful appearance when in bloom: it is propagated by off-sets, which arise from the sides of the plants, and they may now be taken off, and either planted in borders or pots, and will flower next year.

#### *Auricula Plants.*

The auricula plants in pots should, some time in this month, be lifted into fresh earth.

For that purpose, provide a quantity of fresh compost: let this be sifted, or otherwise broken very small between the hands, and then be laid ready.

When this is done, take up the pots one by one, and pick off all decayed leaves from the plants; then turn the plants out of the pots, take most of the earth from its roots, and let all the fibres be trimmed: this done, fill the pot nearly with the compost, immediately let the plant in the middle, close the earth well about it, and fill up the pot properly with more compost.

When the whole are thus planted, let them be moderately watered, and let the pots on a shady place, or shade them occasionally with mats, and water them in dry weather, till the plants have taken root.

*Seedling*



*Seedling Auriculas.* The seedling auriculas, and polyanthuses, should now, where it was omitted last month, be pricked out from the seed bed.

Dig for them a bed or border in a warm situation, rake the surface even, and then put in the plants, about three or four inches asunder. Take particular care to close the earth very well about them, and give them a moderate watering.

The waterings must, if the weather should prove dry, be repeated moderately every other day till the plants have taken fresh root.

#### *Auricula Seed.*

This is a good time to sow auricula seed, and it will also be proper to sow the seed of polyanthuses.

These seeds should now be sown in boxes or large pots: for that purpose, fill some pots or boxes with light earth about the middle or latter end of the month. Let the seeds be sown pretty thick, and cover them about a quarter of an inch deep.

The boxes or pots must then be set where only the morning sun comes, stand there till the end of the next month, and then be removed where they can have the full sun.

The auricula seed will scarcely grow before the spring, but the plants will then come up earlier and stronger than those sown at that season.

But the polyanthuses will sometimes come up the same season, and will stand the winter well, and will be fit to plant out early next summer, when they will have time to grow strong, so as to be able to produce strong flowers the spring after.

#### *Carnation Layers.*

Carnation layers, that have been layed five or six weeks, will be well rooted, and should be cut from the old root, and planted into beds or pots.

But in order to protect the layers more readily in winter, it will be advisable to plant a parcel of the best plants in small pots, particularly some of the choicest kinds.

For that purpose, let a quantity of penny or halfpenny pots be procured, and fill them with good earth; then take off the layers, trim their tops a little, cut off the bottom of the stalk or root, close to the slit part, or gash which

was made in laying; then plant one layer in each pot, and immediately give a little water.

Then set all the pots in a shady situation, and give water as occasion requires till the plants have all fairly taken root.

When the plants are firmly rooted, let the pots be then removed into a more open situation, and remain there until the latter end of October, when a bed of dry compost is, at that time, to be prepared, the breadth and length of a common frame; the bed must be prepared with some dry and light earth, and a quantity of coal ashes, mixing all well together, and raised at least four inches above the common level of the ground: when thus prepared, put on the frame, then plunge the pots to their rims in the bed, as close together as can be; for here the plants are to remain all winter, and to be defended in bad weather with glasses.

But the glasses are only to be put on in severe frosts, snow, and much rain; and must be taken off constantly in mild and dry weather.

Note, where frames and glasses are wanting, the pots may at the above time be plunged in a bed prepared as above: then place some hoops across the bed; and having some good thick mats always in readiness, let these be drawn over the hoops to shelter the plants in bad weather.

By plunging the pots into the bed of compost, it preserves the plants more securely from frost, for it then cannot enter at the sides of the pots to hurt the roots.

The plants are to remain in this bed, and in the same pots, till the latter end of February, or the first week in March; they are then to be turned out with the ball of earth to their roots, and planted into the large pots where they are to blow.

But the common carnation layers, that are intended to be planted in the borders, should be managed in this manner.

When the layers are well rooted, they are then to be separated from the old plants, trimmed as above directed, and planted in a bed or border of rich earth. Let them be set about six inches distance every way from one another, and directly watered, and the waterings must be occasionally repeated, and the plants must be shaded from the mid-day sun till well rooted.



The layers are to remain in this bed or border until October; by that time they will have gotten strength, and may then be transplanted into the borders.

*Laying Carnations.*

This is still a proper time to lay carnations and double sweet-williams; but this must be done in the beginning of the month.

Take off also such layers of double sweet-williams as were layed five or six weeks ago; and manage them as directed for the carnations.

*Sow Seeds of bulbous Flowers*

Now sow seeds of bulbous flower roots. The proper time to do this, is some time between the twentieth and last day of the month.

The sorts proper to be sown, are tulips, hyacinths, narcissus's, iris's, crown imperials, fritillarias, and lillies, the seeds of martagons, crocusses, and some other bulbs.

These seeds may be sown either in beds or in boxes. The convenience of boxes is, they can be removed readily to a different situation as the season requires. The boxes for this purpose must be about fifteen or eighteen inches broad, and ten or twelve deep.

They must be filled, within an inch and an half of the top, with fine light earth, making the top smooth; then sow the seeds thereon moderately thick, and cover them with sifted earth about half an inch deep.

The boxes are then to be moved to a somewhat shady situation; and if the weather prove dry must be at times lightly watered: they are to stand there till the latter end of September, and then be removed to a warm part of the garden.

But these seeds may also, if you choose it, be sown in beds of light earth, and will succeed tolerably well. The beds must be prepared in a dry warm situation, and should be about three feet broad.

The boxes or beds must be defended in winter from severe frosts and great snows; and this is to be done by laying dry litter over and about the outsides of the boxes, or on the surface of the beds.

The plants will begin to appear about the latter end of next March, and must be then kept clear from weeds, and in dry weather refreshed pretty often with water.

In June or July their leaves will decay, and then the surface of the earth must be cleared from weeds and litter, and about half an inch of fresh earth strewed over the surface of the box or bed.

Thus let them remain till the same time the second summer, and then it will be proper to transplant them.

Then, at that time, prepare a bed or two in a clean dry lying spot, and where the earth is light, and each bed to be three feet broad.

Then take up the roots out of the seed-bed, and immediately plant them into the beds prepared for them; let them be set in rows: the rows to be four inches asunder, and the roots to be set about two inches and a half apart in the rows.

The most ready method will be to draw neat drills with a small hoe, making them about two inches deep, and place the roots in the drills at the distance above directed, and draw the earth over them, covering them the depth of two inches.

The next summer, at the same time, the roots are to be removed again, and must then be set four inches each way apart.

Thus these seedlings are to be treated every summer till they are brought to a state of perfect flowering; observing, at each removal, to allow more and more room.

When they are brought to a condition of flowering, they are then to be managed as the other old roots.

But it will be several years before some of the roots arrive to that state, particularly the tulips, which never begin to show a flower till the sixth or seventh year; but the advantage of raising this root in particular from seed is, that when the seedlings are raised to a flowering state, and begin to break into stripes or variegations, there will every year appear among them many new flowers.

This is the advantage of raising them from seed; and likewise among the new flowers, there will sometimes be some that greatly excel, by the lustre of colour and regularity of stripes.

#### *Sow Anemonic Seeds, &c.*

Sow also anemonic seed, and the seed of ranunculus, and spring cyclamons.

It will be most advisable to sow these seeds principally in boxes or large wide mouthed pots.

The



The pots or boxes to be filled with rich, but very light earth; the seeds are to be scattered on pretty thick, and covered lightly with sifted earth, not more than a quarter of an inch deep.

The boxes or pots, with these seeds and plants, when they are come up, are all to be managed as above directed in the management of the seedling bulbs.

#### *Remove bulbous Roots.*

This is still a proper time to remove crown imperial roots, and also the roots of martagons and red lillies; the stalks and leaves of white lillies also now decay, and that is also the most proper time to remove these bulbs.

When the roots are taken up, the off-sets must be all separated from them; and when this is done, the principal roots may either be planted again now in the proper places, or may be dried and cleaned, and put up till October, and then planted.

But the best of the off-sets should be planted in nursery beds, each sort separate, and there to remain a year or two; and then may be planted among the other flowering roots.

#### *Bulbous and Persian irises.*

Remove also the roots of bulbous and Persian irises where it was omitted last month; and the bulbs of narcissuses, spring crocuses, and jonquils, may also still be removed, as may the roots of fritillarias, and most other bulbs whose leaves are decayed.

It is necessary to take the best sorts of these and other such like bulbs up at least once every two years, in order to separate the increased parts or off-sets from the larger or principal root; and it should always be done as soon as the flower and leaves fade, or at least in a short time after; for at that period the roots are at rest, and draw no nourishment, but will bear removal without the least check.

But on the contrary, when the roots are permitted to remain in the ground any considerable time after the decay of the stalks and leaves, they would all send out new fibres, and even at that time, begin to form the bud for the next year's flower; and if the roots were after that to be taken up, they might receive so great a check by the removal, that some sorts would not produce flowers the succeeding year;

or, at least, if they did, the flower would be very poor and weak.

#### *Transplant Perennials.*

Transplant into nursery beds such seedlings, as walls, stocks, and sweet-williams, also columbines, scabiouses, and other seedling perennial and biennial plants as are still remaining in the seed bed.

These should be transplanted in moist weather, and the sooner the better, that the plants may have time to root and get some strength before winter. Let a border be dug for them, or else dig some beds three feet broad, and immediately put in the plants about six inches distance from one another, and let them be directly watered.

When the plants have stood in the above beds, or borders, two months, or thereabouts, they may then be transplanted into the places where they are to remain to blow.

#### *Clip Hedges.*

Now clip or trim hedges: all sorts may now be trimmed; such as holly, yew, hornbeam, elm, lime, and also thorn and all other sorts.

This is the only proper season to trim such hedges as are only clipped but once a year, because those hedges that are trimmed now will not push out any more shoots to signify this summer; so that they will not want cutting again till next year.

But such hedges as were clipped in the beginning or middle of last month, or before, will want clipping again in the middle or latter end of this month.

#### *Cut Box and Thrift.*

Cut box edgings; but this should be done in moist weather, keep these edgings cut pretty low, and do not let them grow too broad.

Edgings of thrift should also at this time be trimmed a little, for they will now begin to want it; that is, when it was not done last month: cut off all the decayed flower-stalks; and when the sides have grown uneven, let them also be cut, which you may do with a pair of garden sheers.

Let the sheers for this purpose be ground very sharp at the points, that you may be able to cut the sides perfectly neat.



But this must be done in moist weather, or not at all; that is, the cutting the sides of thurst in particular, otherwise it will turn brown, and have a disagreeable appearance.

#### *Mow Grass.*

Continue to mow grass walks and lawns, and let this be done once a week or thereabouts.

Let these walks and lawns be also often poled and rolled, and this is almost as necessary to be done as mowing, to keep the grass perfectly clean and neat.

#### *Gravel Walks.*

Gravel walks should always be kept very clear from weeds and litter, and these walks should be duly rolled at least twice a week.

#### *Borders.*

The borders in this garden should be all kept clear from weeds, and always exceeding neat.

These borders should be now and then gone over with a sharp hoe, in order to loosen the surface and cut up any weeds that appear.

After this it should be raked over neatly, drawing off all weeds and litter, and the surface should be left clean and smooth.

#### *Trimming flowering Plants.*

Look over all the plants in the borders or other parts of the garden; and, where there are any branches that advance in an irregular or straggling manner, let such be cut off close or shortened as it shall seem necessary.

Where the shoots of different flowers interfere with each other, they should be shortened, so that every plant may stand single.

Flowers always appear best when they stand clear of one another.

Take off all withered leaves, and let the main stems of the flowers be well supported with stakes in an upright direction.

Where any shoots hang dangling, cut them off near the stem of the plant.

Where French and African marigolds, or other strong branching annual flowers, produce shoots near the ground, they should be trimmed up to a foot from the surface at least.

This

This will cause them to form themselves handsome and regular heads, and the flowers of a large growth will have more liberty to grow, and will shew themselves to a greater advantage, than if the branches of large flowers were permitted to spread near the bottom.

#### *Gather Flower-Seeds.*

Gather the seeds of such flowers as are now ripe, in a dry day; spread them on mats to dry in an airy place where the sun can come.

When they are well hardened, beat or rub them out, and put them in paper bags, or into boxes, till the season for sowing them.

#### *The Nursery.*

##### *Destroy Weeds.*

**T**AKE advantage of dry days to destroy the weeds between the rows of young trees and shrubs of all kinds. Let this always be done in due time before the weeds grow to any considerable size.

For when weeds are permitted to stand too long, it will require double labour to cut them down; and large weeds, when they are cut, will, if not raked off the ground, many of them take root, and grow up again.

##### *Weed and water Seedlings.*

Seedling trees and shrubs of all sorts should also now be kept perfectly free from weeds; for these, if permitted to grow in seed-beds, would do much damage.

In very dry and hot weather, it will still be proper to water the beds of seedling trees, and it will at this time be a great advantage to the plants.

##### *Trim Ever-Greens.*

Now is a good time to trim ever-greens and such other shrubs as want it in the nursery. In doing this, observe to take out vigorous shoots, or shorten them so as to form a more regular head.

##### *Forest-Trees.*

Where forest-trees have made any vigorous shoots from their stems near the roots, it will be proper to cut such shoots off close.

*Trans-*



*Transplanting.*

In the beginning of this month, if the weather be a little moist and cloudy, you may transplant seedlings, pines and firs, from the boxes or beds where they were sown.

It is now to be observed, as hinted last month, that it is not meant to make a general transplanting; but only where the plants are any ways crowded in the seed-bed, it will be proper to transplant some, that they may not stand to spoil one another. In doing this work, you are to observe the same method as mentioned last month.

*Preparing Ground for transplanting.*

The ground where a new plantation is to be made in autumn, should now be kept clear from weeds; and, if there be any now, hoe them up and rake them off the ground and carry them out.

Towards the end of this month it will be time to begin to trench such pieces of ground as are to be planted in autumn with any kinds of trees and shrubs; and in order that the ground may be the better improved by the rains, sun, and dews, it will, in digging, be most proper to lay it up in high ridges.

*Budding.*

Now go over the stocks that have been budded three weeks or a month, and let the bafs be untied, that the parts about the bud may not be pinched.

Budding may also still be performed, but it must be done in the beginning of the month.

## The Green-House.

*Green-House Shrubs.*

**N**OW let all such green-house shrubs as are in want of larger pots, be shifted, this being as good a time as any in the whole year for doing that work.

For that purpose provide a quantity of fresh earth, and some proper sized pots or tubs; these being ready, let the plant be taken up out of its pot with the ball whole, then trim off these matted and mouldy roots, which spread about

about the surface of the ball, and pick away part of the old earth.

Then set the tree in the larger pot, and fill it up properly with the new compost, and give a moderate watering, and remove the pot or tub where the plant can be shaded somewhat from the sun, and sheltered from violent winds.

#### *Shift Succulent Plants.*

This is now a very proper time to shift all kinds of succulent plants that want larger pots; such as euphorbiums, sedums, aloes, and every other sort. Let this be done in the first week in the month.

Take these out of the pots, and pull away a great part of the old earth with care from the ball, and trim the root; set the plant immediately into the new pot, fill it up equally round with new light compost, and directly give each a little water.

Then set the pots in a shady place, and the plants will soon take root; some of the tender kinds may be placed in a garden frame, and the glasses drawn on at times to protect the plants from heavy rain, if such should happen before they take root.

If these plants are shifted at the beginning of the month, they will have fixed themselves again tolerably well by the end of the month.

#### *Propagate Aloes.*

The first or second week in this month is a proper time to take off slips or off-sets of aloes, from the old plants, to propagate them.

These slips or off-sets are to be planted singly in small pots; the pots must be filled with some very light dry compost. These being ready set, plant one in each pot, and close the earth firmly about the body of the plants, and water them moderately.

When all is planted, set the pots where they can be defended from the mid-day sun, and in dry weather let them have now and then moderate refreshment of water: thus the plants will be well rooted in a short time.

#### *Watering.*

Do not forget in dry weather to give water to all the pots and tubs of oranges, lemons, and to all other green-house



house plants, and let this be always given in due time before the earth in the pot or tub becomes too dry.

But take particular care of the orange trees, and do not let them want for moisture, otherwise the fruit lately set will drop.

To orange and lemon trees, it would be a great advantage to add a little fresh earth to the top of the tubs or pots, provided it was not done last month.

In doing this, the earth in the top of the tubs or pots should be loosened almost to the surface of the roots; this being done, the loose earth is to be taken out, and the tub filled up again with fresh rich earth.

When this is done let every tub or pot have a moderate watering; and this settles the new earth close to the roots.

This should be done in the beginning of the month; and it is of such service to these plants, that the doing of it should never be omitted.

#### *Inoculate Orange-Trees.*

Inoculate orange-trees, for this is the only proper season to perform that operation on these trees, but it must be done in the first or at the farthest the second week in the month.

The proper stocks to bud these upon, is such as are raised from the kernels of the same sort of fruit. See the greenhouse for June and July.

### The Hot-House.

#### *Pine-Apple Plants.*

THE pine-apple plants, which are to bear the fruit to be expected next year, should now, where it was not done last month, be shifted into the pots where they are finally to remain to fruit.

Let this be done, if possible, in the first or second week in the month, that they may have time to make new roots by October.

In shifting these plants, observe to let a proper quantity of fresh earth be brought and laid ready; and also bring the new pots, and put as much of the new earth into each pot as will cover the bottom three or four inches deep.

Then

Then take the pots or plants one by one out of the bed, and with care shake out the plant with its ball intire, and placing it in the new pot, fill up the vacancy with the fresh earth, and immediately give a moderate watering.

When all is planted, let the bark-bed be stirred up with a fork to the bottom; at the same time let a good quantity of new tan be thrown in, and work both well together.

This being done, let the pots immediately be plunged again to their rims, and refresh them now and then with water.

#### *Fruiting-Pines.*

Take care of the pine-apple plants which are now in fruit; they will now and then require some water, but this must not be given in large quantities.

Likewise let them have fresh air every day by sliding open some of the glasses, but let them be close every night.

#### *Propagating of Pines.*

The pine-apples will now ripen apace therefore take care, according as the fruit is cut, to prepare the old plant to produce suckers for a supply of new plants.

This is now to be managed in the manner as directed last month, and the suckers are also to be treated according to the method there mentioned.

Likewise take care of the crowns on the top of the pine-apple; these also serve for propagation: when the fruit has been served at table, the crown should be taken off with a gentle twist, and this should be returned, in order to be planted.

The management of the crowns now is also the same as in the former month.



# S E P T E M B E R.

*Work to be done in the Kitchen Garden.*

## *Mushrooms.*

**M**USHROOMS are a great favourite with many; this is now the season to begin to prepare the dung for making the beds.

These beds should be made of the best warm dung, and about the beginning of this month you may get some that is fresh and good, ready for that purpose.

But before you work the dung up in a bed, it should lay together in a heap till the first great heat is over; this is generally effected in a fortnight or three weeks time, or thereabouts, it will then be in right order, and you may proceed to make the bed.

But before you make the bed it will be proper to provide a parcel of good spawn: this is a material article; and a proper quantity must be procured to plant in the bed.

This is frequently found in the dung of old cucumber or melon, or other decayed dung hot beds; it is also often to be met with in dung-hills which have lain six or eight months or more; spawn is also to be found in pasture fields, and should be searched for in those places where you see mushrooms rise naturally; but I generally prefer the spawn found in dung, either in old hot-beds or in old dung-hills.

I have often found excellent spawn in the farmers dung-hills; such as we commonly see piled up in large heaps in the lanes or on commons near their fields; and you will generally find it most of all in those dung heaps which consists chiefly of stable-dung, observing to search in such that appears to have lain for several months.

Spawn is commonly found in searching as above, in lumps of dry rotton dung; it is white, and appears in the said lumps like small white thread, and has exactly the smell of a mushroom.

Let these lumps be taken up carefully, dung and spawn together, observing to preserve the piece as entire as possible,

possible, laying them at the same time in a barrow or basket with the same care; when you have gathered enough for your purpose, let the lumps be laid in a dry place, and covered with some dry litter till the bed is ready.

But if the pieces of spawn are wet; or very damp, you may lay them thinly on a mat in a dry shady place, where they may dry leisurely; then you may cover them as above.

I have been obliged often to buy my spawn of the market gardeners in the neighbourhood of London, but particularly those called the Neat-house gardeners near Chelsea, where some of them collect great quantities for sale. It may, if closely packed in hampers, be safely conveyed to a great distance. I have more than once sent it above a hundred and fifty miles.

It is sold from about five to eight or ten shillings per bushel.

When you have obtained the spawn, you may then begin to make the bed as soon as the dung is in a right condition for that purpose.

Choose a dry spot in the melon ground to make the bed on, or on any other dry spot, and it will be most adviseable to make it quite on the surface.

Mark out on the ground the width and length of the bed.

This may be done with six or eight short stakes, observing to set it out four feet wide, and as long as you shall think convenient for the quantity you intend to raise.

Bring in the dung and lay the bottom of the bed to the full extent of the stakes; and as you advance in height, to draw both sides in gradually from the bottom, till you bring it, as it were, to nothing at top.

As you proceed in making the bed, observe to shake and mix the dung well together, but do not tread it, but permit the whole to settle gradually of itself.

Thus let the bed be carried on till you have raised it to the height of, at least, three feet and a half, or four feet high, finishing the whole in the form of a ridge of a house.

Having made the bed, you must let it remain for ten or twelve days, or a fortnight, before you put in the spawn, or at least till the heat is become quite moderate; for the bed will be very warm in a day or two after it is made,  
and



and will continue so for several days; and if the spawn was to be put in while the heat is strong, it would be entirely destroyed.

Remember after the bed is made, that if there should happen to fall much rain before it is ready for the spawn, to cover the whole a good thickness with long dry litter, for much wet would entirely spoil the bed.

When the bed is in a due condition, let the spawn be brought out in a dry day, and plant it in rows lengthways of the bed, observing to begin the first row within about six inches of the bottom.

Plant the pieces of spawn in the dung, observing to put them just within the surface of the bed, and let them be put in about five or six inches asunder; when you have finished one row, begin another six or eight inches from the first, and so proceed till you have planted the whole.

When this is done, let the surface of the bed be made quite smooth, by beating the dung gently with the back of your spade.

Then let every part of the bed be covered with some rich dry earth about an inch and a half thick; let this also be made quite smooth by using the spade as above.

Then let the whole be covered with some clean and dry wheat straw, a foot thick at least, to keep out the wet and cold.

When heavy rains fall examine the above covering; and if you at any time find that the wet has penetrated through to the bed, let the wet straw be removed, and lay some fresh on.

During the winter season, the bed must be kept entirely free from moisture, and be constantly covered as above, both to defend it from wet and cold, and in time of heavy rains, severe frosts, or snowy weather, the depth of covering should be augmented with more dry straw, and over this some mats or canvas cloths.

But these beds are not to be kept so close in the summer season, for the cover may sometimes be taken off during the time of a moderate warm shower, and in very hot weather may now and then have little sprinklings of water.

These beds, if properly made, and taken care of as above, will begin to produce plenty of good mushrooms in five or six weeks, or thereabouts; and will continue sometimes bearing for several months.

The spawn, when it begins to run, spreads itself very fast every way, and the plants will rise all over the bed.

But sometimes a mushroom bed will not begin to yield any plants till two, three, or four months after it is made; but when that happens, you should not despair, for such a bed after it begins, often produces abundance of fine mushrooms, and continues so to do a long time.

You must remember, when a mushroom bed has done producing, and you pull it to pieces, to save all the spawn to plant in new beds; for the spawn will keep good for two or three months, or more, provided you keep it in a dry warm place, and cover it with dry litter.

I have sometimes planted mushroom spawn on the late made cucumber ridges, that is, in those made in May, putting the pieces along the edges of the bed, under the earth, where it has succeeded and produced a great many mushrooms in September and October, observing where you expect them to appear, to cover the places with litter.

#### *Lettuce.*

The different sorts of lettuces which were sown the middle or latter end of August for spring use, should be planted out the latter end of this month into the borders, where they are to remain till spring.

Let a warm border under a south wall or other fence be prepared for these plants, observing when you dig the ground to lay the border somewhat sloping to the sun, and rake the surface smooth.

Then let some of the best plants be taken up from the seed-bed, and pick off broken or decayed leaves, and trim the ends of their roots a little.

Then put the plants in rows, lengthways of the border, about four or five inches asunder, and allow the same distance between the rows.

If the plants survive the winter, one half may be thinned out regularly in the spring, and planted in a more open exposure; the rest may remain in the border to cabbage early.

But observe, if no lettuce seed was sown in the third or fourth week in August, to raise plants for the borders, as above; you must not in that case omit to sow some for that purpose, some time in the first three days of this month, which indeed will be soon enough in warm rich grounds.

*Lettuce*



*Lettuce to plant in Frames.*

About the middle, or any time between the tenth and twentieth of this month, you should sow some lettuce of different sorts to plant in frames in October, to stand the winter for use next spring, and early in the summer.

These may be protected in frosty or very wet weather, by covering them with the glasses, and other coverings when necessary; and if those which are planted in the open borders should be cut off, these will be ready to supply their place.

The best lettuces for this purpose are the coss, brown, Dutch, and Silesia; and the seed should be sown in a bed or border of rich earth in a warm situation.

*Lettuce for Winter Use.*

If you design to have lettuce for the table in the winter months, you should, about the latter end of this month, prepare one or more beds in a part of the garden where the ground is driest, and lays well to the south sun.

Make the beds the length and width of a cucumber or melon frame.

Then let some good plants of the brown Dutch and common cabbage lettuce be planted therein, about six or eight inches asunder each way.

When the weather begins to be cold, you may put the frames over the beds, and cover them with the lights occasionally, and other covering when the weather is severe.

These, if the winter proves any thing mild, and managed as said last month; some of them will be fit for the table by the end of December; but, however, in moderate winters I have had these sorts of lettuces tolerably well cabbaged in January and February, and exceeding fine in March.

*Colliflowers.*

The colliflower plants which were sown in August will require to be planted out into a nursery bed about the twentieth of this month, or thereabouts.

Let a bed be prepared for them in a well sheltered part of the garden, and where it lays well to the sun.

Make the bed in the same manner, and observe the same rules as mentioned the last month, in the article of colliflowers.

## 364 THE KITCHEN GARDEN. [Sep.

Mind to draw out some of the best plants from the seed-bed, rejecting such whose stems are crooked and black; clear the plants from decayed or damaged leaves.

Plant them in rows about three inches asunder, and allow near the same distance between plant and plant in the row, observing not to plant them so deep as to bury their hearts, for that would destroy them,

When you have planted the whole, give the plants a little water to settle the earth to their roots, observing not to apply the water too hastily, so as to break their leaves, or wash the earth into their hearts.

Then you may put on the frame and also the lights; these are to be continued only for a few days, till the plants have taken root, observing, till that period, to shade them from the sun; but when they have got root, the glasses are to be taken entirely off, and are to be used but very little for a month to come; but if there should happen to fall heavy rains, it will at such times be proper to put on the lights, to defend the plants therefrom; for too much moisture would prove very prejudicial to these young plants, it would occasion their stalks to turn black and rot.

When they have been in this bed a month or five weeks, they are to be planted where they are to remain all winter. See the work of October and November.

### *Michaelmas Colliflowers.*

Some of the colliflowers which were planted out in July for the Michaelmas crop, will begin to show their heads about the end of this month, or beginning of the next.

Let these be encouraged as much as possible, by hoeing between, and drawing the earth up round the stem of each plant, and keep them clear from weeds.

If the weather in this month proves dry, form the earth like a basin round each plant, and pour water therein: this will encourage them to grow freely, and produce large heads in October and November; for if they are stunted now for want of moisture, their heads will be small at their proper season.

### *Brocoli.*

Transplant your last crop of brocoli the first or second week of this month into the place where they are to remain to produce their heads.

Dig



Dig a piece of rich ground for these plants in a warm situation, and plant them in rows a foot and a half asunder, and observe the same distance between the rows, which will be sufficient room for this late plantation.

Hoe the ground and destroy the weeds between the brocoli which were planted out the former months, and let earth be drawn up round their stems.

*Cabbage Plants.*

The cabbage plants which were sown the second week in August for an early crop next summer, should be pricked out into nursery beds about the middle or latter end of this month.

Choose a piece of good ground for them in a sheltered situation. Let it be well dug, and lay it out in beds three feet and a half wide.

Thin out the plants regularly from the seed-bed; observing to take the best first; the smallest may be left in the seed-bed a fortnight longer.

Plant them in rows lengthways of the bed, about four inches asunder in the row, and six inches between the rows; close the ground well about their stems, and leave the surface smooth between the plants.

When you have finished planting give them some water: and if the weather is dry, repeat it twice or thrice for the first week or ten days, by which time the plants will have taken good root.

*Coleworts.*

The first or second week in this month you should plant out some of the forwardest of the colewort plants which were sown the latter end of July into the place where they are to remain for spring use.

Let these be planted in a part of the garden where the cutting winds have the least power; and let them be planted in rows six or eight inches distant in the row; the rows should be ten or twelve inches asunder. They will be fit for use, some of them, by Christmas, but this sowing is chiefly for spring service. See the work of July.

*Celery.*

About the middle of this month you should plant out a late crop of celery for the spring use.

Make some shallow trenches for these plants where the ground is light and driest. Let the trenches be made twelve inches wide, five or six inches deep, and allow a space of thirty inches between the trenches, which will be sufficient for this late crop.

Trim the roots and tops of the celery, and plant one row in each trench. Let the plants be set about four or five inches asunder in the row.

#### *Earth up Celery.*

Earth up the crops of celery which were planted in trenches the former months, that they may be blanched at a proper length.

Let this work be done when the plants are dry, and in due time, as you see the plants require it. Break the earth well, and lay it to the plants with care, so as not to break the stalks, or bury the hearts.

#### *Endive.*

Tye together the leaves of endive to blanch it. Let this be done when the weather and plants are dry, observing to tye up such plants as are arrived at, or near their full growth: in doing this work you should gather up the leaves even in your hand, and tye them together with a string of bafs.

#### *Plant Endive.*

Plant out endive the beginning of this month for winter use: let these be planted on a dry spot in a warm situation, allowing them a foot distance each way.

And about the middle, or towards the latter end of this month, you should plant out some endive on a warm border under a south wall; to remain till after Christmas before you begin to blanch it.

This, if it survives the frost, will be acceptable for salads, and other uses, in February and March.

#### *Cardoons.*

The cardoons will be advanced to a considerable height by the beginning of this month: you must then begin again to prepare to blanch them to a due height.

The first step towards this work now is, to tye their leaves close and regularly together, observing, as you advance, to draw earth up about the plants as last month, and that work



work must be again repeated the beginning of this month; but as the plants will be now arrived to a great height, and their leaves will spread much, so that the earthing cannot be compleatly done till they are tyed up, this you must do with hay-bands, observing to gather the leaves up regularly together, beginning at the bottom with a rope or band of hay, and wind it pretty close together about the plants, as high as you shall think proper to earth them, which should be almost to their tops.

Then let the earth be very well broke, and lay it up about them as high as they are tied, remembering that every plant be earthed singly, laying the earth up quite round the plant; and at the same time observing to pat it gently with the back of the spade both to fix it in its due place and position, and that wet may readily run off.

Those earthed up now will be fit for use in October, November, and December, and the two succeeding months, but in sharp frost should be covered with dry litter.

#### *Spinage.*

The spinage which was sown in August should now be cleared, and thinned out to proper distances.

This work may be performed either by hand or hoe; it is not material which, provided the weeds are destroyed, and the plants left regular.

In dry weather, hoeing them is the most expeditious method; but, if the weather is moist, it will be best to perform that work by hand.

Let the plants be thinned out regularly to the distance of four or five inches, observing to leave the strongest; and let the whole be perfectly well cleared from weeds.

Where spinage was not sown last month, it may still be done, and in a rich warm soil, will succeed tolerably well; but must be done in the beginning of the month.

#### *Young Onions.*

The onions which were sown the beginning or towards the middle of August, will now want weeding: let this be done in due time, before the weeds get the start of the plants; for, in that case, they would do the young crop much injury, and also render it very troublesome to separate the weeds from them.

This work must be done entirely by hand, and with great care; otherwise many of these young plants will be drawn

out with the weeds : for the onions are not now to be thinned, except where they rise in clusters.

Where the sowing of onions was omitted last month, you may still sow some seed, there will be a chance of their succeeding, but must be done the first week in the month.

*Turneps.*

Hoe the turneps which were sown the former month ; let this be done in a dry day ; and let your hoe be sharp, and of a middle size.

Cut the weeds up clean, and let the plants be hoed out regular, leaving them eight inches distance.

*Small Sallading.*

Let the different kinds of small sallading be sown once a week, or ten days, as you see it necessary : the sorts are, cresses, mustard, raddish, and rape.

These seeds must now be sown in a warmer situation than in the preceding months, and where the earth is light and rich.

About the middle of this month you may begin to sow these seeds on a warmer border, under a south wall, or other fence of the same aspect.

Towards the end of this month, if the weather should prove very wet and cold, you should begin to sow some small sallad herbs in frames, and cover them with the lights occasionally ; or you may sow them under hand or bell glasses, for these plants will make but poor progress if they are not covered in cold weather ; but, especially, in cold nights.

These plants generally rise best when they are sown in drills ; but the drills must be very shallow, and the seed covered about a quarter of an inch with light earth.

## The Fruit Garden.

*Peaches, &c.*

**G**O over your peaches, nectarines, and other wall-trees, and see that all the branches keep firm in their proper places ; if any be loose, or project from the wall, let them be fastened up in their due position.

This



This prevents their being broken by winds; and, when the whole lays close and regular to the wall, then all the fruit can equally enjoy the benefit of the sun to ripen it; and it also appears decent, and agreeable to the eye.

Where any of the ripening fruit are too much covered with the leaves, let some be displaced; for, if these fruits are too much shaded, they will not ripen freely.

Some shade is requisite and serviceable to all fruit, but when too much is suffered it is a disadvantage; and, in that case, no fruit will attain its natural taste and colour.

But the removing of leaves is only to be practised where they are uncommonly thick, and darken the fruit much; and, in that case, they are only to be thinned regularly, still preserving a slight covering of leaves over the fruit.

*Vines.*

Look over your vines again, to see that the grapes enjoy the necessary advantage of sun and air, to promote their ripening.

Where the bunches are too much shaded, let some of the leaves be taken off; and, where any of the bunches are too close confined between the branches, or entangled with each other, let them be loosened so that each may hang fair in their proper position.

If the vines have produced any shoots in the former month, let them be taken off wherever they appear, for they are useless, and, if left on, they starve, and also darken the fruit.

*Destroy Wasps and Flies.*

Continue to hang up phials of sugared or honey-water, to catch the wasps and flies which come to eat the fruit: these insects will do much mischief to the grapes, if some precaution is not taken to prevent them.

Now, therefore, let some small bags made of thin crape be put over some of the finest and ripest bunches of grapes. These bags should be made just so large as to contain one bunch of fruit, this will effectually keep off the insects, and also the birds: the latter will devour these fruit at a vast rate, if they can come at them, especially the sparrows.

But these you may keep from the fruit by fixing nets before the vines, or hanging up scare-crows of feathers, or discharging a gun or pistol but the most certain method

to preserve some of your finest bunches of fruit from all devourers, is to bag them, as above directed.

Some, for want of crape bags, use those of paper, but these do not do so well, for the sun is then too much excluded from the fruit, and in wet weather, the paper being wetted adheres to the bunches, and rots them; whereas the sun and air have free access through the crape, and when wet, they will become very soon dry again; and if wet weather continue, no inconvenience attends the fruit by means of the bags.

Hang up phials of sweetened water, also, upon the choice kinds of fig-trees; for insects generally swarm about these trees, to feed on the fruit.

You should also watch birds very well, or they will peck and spoil many of the best figs.

#### *Gather Apples and Pears.*

Now begin to gather apples and pears for keeping, according as they are fit: many sorts will be ready to take down towards the middle, or latter end of the month.

This work must always be done in a perfectly dry day; and be sure to let the fruit be also quite dry before you begin to pull them.

All fruit which are for keeping should hang their full time on the trees, but especially the winter pears and apples.

About the latter end of this month many of the winter fruits will be fit to gather; but, if the weather is fine, let them hang on the trees till October.

When the apples or pears have hung their full time on the trees, they will begin to drop off apace: that is a certain sign of their maturity, and that they may be gathered.

#### *Prepare for Planting.*

Begin, towards the end of the month, to prepare the ground where new plantations of fruit-trees are to be made.

If an entire new border is intended for wall-trees, &c. let it be worked up to the depth of at least eighteen inches or two feet, adding, at the same time, some thoroughly rotted dung; and it would be an advantage to add, also, some fresh loam from a common; but, particularly, to the places where the trees are to stand.

*Strawberries.*



*Strawberries.*

Now is a proper time to plant strawberries; and, if moist weather, it may be done any time in the month; but, if the weather be very dry and hot, it will be proper not to begin that work till the middle, or towards the latter end of the month.

These plants should be put into beds four feet broad, allowing alleys between the beds eighteen or twenty inches wide, for the convenience of going in to weed, water, and gather the fruit.

The plants are to be set in rows lengthways the beds; the rows to be fifteen or eighteen inches asunder, and the plants to be set the same distance from one another in the rows.

It will be most proper to do that work in moist weather, if possible.

The proper sorts of strawberries to plant are,

The scarlet strawberry.

The hautbaux.

The very large chil strawberry.

The white and red wood strawberries.

The pine-apple strawberry, having a greenish fruit.

The alpine everlasting, or, prolific strawberry.

This last has been but a few years in England, and is much esteemed for its fruitfulness, for the plants continue to produce fruit from June to November, and if sheltered with a common frame and glasses, will, if open weather, continue bearing till Christmas.

But the fruit of this sort is in the greatest perfection in August, and beginning of September.

The Pleasure, or Flower Garden.

*Hyacinths and Tulip Roots.*

**I**N the third or fourth week in this month it will be time to plant the choice hyacinth and tulip roots.

Let the beds for these roots be prepared at least a fortnight before the roots are to be planted; that is to say, if you trench them a considerable depth; for some people who are very curious in hyacinths, stir up the beds to the

depth of two feet; so, consequently, should remain, before you put in the roots, the time above-mentioned, in order that the earth may be well settled. But, however, do not fail to trench these beds one good spade deep and one shoveling, and let the earth be remarkably well broken.

These beds should be made three feet and a half broad, but never broader than four feet; and make the beds highest in the middle, laying them in a rounding form.

In each bed plant four or five rows of the above roots, according to the breadth of the bed, allowing nine inches between row and row, and the roots should be planted the same distance from one another in the row: there is nothing like allowing them room; but however, never plant them closer in the rows than six inches from one another.

These roots should be planted at least four or five inches deep; that is, the crown of every root should be so much below the surface of the bed.

#### *Ranunculuses, &c.*

Now also, about the middle or towards the latter end of this month, begin to prepare the beds for the best ranunculuses and anemonie roots: and any time after the twentieth of the month, to the end of October, is the time to plant them.

Where it is intended to plant these roots in beds by themselves, let the beds be made also three feet and a half or four feet broad, laying them somewhat rounding: that form best throws off the wet, and is more agreeable to the eye.

Let these roots be planted not less than six inches distant each way from one another, and plant them two or three inches deep, but not more.

The above distance is more room than what is generally allowed to ranunculuses and anemonie roots, but they should never be planted closer; for when the plants shoot up for bloom, they draw each other up weak, and the flowers never grow large: besides, when the flowers stand so near together, they never shew themselves to such advantage, as when they stand distant from one another.

And where flower roots, either bulbous or tuberous, are planted at proper distances, they produce much larger off-sets for an increase, than such roots as are planted too near.



*Sow Anemonie and Ranunculus Seed.*

This is still a proper time to sow the seeds of anemonies and ranunculuses, where it was not done in August.

For that purpose, fill some pots, boxes, or tubs, with rich light earth, making the surface even; then scatter on the seeds pretty thick, each sort separate, and cover them with light fine earth not more than a quarter of an inch thick.

The plants will come up in about six weeks, or two months, when they must have a warm sunny situation, and should be protected in winter, in time of great rain or hard frost.

About the Michaelmas twelvemonth, they should be transplanted into a bed of common earth, and in the spring following will flower; when, perhaps, they will afford you several new flowers that are double, and of fine colours.

As for the single flower, it should be destroyed.

*Carnation Layers.*

Take care now of the carnation layers: where there are any still remaining on the old plants, let them be transplanted some time before the middle of the month, that they may have time to take good root before winter.

The choicest kinds of these layers you may plant in small pots for the more readily protecting them in winter. The layers of the common sorts you may plant into nursery beds in a warm situation, and some of the strongest layers may be planted out at once into the borders, or where you intend them to flower.

Where there were any of the above layers planted in pots or in beds, in the former month, let them now be kept clear from weeds; and if the season proves dry, do not fail to water them now and then.

*Auricula Plants in Pots.*

Auricula plants in pots demand an equal share of attention at this time, and particularly those that were shifted last month. These plants should, if the weather proves at this time very dry, be now and then moderately watered; but if there should fall much rain, it will be proper to defend the plants from it, for much wet is destructive of auricula plants.

To protect the choicer kinds of these plants in such weather, let the pots be placed close together in a bed  
arched

arched over with hoops; and when the weather is excessive wet, let some large thick mats or canvas be drawn over the hoops to defend the plants; or the pots may be set close together in a garden frame, and the glasses may be put on as occasion requires.

The above is a much better, and more certain method of protecting the plants from wet, than to lay the pots down on one side. But where there are no such conveniencies, it will in that case be proper to lay the pots down to prevent them receiving too much moisture, which would rot the plants.

#### *Auricula Seed.*

The seeds of auriculas may still be sown where not done in August.

These seeds should at this time be sown in large pots, or in boxes filled with earth. Let the earth be light and rich, and broken very fine, and the seed should be sown tolerably thick, and covered a quarter of an inch or thereabouts with earth.

The pots or boxes should be placed out of the mid-day sun, till towards the end of this month, and then set in a warm situation.

These auricula plants raised from this sowing will flower the next spring twelvemonth.

#### *Digging the Borders.*

Towards the latter end of this month you should begin to dig such borders as are vacant; that is to say, such borders where the plants have in general, or at least mostly, done flowering, in order to prepare them to receive plants and roots in the beginning, or any time next month; besides, by digging the borders at this time, it will effectually destroy weeds, and they will appear neat for a long time.

#### *Transplant perennial Plants.*

Transplant into borders, towards the latter end of this month, some of the strongest perennial plants which were sown in the spring or beginning of the summer.

These may be safely transplanted any time after the middle of the month, particularly carnations, pinks, and sweet williams; and also the seedling wall flowers, stock July flowers and columbines, with many other sorts.

But



But in transplanting the above or any other perennial or biennial plants at this time, it will be proper to take advantage of dripping weather; and many of those which were pricked out from the seed bed, into nursery beds, two or three months ago, may now be readily taken up with balls of earth about their roots, and planted in the place allotted them. By this practice the plants will not feel their removal.

Do not forget, as soon as planted, to give each plant a moderate watering: this will close the earth properly about the roots.

*Sowing Seeds of bulbous Flower Roots.*

The seeds of tulips may still be sown, and also the seeds of hyacinths and crown imperials, with the seeds of fritillarias, and of most other bulbs.

These seeds may be sown in beds or boxes; they will succeed in either: let the earth be rich and light, and broken very fine, and lay the surface perfectly smooth.

Then sow the seeds separately on the surface, and tolerably thick, and cover them with light sifted earth, near half an inch deep, or thereabouts.

*Cut Box Edgings.*

Clip box edges where it was omitted in the two former months, but let this be done as soon in the month as possible, that the box may have time to recover a little before winter.

*Plant Box.*

Now is the time to begin to plant box where new edgings are to be made, but this should not be done till some time after the middle of the month.

There is no time in the year box will take root in better than this; but as soon as an edging is planted, it will be proper to give a hearty watering.

Likewise where there are edgings of box, that have grown thick and clumsy, they should now be taken up and parted, and a proper quantity of the best box should be slipped and trimmed, and immediately planted down again in a neat, close, but thin edging.

This is also a good time to repair any former planted box edgings where wanting; therefore, where there are any gaps, let them now be mended: the box will be well rooted

rooted in a month after planting, and the edgings will then appear neat all winter.

For the method of planting these edgings, see October.

#### *Clip Hedges.*

Finish clipping all such hedges as still remain untrimmed; and let this be done in the beginning of the month, before the shoots get too hard.

In clipping hedges, always take particular care to have the shears in perfect good order, then you will be able to make both neat and expeditious work. Let the sides of the hedges of all sorts be always trimmed in to the former year's cut, and as strait as possible, for it looks ill to see the sides of hedges waved, especially when occasioned by being badly shorn or clipped; and always observe to shear or train a hedge in such a manner as it may run somewhat taper from the bottom to the top; for the top should never be suffered to grow so broad as the bottom, and take great care to cut the top as even as a line.

#### *Mow Grass-Walks and Lawns.*

Mow grass-walks and lawns, and let this be always done in proper time, never permitting the grass to grow rank, for that not only looks extremely disagreeable in a garden, but when the grass is suffered to grow very rough, it renders it difficult to mow it, to any truth, so as to make the surface look well.

Let the edges of all the grass next gravel walks, or the borders, be also kept close and neat.

The edges of grass walks should, during the summer, in order to keep them perfectly neat, be gone over about once every fortnight with a pair of shears, cutting the grass in as close as can be to the edge.

For that purpose nothing is so handy as a pair of sheep shears; but where these are not to be had, garden shears will do.

#### *Roll Gravel Walks.*

Roll gravel walks at least twice every week, for they will not look well, nor be agreeable to walk upon without they are rolled so often: and let these walks be always kept very neat, not suffering weeds or any litter to appear on them.

*Borders.*



*Borders.*

Keep the borders also, in particular those near the principal walks, always very neat. Let no weeds stand, nor suffer them, nor any dead leaves or other rubbish, to remain in such places.

*Clearing away decayed Flower Stems.*

Likewise go round the borders, from time to time, and cut down the stems of such plants as are past flowering, never suffering these to stand long after the bloom is past, for it looks ill to see dead stems stand up among the growing plants, or such as are in perfection.

*Trimming flowering Plants.*

Look over now and then among the plants in general; and, were straggling shoots or irregular branches advance, take them off, clear away all weak dangling shoots, and take off dead or damaged leaves, suffering nothing to remain that would disfigure the plants.

Continue also to tie up to stakes such plants as have been blown down by winds or borne down by the weight of wet.

This in particular should be well attended to, for it looks well to see all the plants standing perfectly upright, and securely in their places.

*Fibrous rooted Plants.*

This is the time to slip and plant out many kinds of fibrous rooted plants, to increase them; such as rose campion, scarlet lychnis, catchfly and campanulus.

When these plants are grown into large tufts, it will be proper to take the roots intirely up, and part them, and plant some of the best slips again in the borders or places where they are to flower: the smaller slips may be planted together in a bed to remain to get strength.

Likewise part the roots of daisies and polyanthus, double chamomile and thurst, gentianella, saxifrage and London pride. Let these also, where increased to large bunches, be taken up and divided; and plant the slips in a shady border, about five or six inches asunder, and give them some water.

But the saxifrage is generally planted in pots on account of its small roots, which are apt to be lost on the common borders, and also for the sake of its being moved into fore courts,

courts, when in bloom, where it will make a beautiful appearance in the spring.

The double rocket, where it was not taken up and parted last month, should now be done: the double batchers buttons, with the double feverfew, may also now be managed in the same manner; but this should be done the beginning of this month.

The leonurus, double ragged robin, and all other perennial fibrous rooted flower plants, that have done flowering, may now be propagated by parting their roots; this being a good season to remove most sorts.

*Transplanting Pionies and other knot-rooted Plants.*

Now is also a good time to transplant pionies, and also to part their roots; and the different sorts of flag iris's, monkshood, fraxinella, and all other such like plants, may now be taken up and parted where necessary, and transplanted into places where wanting.

*Transplanting flowering Shrubs.*

Towards the latter end of this month it will be time to begin to transplant many sorts of hardy shrubs and trees where wanting.

But more particularly the evergreen kinds; as for the deciduous sorts, that is, those that shed their leaves, it will be adviseable to defer any principal removal of them till about the middle of next month, when their leaves will be dropped; and from that time to the middle or end of March, you may, in open weather, transplant all kinds.

But, however, when there is any planting wanted to be done in a hurry, you may venture to remove most sorts of shrubs any time after the twentieth of the month, and there will be no hazard of their succeeding.

Let such shrubs or trees as are transplanted at the above time, have a good watering as soon as they are planted.

## The Nursery.

**B**EGIN now, where not done in August, to prepare, dig, and trench the ground where you intend to plant out a nursery of young stocks for fruit trees; and also where you intend to plant out young forest trees, and all kinds



kinds of hardy shrubs, the latter end of this, or beginning of next month.

By getting the ground for new plantations ready at this time, it will not only forward the business greatly, but also prepare the ground the better to receive the advantage of rains, to mellow and moisten it, which will be a great advantage to the plants.

*Transplanting deciduous Shrubs and Trees.*

In the last week in this month it will be time to begin to transplant many kinds of deciduous shrubs and trees; that is, such as shed their leaves in winter.

Particularly such hardy trees and shrubs, whose leaves are at that time decayed, may be safely removed, especially if the weather be somewhat moist.

But in removing any kinds of shrubs or trees at this time, let it be observed, that, if the weather should then be very dry, it will be necessary, as soon as they are transplanted, to give them a hearty watering.

There is great advantage in making these early plantations; that is, in transplanting soon after the leaf decays; the plants having time to take tolerable good root before the frost sets in hard to prevent it: besides, such trees and shrubs as are transplanted at this time, will be so well established by next summer, that the drought at that time cannot hurt them.

But, on the other hand, it will be proper to take notice, that transplanting is not now proposed to be done in general, but only for such trees and shrubs whose leaves are absolutely decayed.

*Transplanting Evergreens.*

Towards the end of this month you may likewise remove, or transplant many kinds of evergreen shrubs and trees, as those transplanted at this time, will freely take root.

Particularly the common and Portugal laurels, laurinus, phillyreas, pyracanthes and arbutus, and several other kinds.

Observing, as soon as planted, to water them freely, to settle the earth close to their roots.

*Fruit-Trees.*

Such sorts of fruit-trees whose leaves are now decayed, may also be transplanted towards the latter end of this month;

month; observing, if the weather be dry, to give them some water.

*Stocks to bud and graft on.*

Stocks to bud and graft the different kinds of fruit upon, either those raised from seed sown in the spring, or from cuttings, or layers, or suckers, may in the last week in this month be transplanted into the quarters or places where they are to remain for the above purpose.

These are to be planted in rows two feet and a half asunder, and the plants to be set fifteen or eighteen inches distant in the rows.

*Propagating Trees and Shrubs by Cuttings.*

Now begin to plant cuttings of such trees and shrubs as will grow by that method.

By these means the best gooseberries and currant trees are raised; and the middle or towards the latter end of this month is the proper time to begin to plant the cuttings; but the cuttings of these shrubs may be planted any time in open weather, from the middle of this month to the same time in February; and those which are planted in this or next month generally succeed the best.

These cuttings, both of the gooseberries and currants, must be the same year's shoots, and the best length is from about ten to fifteen inches: it will be proper to plant them in a shady border.

Plant also, in the latter end of this month, cuttings of honey-suckles, that being the best way to propagate the several sorts of these shrubs.

In choosing the cuttings, mind to take young shoots, such as are strong, and cut them into proper lengths of about nine, ten, or twelve inches; and plant them in rows ten or twelve inches distant, and allow six or eight inches between plant and plant in the row.

They should be planted in a shady border.

In planting them, mind to put each cutting full half way, or thereabouts, in the earth.

Many other kinds of flowering shrubs and trees are raised by cuttings; and the middle or latter end of this month is the time to begin to plant cuttings of all the hardy kinds.

This is rather the best time in the year to plant cuttings of laurel and Portugal laurel.

These



## Sep.] THE GREEN-HOUSE.

These cuttings may be planted in a shady border any time in this month, but about the middle or towards the latter end is rather the best time to do that work.

In taking off these cuttings, mind to take a parcel of the moderate grown shoots, of the same year's growth, observing to cut off with each shoot, about two or three inches of the last year's wood, and this will make them more certainly succeed.

Having provided the cuttings, cut off the leaves at bottom, and half way up the shoot; then plant them in a shady border, putting each cutting as far into the earth as it is stripped, and water them.

### *Destroy Weeds.*

Now take the opportunity, in dry weather, to hoe between the rows of all kinds of trees and shrubs, in order to destroy all the weeds; and this should now be very well attended to, before the autumn rains begin.

Likewise take particular care at this time to let every other part of the nursery be thoroughly cleared from weeds, for these will now come up very thick and fast in every part from seed.

---

## The Green-House.

### *Orange and Lemon-Trees.*

**I**N the last week in this month it will be time, if the nights prove cold, to remove the orange-trees, and many other green-house plants, into their winter quarters.

Let the oranges and lemons, in particular, and such like kinds, be taken into the green-house at the first approach of cold nights; for one sharp night would make their leaves change their fine green colour, and they would hardly be able to recover it again all winter.

Therefore, at the time mentioned, take the opportunity of a perfect dry day, and carry into the green-house the more tender kinds, and place them clear of each other; but they need not be placed in regular order till the myrtles and other hardier plants are brought in next month.

When the oranges and other tenderer plants are in the green-house, let the windows be opened every mild day to their full extent.

The windows may also be continued open all night for the first fortnight after the plants are carried in, except there should happen frost, or very windy or cold wet weather: in that case keep the house shut close every night.

At the time when the plants are removed into the greenhouse, let them be well cleared from dead leaves, if there be any; and if any dead wood appears let that also be taken out.

In the mean time take proper care of all the plants till the time to remove them into shelter.

Let them in dry weather be properly supplied with water; but towards the end of the month let them be watered more moderately than at the beginning.

## The Hot-House.

### *Pine-Apple Plants.*

**I**F the pine-apple plants which are to produce their fruit the next year, were not shifted into larger pots the last month, that work should be done the first week in this month at farthest, otherwise the growth of the plants will be greatly retarded.

In shifting these plants you must observe to preserve the ball of earth entire about their roots, placing it with the same care into the larger pots, and fill up the pot with fresh compost; then stir up the bark, plunge the pots again therein to the rims, and give the plants a very moderate watering.

But in shifting and ordering these plants, let the same rules be observed as advised in the two former months.

But where the plants were shifted a month or five weeks ago, and at that time no fresh tan added, it will now be proper to examine the heat of the bark wherein the plants in general are plunged; and if you find it is very weak, stir up the bark to the bottom with a fork, and plunge the pots again immediately to their rims.

This will revive the heat of the bed, and will continue it in a good condition till the next month, when you must add a good quantity of fresh tan, and as much of the old must be taken away.

*Admitting*



*Admitting Air.*

You must observe to admit air to the plants in general, every day at this season, if the sun is warm, by drawing the glasses down, or opening them a little, as you see it convenient.

*Watering.*

The plants will require moderate refreshments of water, once in three or four days, provided there is a brisk heat at bottom; but if the heat in the bed is very weak, once in a week will be sufficient.

*Adding fresh Tan.*

About the latter end of this month you should procure a proper quantity of fresh tan from the tan yards, to be ready to renew the bark beds in the hot-house and stove the next month.

For this purpose you should provide as much as will be equal to one third of what the bed will contain, though sometimes one half or more is required.

When the tan is brought in, let it be thrown up in a heap, and let it lay for ten or twelve days to drain before it is put into the hot-house.

But if it is very wet, as is sometimes the case when newly thrown out of the tan pit, it should, provided the weather be dry, be spread abroad thinly where the sun comes, to lie two or three days that the sun and air may draw off or exhale the grossest of the moisture, for if put in too wet, it will be a long time before it will acquire a proper degree of heat.

The tan or bark for the above purpose should be such as hath been about a fortnight or three weeks, or, at most, a month out of the tan pit; and also observing, that, as some of the tan is pretty large, and some quite small, the middle sized bark is what should be chosen.

For the further management see the work of next month.

*Crowns and Suckers.*

The bed wherein this year's crowns and suckers are plunged should be kept to a good heat, by which means the young plants will make good roots before winter.

If the pots are placed upon a dung hot-bed, let a lining of fresh hot dung be applied to the sides of the bed; when  
you

you find the heat is decreased, observing to raise the lining about two or three inches higher than the bottom of the frame.

And about the latter end of this month it will be proper to lay some hay or straw round the outsides of the frame, which will keep out the frost, and preserve a kindly growing heat in the bed.

When the nights begin to be cold, let some mats be thrown over the glasses every night.

Raise the glasses a little in the middle of the day to let out the steam, and to admit air to the plants.

Continue the care of all other tender plants in the hot-house or stove; let them be carefully looked over, at least, three times a week, to see when water is wanted, as some will require it every other day, and the generality will need to be refreshed twice a week at least.

But particularly all the shrubby kinds.

The succulent kinds will also require to be refreshed moderately with that article once a week.

OCTOBER.



## OCTOBER.

*Work to be done in the Kitchen Garden.**Planting Beans.*

**T**HE beginning or any time in this month you may plant some beans, for an early crop in the succeeding summer.

Those which are planted now, will come in for use the end of May or beginning of June.

The mazagan bean is the best to plant at this season, for they will come earlier than any other, and are excellent bearers, though but of humble growth; they will stand the winter better than the larger sorts.

A warm border under a south wall or other south fence is the best situation to plant these beans in at this season.

Plant them in rows a-cross the borders; that is, provided the border is five or six feet wide; and observing that the rows are to be two feet or thirty inches asunder, which will be room enough for this sort; and the beans to be planted about three inches distant in the rows.

You may also plant one row lengthways of the border, within two inches of the wall; these will sometimes outlive the winter, when those at a greater distance from the wall are cut off.

But if the border is narrow, you had better plant two rows only, lengthways of the border; that is, one row near the wall, and the other two feet and a half from it.

They may be planted either with a dibble, putting them in an inch and a half, or near two inches deep; or may draw drills that depth, and drop the beans therein; drawing the earth an equal depth over them.

In planting early beans, many gardeners choose first to sow the beans pretty thick in a bed of rich earth, and when come up a little height, transplant them into the borders.

The method is this: dig a bed about three or four feet broad of good earth in a warm corner: the bed being dug, draw the depth of about an inch and a half, or near

two inches of earth equally off the surface, to one side; this done, scatter in the beans about an inch asunder, and immediately cover them with the earth which was drawn for that purpose off the bed; or otherwise you may with your hoe flatways draw broad drills a-cross the bed, and scatter the beans pretty thick in the drill, and draw the earth equally over them.

When the beans are come up, and grown an inch and a half or two inches high or thereabouts, they should then, in mild weather, be transplanted into the above-mentioned borders, and are to be planted in rows at the same distance and in the manner before directed, observing to close the earth well about every plant; they will soon take root and grow freely.

One reason for this practice is this: most gardeners allow that beans which are transplanted will come in sooner by a week or ten days, than those that are not; though the seed of both are put into the ground the same day.

Another thing allowed is, that when the beans are thus first sown in a small bed, and severe frosts afterwards set in any time before the plants are ready to be transplanted; in that case, the seed, or plants, by being all together within a small compass, can be readily protected by placing a frame, or some other covering, over them: and by that means be preserved; when those in the open ground are sometimes killed, or greatly damaged by the frost.

#### *Sowing Peas.*

Now sow some peas, for an early crop. Let this be done in the first or second week in the month, and the produce will come in at an early season, provided they escape the frost; but however, if they are sown any time in the month, it will not make great difference; and indeed those sown in the latter end of the month will have the best chance to succeed.

The earliest hotspur, is the proper sort of peas to sow at this time. Choose such seeds as are plump and sound.

There are several sorts of the hotspurs; such as the golden, the Charlton, the Reading, the master, and Nichols's; but the golden are now generally sown for the first crop.

A warm south border, under a wall or other fence, is the proper place to sow them in. The seed must be sown in drills,



drills, either lengthways or a-cross the border, according to its breadth. Where the border is but narrow, and that there are trees against the wall, &c. let only one drill be drawn lengthways of it, at the distance of two feet from the wall or pales, and scatter the peas therein pretty thick, but as regular as can be, and cover them immediately about an inch and a half deep with earth.

But where the border is six, eight, or ten feet broad or more, it will then be proper to sow the peas in drills crossways the border, from the wall to the front: but where there are trees against the wall, let the drills be drawn forty inches distant from one another; but especially if intended to place stakes for the plants to run upon.

#### *Lettuces.*

Lettuces which were sown the middle of September, to be planted in frames or under hand-glasses, to stand the winter for spring use, and an early summer crop, should be transplanted into the places where they are to remain all winter; this may be done about the latter end of this month; or as soon as the plants are fit.

Choose a rich light spot for these plants in a warm situation, and where it lies well to the sun.

Mark out a bed for them the width of a cucumber or melon frame, and lay the same somewhat sloping to the sun, and rake the surface even.

Plant the lettuces therein, about two inches distant each way; close the earth extremely well about each, take care that they are not planted too deep, and let the surface of the ground between the plants be left perfectly smooth; then give them a moderate watering to settle the earth to their roots.

Then put on a frame, and cover them with the lights in frosty or very wet and cold weather; by which means these may be saved, and will be ready in case those which were planted in the open borders are killed.

You may plant some of these lettuces under bell or hand-glasses, if you have not frames at liberty: where these are wanting you may plant them in a bed in a warm spot, and then place some hoops a-cross the bed, and cover them with mats occasionally, in frosty and rainy weather.

The lettuce plants which were sown the end of August or beginning of September to stand in the open air all

winter, shon'd be transplanted about the middle or some time in this month.

These you may plant in warm borders, to stand the winter without covering; and if the winter should prove mild they will cabbage early in the spring.

Let these be planted four or five inches distant every way, and plant one row close to the wall, which will sometimes live through the winter, when those at a greater distance are destroyed by the severity of the weather.

#### *Colliflower Plants.*

Colliflower plants which were planted in frames the former month, to forward them to be planted the latter end of this month under bell or hand glasses, must be constantly uncovered night and day for the greatest part of this month, unless the weather should prove very wet and cold; then, in that case, put the glasses on every night, and even in the day time, during the time of heavy rains; but let the plants at such times have air by tilting up the lights a considerable height.

In the last week in this month transplant some of the best colliflower plants into the place where they are to remain to produce their heads.

These are to be covered with hand or bell glasses, observing to put two or three plants under each glass; and if they all survive the winter, then in the spring to thin them, leaving only one of the stoutest plants in a place.

The ground for these plants should be rich and high, in a warm situation, and where water is not apt to stand in winter. Let some good rotten dung be spread over the piece, and then let the ground be dug one spade deep, and well broken, taking care to bury the dung regularly.

Then mark the ground out into beds three feet wide, and allow alleys a foot wide between the beds, for the conveniency of going in to take off, and put on, or raise the glasses.

Then set your line along the middle of the bed, from one end to the other; and at every three feet, put in three plants, within four or five inches of each other, placing them triangularways, and close the earth well about their roots and stems; then give them a very moderate watering, just to settle the earth to the roots.

When



When the whole is planted, bring your hand or bell-glasses, and set them ready, observing to place one glass over every three plants, as above.

The glasses are to be kept constantly and close down over the plants, till they have taken good root, which will be well effected in a fortnight's time; then raise them on props, such as brick-bats, or pieces of wood or stone, about three inches thick; and with these to raise the glasses, placing them on the south side, one prop under each glass. In this manner the glasses are to remain night and day, except in frosty weather, when they must be let down quite close, and earth drawn round the outside, that no air can enter; but if the months of November and December prove mild and dry, and the plants are much on the growing order, it will be proper to let the glasses off in fine dry days; and keep them always over the plants on nights and rainy weather; but must be raised two or three inches on the warmest side with props, as above hinted, to admit air to the plants.

But if you are not provided sufficiently with hand or bell-glasses, or frames, you may plant some colliflower plants out for good on a warm border, where they will sometimes survive the winter, and produce good heads.

But where this is obliged so be practised, it will be proper to put in a parcel of the plants close under the wall, setting them about four inches a-part, and these will have a chance to live, if those at a greater distance from the wall should be destroyed, and in the spring may be transplanted into an open spot of ground.

The colliflower plants which are to be kept all winter in frames, should also, towards the end of the month, be transplanted into their proper beds, and the frames at the same time to be set over them.

The plants are to be set in these beds about four inches asunder, and are to be defended all winter with glasses, according to the directions given in each month.

#### *Cabbage Plants.*

About the middle or latter end of this month, you may plant out a few early cabbage plants, in the place where they are to remain for cabbaging early next summer.

Choose a piece of good ground for these plants, and let some good rotten dung be spread over the same before you dig it; the ground must then be dug one spade deep;

observing to bury the dung properly in the bottom of the trenches, as you proceed in digging.

The plants are then to be planted in rows, two feet distant in the row, and allow the same distance between the rows, which will be room enough for this early plantation, as most of them will be used before they grow to any considerable size.

But let some of the early cabbage plants remain in the nursery beds in a warm situation, till January or February, before you plant them out for good; for it sometimes happens in severe winters, that many of the plants which are planted out early into a more open exposure, are killed by the frost.

In that case you can have recourse to the nursery beds to make good the defects, or to make new plantations.

Where there are cabbage plants that still remain in the seed bed, let them be transplanted into nursery beds, the beginning of this month, that they may have time to get some strength before the frosty weather begins.

These should now be planted in a warm situation. Let a spot of rich earth be dug, and put in the plants about five or six inches asunder.

#### *Brocoli.*

Brocoli plants which were late planted, should now be forwarded as much as possible in their growth. Let the ground between and about the plants be broken with a hoe, and at the same time draw some earth up about the stems of the plants.

This will be of great service to these plants, provided it is done in due time; for by loosening the earth and drawing it up round their stems, it will not only protect them the better from frost, but will also very much promote their growth.

#### *Spinage.*

Winter spinage must now be kept exceeding clean from weeds, for if these are permitted to grow, at this time, they would soon over-run the plants and totally destroy them. These plants are at this season best cleared by hand, particularly where there is chickweed, and such like spreading or running weeds among them.

Where



Where the spinage was not properly thinned last month, let that work be now done in a proper manner, and do it in the beginning of the month.

In doing this, observe to clear away the worst, and leave the strongest plants standing at the distance of about four or five inches from one another.

#### *Endive.*

Continue every week to tie up some endive plants for blanching.

Choose a dry day to do this, observing always to make choice for this purpose, of such plants as are quite or nearly full grown. Let the leaves be gathered up regularly, and close in the hand; and then, with a piece of strong bafs, tie them neatly together.

Where the endive is thus tied, you may also, at the same time, in dry weather, draw up some earth round each plant, almost to the top of their leaves. This will very much promote the blanching, and will make the plants exceeding white and tender to eat.

Some people blanch or whiten endive by laying boards or tiles flatways upon the plants. The plants will to be fore whiten tolerably well by this method, but not so regularly as those whose leaves are tied together as above directed.

#### *Clear the Beds of Aromatic Plants.*

Now clear the beds of aromatic plants from weeds; and let them have the winter dressing.

This must be particularly observed in the beds of sage, savory, thyme and hyssop; and also the beds of mint, balm, tarragon, cress and sorrel; and all other beds of aromatic herbs.

They are now to be treated in the following manner:

Cut down all the stalks or decayed flower stems close to the head of the plants, or to the surface of the ground, according to what the plants are, and at the same time clear the beds very well from weeds and all litter, and carry the whole off the ground.

After this it would be a great advantage to get some very rotten dung, and let it be broken small, then spread a sprinkling of it equally over the surface of all the beds, and with a small spade or trowel dig lightly between such of the plants as will admit of it, taking care to bury the

dung as well as you can a little depth in the ground, and at the same time dig the alleys, spreading a little of the earth upon the beds, leaving the edges full and straight.

Thus the beds will appear decent all the winter, and the plants will reap much advantage from such a dressing, as will be seen in the spring, when they begin to shoot.

But the beds of mint and pepper-mint will not well admit of digging; therefore, let the stalks, if any, be cut down close to the ground, then clear the beds from weeds, and spread a little rotten dung, as said above, over the beds. Then dig the alleys, and strew some of the earth on the beds over the dung.

This will protect the roots of the mint somewhat from frost, and the rains will wash in the virtue of the dung, and the earth which was thrown out of the alley; and the whole will greatly enrich the beds, and strengthen the roots, and in the spring the plants will rise with vigour.

#### *A Bed to raise young Mint in Winter.*

Where young mint is required in the winter season, preparations should now be made to raise some.

For that purpose a slight hot-bed must be made towards the end of the month. Make the bed for a single light box or frame; this will be large enough for a middling family, and make it about twenty inches or two feet thick of dung.

Then set on the frame, and cover the bed about three inches deep with earth; then get some roots of mint, and lay them pretty close together upon the surface, and cover them with more earth about an inch thick, and give a moderate watering.

Put on the glass, and observe to raise it behind every day to admit air.

The plants will come up and be fit for use in three weeks or a month's time.

#### *Dressing the Asparagus Beds.*

In the beginning, or some time in this month, cut down the asparagus stalks, and dress the beds.

Let the stalks or haulm be cut down close to, or at least within two or three inches of the surface of the beds; carry them immediately off the ground: then, with a sharp hoe, cut up all the weeds, and draw them off the beds into the alleys.

This



This done stretch the line, and with a spade mark out the alleys about eighteen or twenty inches wide, or two feet, according to the width they were at first made.

Then dig the alleys one spade deep, and spread the earth, at least the greatest part of it, nearly over the beds; and, as you advance in digging, observe to pare the weeds, which were raked off the beds, into the bottom of the trench, and cover them a proper depth with earth. In digging these alleys observe to do it in a neat manner; that is, let an equal quantity of earth be laid over every bed, and make the edges of the beds full and strait; the alleys should all be of an equal depth, and the bottoms must be level.

But where it is intended to manure asparagus beds with dung, this is the time to do it; but the dung must be applied before the alleys are dug.

The dung for that purpose must be very rotten, and also very good; none is more proper than the dung of old cucumber or melon beds; this must be spread over the beds when the haulm and weeds are cleared off; let the dung be well broken, and lay it an equal thickness in every part; then dig the alleys as above directed, and spread a due quantity of the earth of each alley over the dung.

When the asparagus beds have thus had their winter dressing, there may be planted in each alley a row of coleworts, or cabbage plants; set the plants six or eight inches distant in the row.

In this situation such plants will, even in severe winters, sometimes survive the frost; when those which are planted in an open or level spot are destroyed.

Or there may be planted in each alley a row of early garden beans.

#### *Asparagus for Forcing.*

The asparagus which is intended for forcing, should also now have their stalks cut down, and the weeds drawn off the beds into the alleys, as above; then dig the alleys to bury the weeds; and as you proceed, spread a little of the earth also over the beds.

But that which is to be forced this winter, need not have any thing more done than to cut down the haulm or stalks of the plants.

*Seedling Asparagus.*

The seedling asparagus which was sown last spring, should also now have a little dressing.

That is, to clear the bed from weeds, and then spread an inch or two in depth of rotten dung over the bed.

*Earth up Celery.*

Celery should now be very duly earthed up according as it advances in height, in order that the plants may be well blanched before severe frosts attack them.

Therefore take advantage of dry days, and earth them up a due height. Let the earth be well broken, and lay it up to the plants with care not to break the leaves or bury the hearts of them.

*Earth up Cardoons.*

Earth up cardoons. This must be done in dry weather, and when the leaves of the plants are dry.

In earthing these plants, observe, at each time, first to tie with a hay-band their leaves close together, gathering the leaves up regularly.

Then let the earth be very well broken, and lay it up equally of a due thickness and height about every plant.

*Small Sallad Herbs.*

Continue to sow the seeds of small sallad herbs, particularly mustard, cresses, radish, and rape; as also lettuce to cut while young.

These seeds must now, towards the end of this month, for the more certainty of having a constant supply, be sown in frames. For that purpose, dig a bed of rich and very light earth in a warm situation: let the bed be made the breadth and length of one of the shallowest garden frames, and it should front the south. Let the earth of this bed be broken very fine, and raise the back or north side of it ten or twelve inches higher than the front, so that it lies sloping to the south sun; then rake the surface smooth, set on the frame, and sink the back part of it about eight or ten inches, so that the surface of the bed may be every where within eight or nine inches of the glasses.

Then draw shallow drills from the back to the front of the frame, about two or three inches asunder; sow the seeds



seeds therein pretty thick, and cover them with earth not more than a quarter of an inch deep,

The bed must be sheltered every night by putting on the glasses, and also in the day time when the weather is very cold or very wet.

Note, small sallad will sometimes, when the season is mild, grow free enough all this and next month in the open air, especially on warm south borders; however, where these herbs are constantly wanted, it will, for the greater certainty of having a proper supply, be adviseable to begin to sow some seed of each kind either in frames or under bell or hand-glasses.

#### *Sow Radish Seed.*

You may now sow a little radish seed. The plants raised from this sowing will, provided the winter proves any thing mild, be ready to draw very early in the spring; and if they should fail, the value of a little seed is not much; it is soon sown, and is well worth the trial.

But this seed must now be sown on a warm border, and the proper time to sow it is about the middle or towards the latter end of the month. Let it be sown pretty thick, and rake it in with care.

#### *Sow Carrot Seed.*

A little carrot seed may also be sown in the last week in the month on a warm border; from this sowing there will be a chance of having a few young carrots very early next spring, provided the frost in winter is not over severe.

#### *Dung and trench Ground.*

Such spaces of kitchen garden ground which are now vacant, should, if possible, be dunged, and also dug or trenched, that it may have the true advantage of fallow, from the sun and air in the winter season.

But in digging such pices of ground which are to lie in fallow till the spring, it should be laid up in ridges; for, by laying the ground in this form, it not only lies much dryer, but also the frost, sun and air, can come more freely to mellow and enrich it, than if laid level; and in the spring, when you want to sow or plant it, the ridges are soon levelled down.

The method of ridging or trenching ground is this:

Let the trenches be marked out two feet and a half wide, and beginning at one end of the piece, to open a trench the above width, and one spade and shovelling deep; let the earth of this trench be carried to the other end, or to that part where you intend to finish or fill up the last trench.

The first trench being thus opened, then proceed to mark out another, and pare the top of it, with all weeds and rubbish thereon, into the bottom of the first; then digging the second trench, turning the earth into the open trench, throwing it up ridgewise, as above-mentioned; and when you have dug to the end of the trench, shovel up the crumbs or loose earth at bottom, throwing it in the other; then proceed to a third trench, and pare and dig it as before; and so proceed with every trench to the end.

When the ground is to be dunged, it should be equally buried in the bottom of the trenches.

## The Fruit Garden.

### *Winter Pears and Apples.*

**W**INTER pears and apples should in general be gathered this month. Some will be fit to take down the beginning of the month, others will not be ready before the middle, or towards the latter end.

To know when the fruits have had their full growth, you should try several of them in different parts of the tree, by turning them gently upward; if they quit the tree easily, it is time to gather them.

But none of the more delicate eating pears should be permitted to hang longer on the trees than the middle of this month, especially if the nights are inclinable to frost; for, if they are once touched with the frost, it will occasion many of them to rot, before they are fit for the table, even if ever so good care is afterwards taken of them.

But suffer neither apples nor pears to remain longer on the trees than the latter end of this month, for they will get no good after that time.

A dry



A dry day must be chosen for this work, and also let the fruit and leaves be quite dry before you begin to gather; about eleven or twelve o'clock is the best time in the day to begin, and may be continued till three or four in the afternoon.

The fruit should be carefully pulled one by one and put into a basket, taking care to lay them in gently, that they may not bruise one another.

As the fruit are gathered, let them be carried into the fruit room or any other dry place, and lay them carefully in heaps, each sort by themselves.

Thus let them lay together about a fortnight to sweat; this will make them keep better, and also render their flavour much finer, than if they were laid up for good as soon as they are gathered.

When they have laid that time, let all the fruit be then carefully wiped one by one with cloths, and lay them up where they are to remain.

Some of the finest eating pears and apples, you may pack up in baskets or boxes, observing to put some clean wheat straw at bottom, and also round the sides of the baskets or boxes; and, when they are filled, lay some straw at top.

The inferior kinds, and these which will be fit for eating, or other uses, soon in the winter, you may lay on shelves or on the floor of the fruit room.

First lay some clean wheat straw, and then lay the fruit upon that; and, if there be room, let them be all laid singly, and close together: when the weather is frosty, you should lay a good covering of clean new straw over the whole.

But if there is not room in the fruitery to lay all the fruit singly, you may lay those apples and pears which are for kitchen use, regularly three or four layers one upon another.

### *Pruning and Nailing.*

About the end of this month you may begin to prune peaches and nectarines, if there leaves are dropped; and you may also prune and nail apricots.

Before you begin to prune, it will be proper to un-nail the greatest part of the smaller branches; then you can more readily use your knife, and also can conveniently examine

examine the shoots, to see which are fit for your purpose, and which are not.

In pruning these trees, observe to leave, in every part of the tree, a due supply of the last summer shoots; which must be left in at moderate distances; that is, about six inches asunder, and in such regular order as they may seem to rise or come up one after another, quite from the bottom, that every part of the wall, from the bottom to the extremity every way of the tree may be regularly furnished with them; for these bear the fruit next year.

These trees always produce their fruit upon the shoots of the last summer's growth; that is, upon one year's old shoots, and on no other; therefore the pruner will by this know what he is to cut out, and what to leave.

But, in the course of pruning these trees, observe to cut out all old wood according as it becomes useless; that is, such branches as advance a great way, and are not properly furnished with young wood.

In the next place, it will be proper to observe that the young shoots must not be crowded, or left too close together; therefore examine with good attention, and when the shoots stand too thick, let some be accordingly cut out. Cut them close; but, in doing this, observe to leave the most promising and best placed shoots, for the purpose of bearing, and these must be left at due and regular distances from one another.

For instance, suppose a tree to be in a good healthy condition, and that it shoots moderately free, the shoots of such a tree should be left five or six inches asunder or thereabouts.

The next thing to be observed is, that all these shoots must now be shortened; and this is done principally to encourage them to produce next summer, as well as fruit, a due supply also of bearing shoots, to bear fruit another year.

For by shortening these shoots in the winter pruning, it makes them more certainly produce next summer a supply of new shoots in proper places; and the shoots which are then produced, bear the fruit to be expected the year after that.

But in shortening the shoots, mind to let every one be shortened according to its growth, and original length; for instance, a shoot of about twelve inches, must be shortened to eight inches in length, or thereabouts; one of  
fifteen



fifteen or sixteen inches, to about ten; and a shoot of eighteen or twenty inches long, may be cut to about twelve or fourteen; and so on in proportion to the length of the different shoots.

The rule is, let one third or thereabouts of the original length of every shoot, whether short or long, be cut off.

But such peach, nectarine and apricot trees as produce strong and vigorous shoots, must be treated accordingly; the shoots of such trees must be left somewhat closer than the distance above prescribed, and must also be shortened less in proportion. The rule to be observed in these, is, leave the shoots four or five inches asunder, and, on shortening them, cut off no more than about one fourth of their original length; but indeed some of the most vigorous shoots, should be shortened but very little, and some not at all.

This is the only method of pruning to bring a vigorous shooting tree to good order, so as to produce moderate shoots, such as will bear fruit.

For the more wood you cut out of a vigorous tree, and the more the shoots are shortened, the more vigorous will the tree shoot.

By what is above hinted, the pruner will not be at a loss to know in what manner peach, nectarine, and apricot trees are, according to their different growths, to be treated in the article of pruning; and the rule here mentioned is to be observed at all times in the winter pruning.

Note, Observe that where any of the shoots which are left to bear, have produced any small shoots from their sides they must be cut off; cut them close to the principal shoot, for these would neither produce good fruit nor good wood.

Another thing is proper to be observed in pruning these trees, and that is, in shortening the shoots, to mind, if possible, to cut them off at a leaf bud: what is meant by a leaf or wood bud (or, as some term it, a double bud), is where two buds appear on the same eye; every such eye generally produces a good shoot next year. It is therefore necessary, in shortening the shoots, to cut them at, or near such an eye, which is a blossom bud, and is done in order that each may produce a good shoot next summer for its leader; for where there is a fair leading shoot produced at or near the extremity of a bearing shoot

shoot or branch, such a branch seldom fails to yield fair and well tasted fruit.

It will also be proper to remark one thing more in pruning these trees, particularly the apricot. In this tree we often see on the two years old branches some short shoots, or natural spurs, about an inch or two in length; and on each of the said spurs, there are frequently to be seen several blossom buds. Now some people cut these spurs entirely off, but I declare against that practice, for some of these short natural spurs will produce handsome fruit.

But, on the other hand, it will be proper to leave only such of these spurs as are well placed, and promise by the blossom buds to bear fruit; and such as are naked, and also such as advance considerably in a foreright direction, should be removed.

For some more particulars in pruning these sort of trees, see the work of February.

When you have finished pruning any one of the above trees, let that be immediately nailed to the wall in a proper manner, before you begin to prune another; for it is much the best method to nail every tree according as you advance in the pruning.

But some direct to leave these trees un-nailed till the beginning of March; but this practice I would be far from recommending, for it not only looks ill to see the shoots hanging dangling from the wall, but the frost has also more power to affect the tender shoots, and the long vigorous shoots are liable to be broken by the winds; and, lastly, by leaving the trees un-nailed till March, the blossom buds will be then so much swelled, that many of them would be unavoidably displaced by nailing up the shoots.

Therefore, to repeat the caution, let every tree, according as it is pruned, be nailed.

In nailing them great exactness should be observed; the branches must no where be laid in across one another, but let every branch be laid in clear of another, and at about four, five, or six inches distance, according to the condition of the tree, and let every shoot or branch be laid perfectly strait and close to the wall, in the neatest manner.

For the purpose of pruning and nailing wall-trees in an expeditious and neat manner, you should be provided with a per-



a perfect sharp knife, rather less than the middle size, and such as is narrow, and but very moderately hooked or coming as the point; and a small hand-saw, for the more readily cutting off old or large dead branches, and also a chissel.

These are the proper tools to be used in pruning: that for the purpose of nailing should be a very handy light hammer, with a perfect flat face, and about an inch broad; and there must be procured a quantity of the proper garden wall-nails, which is a sort made particularly for that purpose, and may be bought at most ironmongers shops.

The next requisite is a quantity of cloth listing or shreds, and these should be neatly cut into proper lengths and regular breadths; about half or three quarters of an inch is the proper breadth, but let none exceed an inch, for too broad shreds has a clumsy look, particularly on the smaller branches.

Where neat nailing is observed, every shred should be cut with even or square ends, and not too long, for it looks slovenly to see long dangling ends hanging down.

#### *Pruning Plumbs, Cherries, Pears and Apples.*

Plumbs, cherries, pears and apple trees, upon walls and espaliers, may also be pruned in the latter end of this month.

The method of pruning these trees, may be seen in the work of the fruit garden next month, where it is inserted according to the successful practice of the most experienced gardeners, in the article of pruning.

#### *Transplant Fruit-Trees.*

Towards the latter end of this month you may safely transplant most sorts of fruit-trees.

Where a new plantation is to be made either for the wall or espalier, the borders should be trenched two spades deep: some very rotten dung should be worked in at the same time; and if the border is not naturally of a loamy soil, some fresh loam from a common should be brought in, and worked and mixed with the earth of the border together with the rotten dung.

But if a sufficient quantity of loam cannot be conveniently obtained for the whole border, let, if possible, two or three barrows full, together with some very rotten dung, be

be laid in the place where the tree is to stand; this will promote the growth of the tree greatly; for most fruit-trees delight in a loamy ground, but this cannot be had in all places.

In making new plantations of fruit-trees, either for the wall or espalier, you should observe to plant them at proper distances, that you may have room to train them in a proper position for many years to come, without interfering much with each other, as is often the case in gardens where the trees have been planted too close; so that the trees meet and confuse one another, though sometimes they have not been planted above six or seven years.

This is a great error, and should be thought of when you are about to plant the trees.

The distance which should be allowed to peaches, nectarines, and apricots, is at least fifteen or sixteen feet from tree to tree; though eighteen will not be too much, yet the former distance will do very well.

Plumbs and cherries should be allowed the same room to run, though plumbs will require rather more room than cherries.

Pear and apple trees, for espaliers, should be planted about sixteen feet asunder at least: some allow these trees twenty feet distance, but especially pears, and it is not too much, though it appears a great distance when the trees are first planted; but sixteen or eighteen feet at most will do very well.

But with regard to the planting these trees in espaliers, that is, the apple and pears, it should be observed, that the former, if grafted on paradise or codling stocks, need not be planted more than fifteen feet apart; and pears on quince stocks, the same distance.

Standard trees, either apples or pears, should be planted at least twenty-five or thirty feet asunder; plums and cherries never less than twenty or twenty-five feet every way distant.

*Plant Gooseberry and Currant Trees.*

Plant gooseberry and currant trees where wanted. This may be done about the middle, or towards the latter end of the month.

Where it is intended to plant these shrubs in a spot by themselves, mind to allow them proper room. Let them be



be planted in rows eight feet distant; and allow at least six feet between plant and plant in the row.

At this distance you have room to dig and hoe between the trees, and also to prune them, and gather the fruit; and at this distance the berries will grow large, and will ripen freely.

But if you intend to plant these shrubs in single rows round the quarters of the kitchen garden, (as is commonly practised) you should plant them full seven or eight feet distant from each other.

*Pruning Gooseberries and Currants.*

Prune gooseberries and currants about the end of this month, and the ground about them may be dug, which will render the whole decent for the winter season, and will be of great service to the trees.

In pruning these shrubs it will be necessary to observe that their branches should be kept thin, and at regular distances.

The heart of the trees should be kept open and clear of wood, so as to admit the sun and air in summer to the fruit, and the branches no where suffered to cross one another; all suckers from the root should be taken away, and every tree trained with a single stem to the height of twelve or fifteen inches from the ground.

In these trees numbers of young shoots are produced every summer, many of which should now be cut out; but, in doing this, take care to leave here and there one or more of the best placed, and most regular grown of the said shoots towards the lower part of the trees, but particularly in places where there is a vacancy, or, for a succession of young bearing wood, to supply the places of such branches, as are grown too long, or stragling, or are old, or become past bearing good fruit; for every year there should be some of the older branches, and such as become too long or stragling, be either entirely removed or cut shorter, as you shall see it necessary, in order to make proper room for such young branches as are of a proper growth, and promise to produce the best fruit.

By this method of every year leaving some young shoots, and taking out some old wood, the trees with such management may always be kept, even when old, well furnished with such young bearing branches, as will produce every

every summer abundantly both of large and well-flavoured fruit.

Therefore care must be taken to leave every year in convenient places in each tree, a due supply of proper, and well placed young shoots, and all shoots that are not wanted must be cut close to the branches; but observe that in every part where a principal branch is wanted, you should in that case leave a strong shoot towards the lower part of the tree, to come in to fill up the vacancy.

The shoots and branches in general should stand at their extremities eight or nine inches distant from one another.

And next observe, that as almost every branch of these trees will have produced three, four, or more of the said young shoots last summer, that is, one at the end, and the rest placed one under another lower on the branch: now you are to observe, that it is not necessary that there be more than one of these young shoots left, which must be continued to be left so as to terminate and be a leader for the branch.

Therefore mind always, in particular, in pruning, to let every branch, whether short or long, have, if possible, a last summer's shoot for its leader; and this should be observed in such branches that require shortening, as well as those that are not to be shortened; for when a branch is to be shortened, it should be done in such a manner, that the said branch may still terminate in a young shoot.

For instance, suppose a branch having two, three, or more young shoots on it, and that the said branch be too long, or of such a straggling growth as to require shortening, observe, in such a case, to cut it off close, if possible, to a last summer's shoot, or, otherwise, to some convenient branch that hath such a shoot for its leader, which shoot or branch must be left to supply the place of the part cut away.

But if the branch do not want shortening, and that there be a young shoot at its end, leave the said shoot, cutting off all other on that branch.

But all very old and useless branches should always be cut off close to the place from whence they proceed, and the trees should every way be kept within due bounds, and in somewhat regular form; which is always to be effected by leaving young, and cutting out old and straggling branches,



branches, and shortening others as you shall see it convenient.

Let it also be observed in pruning these shrubs, that the last summer's shoots, which are now left, should be but very little shortened, particularly the gooseberries; some cut the shoots very short, but that is wrong, for it makes them shoot too vigorously, and fill the trees next summer with numberless useless shoots, to the great prejudice of the fruit.

To avoid this let the shoots be always shortened with discretion: never cut more off an ordinary shoot than about one third of its length, and about one fourth of a vigorous shoot.

But thus shortening of the young shoots should not be general, but is practised occasionally, that is, for instance, if the shoot advance much beyond the rest, or that it turns its end down to the ground, as gooseberries often do, then in such cases they should be shortened.

*Propagate Gooseberry and Currant Trees.*

Plant cuttings of gooseberries and currants: this is much the best method of propagating these shrubs, for such as are raised by cuttings always produce large and well tasted fruit.

In choosing these cuttings, let it be observed they must be shoots of the last summer's production. Let them be taken from healthy trees, and such as are remarkable, according to their kinds, for bearing the finest fruit; having procured such cuttings, let each be shortened to about ten, twelve, or fifteen inches long, according to its strength, and plant them in a shady border.

Let them be planted in rows crossways the border, allowing ten or twelve inches between row and row, and put every cutting near half way into the earth.

Some people content themselves by raising these trees by suckers from the root; but such trees as are raised by that method, neither produce large nor well relished fruit, and are apt to run very much to wood.

Therefore, when good cuttings can be had, let these be preferred, and treat them as above; they will be well rooted in one year, and the third will bear fruit.

*Dressing*

*Dressing the Strawberry Beds.*

The strawberry beds should, some time in this month, have their winter dressing.

Choose a dry day to do this work, and the method is this: let all the runners or strings be cleared away close to the head of the plants, then let the beds be thoroughly cleared from weeds, and let all the rubbish be carried off the ground.

Then if there be room between the plants, let the earth in every bed be loosened to a little depth with a small spade or with a hoe, taking care not to disturb the roots; then set the line, and mark out the alleys their due width; this being done, let the alleys be immediately dug; and, in digging, let some of the earth be spread with care over the beds, observing to lay it neatly between, and close about every plant.

This dressing will be of vast service to these plants, and it should never at this season be omitted.

In dressing these plants, let it be observed, that the plants should never be permitted to spread over the whole surface of the bed, but should be kept as it were in single or distinct bunches or heads.

*Planting Strawberries.*

New plantations of strawberries may now be made where wanted, and this may be done any time in this month, but the sooner the better.

These plants thrive surprisingly in a loamy soil, but such a soil is not natural in all places. However, choose a well lying spot of the best ground, and lay thereon some of the best rotten dung; then let the piece be neatly dug, and the dung be buried in a proper manner.

Then lay the ground out in beds four feet broad, and allow eighteen inches or two feet for an alley between bed and bed; rake the surface smooth, and then put in the plants.

The plants should be such as were produced last summer. Choose a parcel of the strongest, and take them up with good roots; trim off all strings or runners, and clear away decayed leaves; trim the roots, and then plant them: let four rows be planted lengthways in each bed, allowing fifteen or eighteen inches between row and row, and set the plants the same distance from one another in the rows.

Close



Close the earth well about every plant, and directly give each a little water.

For the account of the sorts, see last month.

### *Pruning Raspberry Plants.*

Prune raspberries: in doing this let it be observed, that all the old wood that produced the fruit last summer must now be cut out, for these never bear but once; therefore a supply of young wood must now be left to bear next year: observe, therefore, to leave three of the strongest of the last summer's shoots standing upon every root, to bear the fruit to be expected next year, these being the only proper bearing wood, and must be allowed room; therefore, as above hinted, let all the old wood on every root be cut close to the ground, then select three of the best shoots on each plant, but let all the rest above that number be cut away close to the surface of the earth; and at the same time let all straggling shoots between the rows be destroyed.

Each of the shoots which are left to bear must be shortened: the rule in shortening these is, to take off one fourth, or one third, or thereabouts, of the original length of each shoot, according to their different growths.

When the plants are pruned, clear away the cuttings, and then dig the ground.

In digging, observe to take up and clear away all straggling roots between the rows, and also all such as do not belong to the standing plants. This digging will strengthen the roots, and the ground will lie clean and neat all winter.

### *Plant Raspberries.*

This is a good season to plant raspberries, when a new plantation is wanted.

These shrubs should be planted in an open situation, and where the ground is good; and if you dig in some very rotten dung, it will be an advantage to the plants.

In choosing the plants for this plantation, observe to take such as are well furnished with roots, for that is a principal article in raspberry plants; and if there be one, two, or more buds formed on the root for the next summer shoots, such plants are particularly to be chosen.

Having procured the plants, shorten the shoots a little, and leave only one strong shoot on each root; let the ends

of the roots also be trimmed; then put in the plants in rows four feet distant, and let them be planted thirty inches or a yard distant from one another in the row.

## The Pleasure, or Flower Garden.

### *Auricula Plants.*

**T**HE auricula plants in pots must now be removed to a place calculated to defend them from wet or frost.

The pots should not now be laid on one side as directed by some, for that is but a poor expedient for the protection of these choice flowers; and it is easy to contrive several ways to defend them from wet or frost better than by laying the pots down.

These pots may now be plunged or set close together within a garden frame; and when the weather is bad, the glasses may be put on, or the pots may be placed close together near a warm wall, and place some hoops over them, and when the weather is very wet or frosty, draw some mats over the hoops.

Let all the dead leaves be taken off the plants, and loosen the earth on the surface of the pots a little.

### *Carnation Layers.*

Carnation layers, which were in August, or the last month, planted in small pots, should, in the last week in this month, be placed where they can be readily defended in bad weather; for that purpose, the pots may at the time be placed in a common garden frame.

Let the pots be set close together, and if the earth be light and dry, it will be proper to plunge the pots in it to their rims.

There let the pots remain all winter, observing at all times, when the weather is very wet, or in severe frosts, that the plants are to be covered with the glasses, and other covering, when the weather is excessive severe; but when the weather is dry and mild, let the plants at such times have the advantage of the open air.

But where there is not the convenience of a frame, the pots may be plunged in a bed of dry compost, and the beds



arched over with hoops; and, in bad weather, let some thick mats, or canvass, be drawn over the hoops.

*Dress the Borders and Clumps of Flowering Shrubs.*

The borders and clumps of plants in this garden should now be thoroughly well cleared from weeds; and also, at this time, let all the dead stalks of flowering plants be cut down close, and clear away dead leaves, and all manner of rubbish.

This is now a proper time to dig the borders and clumps in this garden, which is the most effectual method to destroy the weeds; the ground will then be ready to receive plants of any sort, and it will appear fresh and neat during the winter season.

*Transplanting fibrous-rooted flowering Plants.*

Now transplant into the borders or places where wanted, all sorts of fibrous-rooted perennial plants. These sorts of plants will now take root freely, and in a short time.

The sorts proper to plant now are rose-campions and sweet-williams, campanulas and catch-fly; and you may also plant rockets, batchelors buttons, double feverfew, scarlet lychnis and lychnideas, and many other sorts.

The above plants grow nearly of a height, and are very proper to be planted near the middle of the border: they each have an agreeable appearance in their proper time of flowering, but especially the double kinds.

Some of the double wall-flowers, and stock July flowers, double scarlet lychnis, double sweet-williams, double rockets, double rose campion, and the like, should be planted in pots; and removed to some place where the plants can be sheltered in severe weather: These flowers deserve particular care.

Now also slip and plant polyanthus, where wanted; also double daisies, double chamomile, violets, London pride, thrift, hepaticas, gentianella, saxafrage, and other low-growing fibrous-rooted plants.

These plants should be set about a foot, or fifteen inches, from the edge of the border; for they are but of a low growth.

This is also a good time to plant columbines, monkshood, Canterbury bells, fox gloves, tree primrose, Greek valerian, scabiouses, and such like kinds.

T

These

These flowers generally grow from two to four feet high, or thereabouts, and should be planted in the middle of the borders or beds.

Transplant also wall-flowers, and stock-july-flowers, into the borders: and this is also a proper time to plant carnations and pinks, both seedlings and layers: and all other fibrous-rooted perennial plants should now be brought in and planted in the borders or places where wanted.

This is a good season to plant golden-rod, Michaelmas-daisies, everlasting-sun-flowers, French-honey-suckles, and holly-hocks.

These last-mentioned plants grow very tall, and are fitter to be planted in the clumps among flowering shrubs, than in narrow borders: but, if they are to be planted in borders, let them be placed fifteen or twenty feet distant from each other, and they should be planted towards the back of the border.

*Parting the Roots, and propagating various fibrous and knob-rooted Plants.*

Where golden-rod, everlasting-sun-flowers, Michaelmas-daisies, and such like rampant growing fibrous-rooted perennial plants, have stood in one place several years without transplanting, their roots will have spread a great way, and will be encreased to very large bunches.

Where that is the case, the roots should now be taken up, and every root divided into several parts, or separate plants; and then some of the best should be immediately planted again in the places allotted them, at the distance above-mentioned.

This is also still a good time, where not done before, to part the roots of many other fibrous-rooted plants that have grown into large bunches.

Particularly campanulas, catch-fly, rose-campion, scarlet-lychnis, bachelors-buttons, double feverfew, peach-leaved bell-flower, Canada-leonards, and the like.

Likewise, polyanthus, primroses, double daisies, double chamomile, London-pride, hepaticas, violets, pinks, gentianella, yellow-gentian, and all other such like sorts.

The roots are to be taken up as above-mentioned, and every one divided, or parted into separate plants. The best of the slips, or plants, to be placed again directly in the border; and the smallest, or such as are not wanted



for the border, should be planted in nursery beds to remain a year to get strength.

Now is also a proper time to part and transplant the roots of pionies, fraxinellas, lilies of the valley, Solomon's seal, monkhood, and flag-leaved iris's.

*Planting all Kinds of bulbous Flower Roots, &c.*

This is still a proper time to plant tulips and hyacinths, which may be done any time in the month.

The beds where these roots are to be planted must be well dug a proper depth, and let all the clods be broken: the beds should be highest in the middle, and laid somewhat rounding: this form best throws off the wet, and it looks better: the beds should be four feet broad.

When the beds are ready, choose a dry and mild day to put in the roots; the best roots should be planted nine inches distant every way. Plant them in rows, in a bed four feet broad; there may be planted five rows; the roots should be put four or five inches deep.

Where it is intended to plant any of the above roots in the common borders among other flowers, they may, in that case, be planted in a single row lengthways of the border; this row must be a foot from the edge of the border, and the roots should be planted, at least, that distance from one another. But when these, or any other bulbous roots are to be planted among other flowers, I think it is much the best way to place them in patches; that is to say, in a small spot of six or eight inches diameter, to plant four roots, placing one in the middle, and three round the edge; and so to plant such a patch of a sort at the distance of every two or three yards. This method of planting bulbous-rooted flowers in patches in the common border, makes a very pleasing variety in the flowering season.

But the choicest kinds of these roots should always be planted by themselves in beds, to the purpose that they can be more readily sheltered in severe weather.

And also, by planting them in beds, the flowers can, in the spring and in summer, be readily screened from too much rain, and from the scorching sun; both of which would impair the beauty, and hasten the decay of these valuable flowers.

Now is also a very good time to plant the roots of ranunculuses and anemonies; the best of the roots should be planted by themselves in beds.

The beds should be four feet broad; plant five rows in every bed, and let the roots be six inches distant in each row: this is more room than what is generally allowed to these roots, but they should never be planted closer; but, in particular, the choice principal roots: they will, at that distance, be able to blow stronger, and the flowers will shew themselves to a greater advantage.

Those roots must be planted two inches and a half, or three inches deep, or thereabouts.

The beds where the best sorts of these roots are deposited, should, in winter, when the frost is very severe, be covered with long dry litter, such as peas straw, or fern.

Some of the common sorts of ranunculuses and anemone roots, may also be planted in the borders among other flowers, where they will make a very agreeable appearance in the spring.

The best method of planting these common sorts of roots in the borders is this:

Draw with your finger a circle eight inches diameter, and about a foot from the edge of the border; plant in this small circle four roots; that is, one in the middle, and the rest round the edge of the circle; and these circles should be eight, ten, or twelve feet distant.

Now is likewise the proper time to plant crocuses and snow-drop roots which were taken out of the ground in summer.

These roots are to be planted in a row about six inches from the edge of the border or bed next the walks; and, if they are to be planted in one continued row, the roots should be set about six inches a-part.

But these flowers make the best appearance when the roots are planted in small patches. The method is this: in a small circle, about five or six inches over, plant four or five roots, one in the middle, and three or four round the edge: two feet farther make another circle, and plant it; and so on to the end.

These small roots should not be planted above two inches, or at most, three inches deep.

Plant narcissus's and jonquils; and this is also a proper time to put in the roots of bulbous and Persian iris's, fritillarias, and all other such like bulbous roots as were taken up when their leaves decayed in summer.

Where the above roots are intended to be planted separately in beds, let them be set in rows eight or nine inches asunder;



asunder; and set the roots the same distance from one another in the row.

But, when they are to be planted in the common borders, it is the best way to plant three, four, or five roots together in a small circle, and allow at least five feet between every such circle or clump.

Likewise plant crown imperial roots, and the roots of martagons and orange lillies, that were taken up when the leaves decayed in summer; and where white lily, or any other bulbous lily roots have been removed since their bloom, and are now above ground, let them be planted in the proper places some time in this month.

The above bulbs should be planted in rows along the middle of the bed or border; they should be planted at a good distance; for it does not look well to see any one sort of these tall bulbous-rooted flowers too close together.

Let them be planted in such a manner that every sort may stand at least ten or twelve feet distant: for instance, suppose, beginning first with the crown imperials, or any other thing, then, at the distance of two or three feet from that, put in another kind, suppose a martagon; at the same distance plant an orange lily, then a white lily; and, three feet from that, begin again with the crown imperial; and so proceed to the end of the border; so that each sort will stand twelve or fifteen feet distant from one another.

#### *Prune Roses, &c.*

Prune roses and honey-suckles; and this is also a proper time to prune all other sorts of flowering shrubs.

Let this pruning be performed with a sharp knife, and not with shears, as I have frequently seen it practised.

In pruning these shrubs observe to cut out all the very strong luxuriant shoots of the last summer's growth, which are commonly produced on many sorts of flowering shrubs; let these be cut close to the place from whence they proceeded.

Where any branch advances in a straggling manner from the rest, let that be cut shorter; observing, if possible, to cut it off close to a young shoot, leaving that shoot for a leader to the branch.

Where branches of different shrubs interfere with each other, let such be cut away, or shortened, as you shall see

it necessary, so that every shrub may stand clear of the other.

Where any of the branches or shoots advance too near the ground, let them be cut close to the stem, or to the place where it proceeds from.

All suckers which rise from the roots should be taken clean away; and let every shrub be kept to a single stem.

When you have finished the pruning, let the cuttings be cleared away; then let the ground be well dug one spade deep; observing, as you proceed with the digging, to cut off all the straggling roots, and to take up all suckers.

*Plant hardy Flowering Shrubs.*

Now is the time to begin to plant, in places where wanted, all sorts of hardy flowering shrubs; such as roses, gelder roses, lilacs, and honey-suckles.

Plant also, where wanted, laburnums, syringas, althæa, frutex, jasmînes, privets, double bramble, flowering raspberry, the double blossom cherry, bladder senna, scorpion senna, spiræa, and hypericum frutex; it is now also a proper time to plant the double flowering peach, almonds, and mezerions.

The cornelian cherry, double hawthorn, and scarlet horse-chestnut, may also be planted any time in this month: the shrub cinquefoil, sumach, rock-rose, cytisuses, acacia, and all other hardy shrubs, may now be removed.

In planting the different sorts of flowering shrubs, observe to plant them at such distances, that each plant, according to its growth, may have full room to grow, and to shew themselves to advantage.

When it is intended to plant them in clumps, or quarters, let the plants in general be set at least five or six feet distant from one another; and such plants as are of an humble growth, should not be planted promiscuously among tall growing plants; for was that to be practised, the low plants would be lost to view.

Let this, therefore, be well observed at the time when the shrubs are to be planted, and let the low growing plants be set towards the front, or outside of the clump; and, the taller the plant, the more backward in the clump it should be planted. The shrubs should also be disposed in such regular order, that every plant can be readily viewed with distinction from the walks.

This



This is the method of order that should be practised in planting and decorating the clumps or quarters of the shrubbery; strait lines are not to be regarded, and rather to be avoided, but notwithstanding some regularity must be observed, both with regard to the distance and advantageous disposition of the different sorts of plants, for that is of great importance.

In small gardens it is customary to plant roses, honeysuckles, spiræas, althea frutex, syringas, and other such like shrubs, in the flower borders near the walks; but the shrubs are generally planted a great deal too close in such places, and also permitted to run sometimes into such disorder, both at top and bottom, as not only to starve, darken and hide the bulbous, tuberous, and fibrous rooted flowering plants in the border, but it also looks ill to see such deformed and rude grown plants.

Therefore, where you intend to plant any kind of shrubs in such borders, let them be set at least twelve or fifteen feet distant from one another; and for that purpose you should always choose strait stemmed and regular grown plants.

The plants should be kept constantly trained up with single stems, and their heads should be pruned every year with a knife, and always kept somewhat regular and within due bounds, and all suckers from the roots must be constantly taken up.

#### *Planting Evergreen Trees and Shrubs.*

Evergreen shrubs or trees of most sorts may also now be brought in, and planted in the clumps, or other parts of this garden where wanted.

These sorts may be removed any time in this month, and the sooner the better, for most sorts will succeed well.

But, in particular, the strawberry tree, or arbutus laurel, Portugal laurel, laurustinus, pyracanthas, phillyreas, alaternus, hays, cistus's, evergreen-oaks, hollies and magnolias.

In planting these and all other evergreen trees or shrubs, let the same rule be observed as mentioned above in planting the different sorts of flowering shrubs.

That is, where these plants are to be planted in clumps, let them be set at least four or five feet every way asunder, and let no consideration induce you to plant them closer; at that distance the plants will thrive, and every plant, according

cording to its kind, will have room to shoot each way regularly, and form handsome heads; and every different shrub can also with pleasure be distinctly viewed.

Besides, by allowing a due distance between plant and plant, you have proper room to dig the ground; and also to hoe and clean, and to do all necessary work about the shrubs.

*Now for Planting Evergreens to hide Walls, &c.*

Philærea, laurustinus, and laurel, are proper shrubs to plant any where about a house to hide such ragged or naked walls, or other buildings, as you desire to have hidden.

These plants are a beautiful green summer and winter, they are also very hardy, and their growth is quick and regular: and where wanted for the above purpose, this is a proper time to plant them.

They must be planted close to the wall, and their branches must be regularly spread and trained to the wall in the manner of a wall tree; they will shoot in a quick but regular manner, and their beautiful green leaves will effectually hide the most deformed or ill-looking wall, &c.

The pyracantha is also a pretty shrub to plant against a wall, by reason of its clusters of beautiful red berries, which make a handsome and very agreeable appearance in autumn and winter.

I have seen the arbutus, or strawberry tree, planted to hide a disagreeable looking wall. This is a beautiful plant, and makes an agreeable figure in any place, and at all seasons, but particularly in this, and the two preceding months, when it is loaded with its fine red strawberry like fruit.

But these plants make the best appearance when planted in the clumps or borders, and suffered to grow in their natural way.

Many people plant these shrubs singly in the grass plats.

*Pines and Firs.*

Pines and firs may now be transplanted, these plants may be safely removed, and planted in dry soils any time in this month.

This is also a good time to transplant cedars, junipers and cypress; and most other such like hardy evergreen trees may also be now brought in and planted.

Let



Let these and all other evergreens, and also all kinds of flowering shrubs, be planted with care and according to this method: open for every plant a hole wide enough to receive the roots freely every way; when the hole is dug to the due depth, let the bottom be well loosened.

Then get the plants and prune the ends of their roots, and shorten all long or straggling roots, and cut such roots as are broken, damaged, or dead: then place the plant in the hole, and see it stand upright; break the earth well and throw it in equally, at the same time shaking the plant gently to make the earth fall in close about, and among all the roots and fibres; when all is in, tread the earth gently round the plant, and then let every one be directly watered.

But in planting the choice or more tender sorts of evergreens it will be proper to observe that, when the plants can be readily taken up and brought with balls of earth firmly about their roots, it should be done; and having a wide hole opened, the plant should be immediately set in, with the said ball of earth entire, and directly fill up the hole, and tread the surface gently.

Immediately give each plant about a pot or half a pot of water, according to the size of the hole, and let such as want support be directly staked.

#### *Transplant Forest Trees.*

Forest trees of all sorts may now be safely transplanted about the middle or towards the latter end of this month; such as elm, oak, beech, maple, ash, lime, and plane trees.

This is also a proper time to plant alder and poplar trees; these trees thrive best in moist land.

But these and all other forest trees may be transplanted in mild weather any time between this and Christmas, or any time during the winter season.

#### *Propagating by Layers.*

Now make layers of all sorts of hardy trees and shrubs to propagate them.

This may be done any time in this month, and many sorts of trees and flowering shrubs are to be propagated by that method; the method is easy, and the trouble is not much; besides, it will be well repaid in a twelve months time with numbers of new plants.

Almost any tree or shrub that sheds its leaves in winter, may be raised by layers; and on the hardy kinds, this is the best time to perform that operation.

The method of laying is this: dig round the tree or shrub, and in doing this bend down the pliable branches, lay them into the earth, and secure them there with hooked or forked sticks; lay down all the young shoots on each branch, and cover the body of them about three inches deep, leaving the top of each at least two, three, or four inches out of the ground, according to their different lengths.

Thus they are to remain till this time twelve-month, by which time they will be well rooted, and must then be transplanted.

By layers, elms and limes will succeed remarkably well, and this is the proper time.

Now is also a proper time to make layers of such sorts of hardy evergreens as will grow by that method:

This may be practised with good success on laurustinus; the layers of this plant will, in the space of one year from the time of laying, be very well rooted, and fit to transplant, provided you take care to lay proper young shoots.

Phillyreas and alaternus will also grow by layers, but the layers of these plants will sometimes be two years before they are tolerably rooted, particularly when not laid till this season.

But the best time to lay these, and such other hardy wooded evergreen plants, is June or July; and the young shoots of the same summer's growth are then to be chosen, for many of these will often take root the same season, so as to be fit to transplant by Michaelmas.

However, it will also at this time be proper to make layers of such evergreen shrubs as you desire to propagate; it is soon done, and is worth the trial: there are several sorts that will succeed.

Observe it is the last summer shoots that are the most proper part to lay; and so accordingly let such branches as are best furnished with such shoots be brought down and laid into the earth.

#### *Transplanting Layers.*

Now is the time to take off and transplant the layers of all such shrubs and trees as were layed last year; let their roots



roots be pruned, and plant them in rows twelve inches distant,

*Propagating Roses and other Shrubs by Suckers.*

Transplant suckers of roses: it is by suckers from the root that most sorts of these shrubs are encreased; these suckers will make good plants in two years time.

Lilacs are also generally encreased by suckers, which shrub seldom fails to yield every year plenty; and these may now, or any time in winter when the weather is mild, be taken up and planted out in rows.

Many other shrubs are also raised by suckers from the roots, and this is now a proper time to transplant the suckers of all such sorts.

*Propagating flowering Shrubs by Cuttings.*

Plant cuttings of honey-suckles: all the sorts of these shrubs may be propagated by that method, for the cuttings will put out roots very freely, and make pretty plants in one year.

Many other sorts of hardy shrubs and trees are to be raised from cuttings, and this is the time to plant them.

Observe, it is the last summer shoots that are to be chosen for cuttings; let strong shoots be chosen, and shorten them to about nine or twelve inches in length, then plant them in rows a foot asunder, and set the cuttings about eight inches distant in the row.

Let every cutting be put full half way into the ground.

Laurels and Portugal laurels are propagated principally by cuttings, and this is the only time to plant them; these cuttings must also be principally the last summer's shoots; do not take the long-rambling shoots, choose such as are about nine or ten inches in length; and, in cutting them off, observe to take about two inches of the former year's wood with them.

Plant them in a shady border in rows ten or twelve inches asunder, and set the cuttings six or eight inches distance from one another in the row.

These cuttings will be well rooted by next September or October.

*Seeding Flowers.*

Remove now all the boxes or pots of seedling flowers to a warm situation.

Let these be placed where they can have the full sun all winter, and where cold and cutting winds cannot come. These pots, boxes or tubs, should also be now cleared with great care from weeds.

The beds of seedling bulbs should also, at this time, have good attention; let all weeds be taken out with particular care, then get some light rich earth, and sift some of this all over the surface of the bed to the thickness of half an inch or thereabouts.

This will be of very great service to these young roots, but in particular to those which were not removed in summer.

#### *Trimming Evergreens.*

Go round the plantations of evergreens, and with a sharp knife reduce such to order as are of a rude growth.

Though the taste which prevailed so much formerly in cutting or training many sorts of evergreens into different figures, with garden shears, is now for the most part laid aside, yet there are many sorts of evergreens that require some training with the knife.

Sometimes branches or shoots of a rude growth will shoot out on one side of the tree, and advance in an irregular manner a good distance from the principal branches which form the head of the tree; these should be cut away or shortened as you see it most convenient to make the head somewhat regular.

Let all long stragglers be shortened; and, where the trees interfere with each other, let the branches be shortened so that every plant may stand fair and clear of another.

#### *Planting Box Edgings.*

Plant box where wanted for edgings to borders or beds; this being rather the best time in the year to do that work, for the box will now very soon take root.

To make neat edgings you should get some short bushy box, and this should be slipped or parted, and the long sticky roots cut off.

The method of planting it is this: stretch your line along the edge of the bed or border, and let that part be made up all the way pretty firm and full according to the line; then with your spade, and on the side of the line next the walk let a neat trench be cut about six or eight inches



inches deep, making the side next the line perfectly upright.

The box is to be planted in this trench close against the upright side next the line, placing the plants so near together as to form immediately a close compact edging without being too thick and clumsy, so as the top of the plants be nearly even with the surface of the earth; and as you proceed in planting, draw the earth up to the outsides of the plants, which fixes them in their due position; and when you have planted the row out, then with your spade put the earth up even almost to the top of the plants, and tread it neatly and evenly to them; and when the edging is planted, let the top be cut as even and neat as possible with a pair of shears.

#### *Thrift.*

Thrift makes also a very good edging, and this is the time to plant it.

To make a neat edging the plants should be set so close as just to touch one another.

#### *Mow Grass Walks and Lawns.*

The grass walks and lawns should now be mown close and as even as possible, for if they are not cut well down at this time, they will appear very rough all winter.

The grass should now be very often poled to scatter the worm-casts about, and it should afterwards be rolled with a wooden or some other roller; the worm-casts, by being broken and spread about, will readily stick all to the roller, by which means the surface of the grass will be rendered very clean and neat.

### **The Nursery.**

#### *Propagating by Layers.*

**N**OW begin to propagate forest-trees and flowering shrubs by layers, this being the best season to perform that work on the hardy kinds; and the manner of doing it is quite easy.

The ground is to be dug round the tree or shrub you intend to propagate; and in doing this the shoots or branches

branches are to be brought down and laid into the earth, and fastened there with forked or hooked sticks; and the body of the shoots are to be covered about three or four inches deep, leaving the top three or four inches out of the ground.

Birch will succeed remarkably well by layers, and so will limes, and many other hardy forest-trees.

But where it is intended to raise the above, or such like trees, by layers, the tree from which the layers are to be made must be prepared for that purpose; and this is done by cutting it off near the ground, in order that it may produce shoots or branches at such a convenient height as they can be readily laid down.

#### *Transplant Layers.*

Take off the layers of all kinds of trees and shrubs that were laid a twelvemonth ago.

Let these be planted in rows in an open spot; the rows should be fifteen or eighteen inches asunder, and the layers planted twelve inches distant in the row.

#### *Propagate Trees and Shrubs by Cuttings.*

This is the time to plant cuttings of all such hardy trees and shrubs as will grow by that method, and which is not a few.

One in particular among the rest, is that well known shrub the honey-suckle, all the sorts of which will grow freely by cuttings, and this is still a good time to plant them.

The gooseberry and currant-trees are also best raised by cuttings, and this is as good time as any can be to plant them.

Many people raise these shrubs by suckers from the roots, and they will grow freely that way; but the trees from suckers never produce large or well-tasted fruit.

#### *Sow Haws and Holly Berries, &c.*

This is the time to sow haws, holly, hips, and yew-berries.

Beds must be prepared for these berries three feet and a half or four feet wide; the berries are to be sown separately, and covered near an inch deep with earth.

But it is the practice of many to prepare the holly, berries and haws, for vegetation, a whole year before they sow



sow them, because they seldom come up till the second spring after sowing: it therefore is customary to bury them in the ground for one year and then sow them. The method is this:

In a part of the garden where the ground is firm and dry, mark out a trench about two feet wide, the length in proportion to the quantity of berries intended to be buried, and dig it full twelve inches deep, but in perfectly dry ground eighteen inches or two feet will be better, making the bottom level; then lay in the berries of an equal thickness, and cover them with the earth at least six inches deep below the surface, and raising it above the surface in a ridge like a grave, making the ridge rather wider than the trench, in order to throw off the wet the better from it.

Here let them lie till that time twelvemonth, when they are to be taken up and sown in beds, as above mentioned, and the plants will come up the spring following.

#### *Sow Acorns.*

Sow acorns, this being the most proper time to put them into the ground; and they should be all sown by the latter end of this month, for if kept much longer out of the ground, they will soon begin to sprout.

Let these be sown in beds, and cover them equally with earth about an inch deep.

#### *Stocks to bud and graft upon.*

Now plant out all kinds of seedling stocks to bud and graft the different fruits upon.

Let these be placed in rows two feet or thirty inches asunder, and set the plants twelve or fifteen inches distant from one another in the row.

Likewise for the purpose of stocks, transplant also suckers from the roots of different kinds of fruit trees, but particularly those from the plum, cherry, or codlin tree.

You should now transplant such cuttings, or layers, of such fruit trees as were planted or layed a year ago to raise stocks, but particularly the cuttings or layers of quinces, to bud or graft dwarf pears upon.

#### *Planting hardy Trees and Shrubs.*

Now you may also transplant all sorts of hardy trees and shrubs, and it may be done any time in this month.

Those

Those trees and shrubs which are planted out, or transplanted at this season, will fix themselves firmly by the beginning of next summer, which will be a great advantage, for they will require but very little trouble in watering.

#### *Pruning.*

This is a proper season to prune all kinds of flowering shrubs when they want it.

Forest-trees of all sorts may also be pruned any time in this month.

#### *Sow Plum Stones.*

Now it will be proper to put into the ground some plum stones to raise a supply of stocks.

Let beds be dug for these about four feet broad; let the stones be spread as equally as possible, and not too thick: cover them full an inch thick with earth.

Then it will be advantageous to scatter some dry short litter on the surface.

It will likewise now be necessary to prepare to preserve some plum stones in sand till spring; to be as a reserve in case these now sown in the beds should be destroyed by vermin or severe frost.

For that purpose get a good close strong box or tub, and cover the bottom three inches deep with some dry sand; then scatter in a parcel of the stones, and cover them two inches deep with sand; then scatter more stones, and throw on another covering of sand, and so proceed till the box or tub be filled.

Thus the stones will keep securely till the middle, or towards the latter end of February, when they must be sown in beds in the nursery.

#### *Plant Cuttings of Laurels.*

Plant cuttings of laurels, but let this be done in the beginning of the month.

Let the cuttings of these plants be chosen, prepared, and planted in the manner mentioned the last month.

Portugal laurels are also to be propagated by cuttings, and the beginning of this month is still very good time to plant them.

#### *Transplant Laurels.*

The beginning of this month is a proper season to transplant laurels, Portugal laurels, laurustinus, and such like evergreens.

*Sow*



*Sow, Beech-Mast, &c.*

This is the time to sow beech-mast, and is also the only proper time to sow maple-feed; let a bed be dug for each of these seeds, the earth well broken, and the surface laid even.

Then sow the seeds or mast pretty thick, and cover them near an inch thick with earth.

## The Green-House.

*Orange-Trees.*

**R**EMOVE the orange-trees, and all other of the like quality, into the green-house the beginning of this month, provided it was not done at the end of September.

Before they are carried in let the heads be well cleaned, all the decayed leaves picked off, and the earth stirred a little in the top of the tubs or pots.

About the middle or towards the latter end of the month it will be time to take in the myrtles, geraniums, and all other green-house plants.

Observe, as said of the oranges, to clean the heads, and take off the dead leaves: stir the earth on the surface of the pots; and, to such plants as appear any way sickly, let some of the old earth be taken out of the pot or tub, and fill it up with fresh compost.

When the plants are all in, take care to supply them with water, but let this be always now done with moderation.

Likewise mind to give them air every mild day, by opening all the windows; never keep them close in mild open weather in the day time.

## The Hot-House.

**T**HE beginning of this month you must begin to think of adding some fresh tan to the bark-bed in the hot-house.

Therefore, if not done in the end of last month, let some good new tan be now procured from the tan-yards, and

and lay it up in a heap for ten or twelve days to drain; but, if the tan be very wet, it should be spread thin in some dry airy place, in sunny days, to dry, so as to bring it to a middling degree of moistness; for if it is put into the hot-house pit too wet, it would be a long time before it came to a kindly heat, and sometimes not at all.

When the tan has laid its proper time, and is duly prepared, let all the pots that are now plunged in the hot-house be taken out.

Then let all the old tan in the bark-bed be sifted or screened, let all that goes through the screen be taken entirely away, and as much new tan brought in as will, with the remaining quantity of old, fill up the pit again.

Then let the new and the remaining old tan in the pit be worked up and mixt properly together.

After that is done, make the surface of the bed level.

Then bring in your fruiting plants, and plunge them in the bark to their rims: but you must observe to examine the bed often; and, if you find the heat at any time violent, then let the pots be drawn up half-way, or quite out of the tan, as you see convenient for the benefit of the plants.

When the heat is moderate, let the pots be plunged again.

About the middle, or towards the latter end of this month, it will be time to begin to make the fires every evening; and, when there happens to be very damp or cold weather, it will also be proper to make moderate fires in a morning.

The plants will require to be watered about once in six or seven days, and air must be admitted to them every day when the sun is warm and the wind calm.

#### *Succession Plants.*

The bark-bed wherein the succession pine plants are plunged will also now require to be renewed with a proper quantity of new tan; observing, as advised above in the hot-house, to let the old tan in the bed be screened before you add the new.

NOVEMBER.



# N O V E M B E R.

## *Work to be done in the Kitchen Garden.*

### *Beans.*

**I**N the middle, or towards the latter end of this month, you should plant some beans to succeed those which were planted in October; where no plantation was made of them in that month, it must be carefully attended to in the beginning of this.

The beans which are planted now, will come in at an early season, and often succeed better than those which were planted three weeks or a month sooner.

The mazagan bean comes in the earliest, is a great bearer, a good bean for the table, and also most proper to be planted at this season.

Let these beans be planted in a warm border, under a wall or other fence; and observe the same method in planting them as mentioned in October, in the article of beans.

### *Peas.*

Sow also some peas towards the middle of this month, that there may be a regular supply of them for the table in their due season.

But if none were sown in October, it will be proper to sow some in the beginning of this month.

The peas which were sown the first or second week in this month, will have a greater chance of surviving the frost, than those which were sown the beginning of October, and they will come in at an early time.

But it is the most certain method to sow a few at both times; then, if one should fail, the other may succeed; and, if both succeed, then one will succeed the other in bearing.

The best peas for sowing at this season are the early hotspur; there are several kinds of the hotspurs, but let the earliest sort be procured from the seeds-men or nursery-men, and see that the seed is new and good.

A warm

A warm border under a wall is the proper situation to sow these peas in now, and sow them in the manner directed in the last month.

#### *Sowing Radishes.*

About the beginning or towards the middle of this month you may sow some radish seed: and, if they survive the frost, they will come in early in the spring.

There is but little hopes of this succeeding; but still where these things are desired early, it will be proper to sow a few, and let them take their chance; if the winter should be favourable, you will have radishes at a very early time.

Let the seed be sown on a warm border near a wall or other fence, observing to sow it pretty thick: let this be done in a dry day.

#### *Small Sallad Herbs.*

Sow the different sorts of small sallading every ten or twelve days, that the table may be duly supplied with them.

The sorts are cresses, mustard, radish, rape, and lettuce.

Where it was not done last month, it will now, for the more certainty of raising these herbs, be proper to prepare for the seeds a bed of rich light earth, in a warm situation.

Let the bed be the length and width of one or more three light frames; break the earth well, and lay the bed sloping to the sun; observing, if possible, to raise the bed a foot or more higher in the back part than in the front, and to make the surface smooth.

Then set on the frame, and sink the back part of it in the ground, so that the surface of the bed may be every where within about six or eight inches of the glasses.

The seed must be sown in drills, and covered not more than a quarter of an inch deep with earth; these seeds, at this season, should be but just covered.

When the seed is sown, immediately put on the glasses; and when the plants appear, let them have air by raising the lights, or taking them entirely off, as you see it necessary; always keep them close every night.

If you practise the above method, there will be no occasion to use artificial heat, to raise these herbs, except in severe frosty weather.

*Lettuce*



*Lettuce.*

Let the lettuce plants which are in frames enjoy the air freely every day, when the weather is mild and dry, by taking the glasses entirely off in the morning; but if the weather is like to be wet or is very cold, let them be put on again in the evening; but in very mild weather let them also remain open at night; for when these plants are kept too close, they draw up weak.

When the weather is very wet, let the glasses be kept on, but let them be raised a considerable height at the back of the frame to admit air to the plants.

In severe frosty weather keep the glasses close, and use other covering if you see it necessary.

If you have any of the same plants under bell or hand-glasses, let the same rule be observed as above.

*Celery.*

When the weather is open and dry you should earth up celery to blanch it, and to preserve it from the frost.

Break the earth well, and lay it up to the plants within six inches of the top of their leaves.

In performing this work let care be taken not to lay the earth to the plants too hastily, because that would force the earth into their hearts and bury them, and would occasion them to rot.

*Endive.*

Take the advantage of a dry day to tie up some endive to whiten them.

Choose for this purpose some of the best full-grown plants; and when their leaves are perfectly dry, let them be gathered up regularly in your hand, and tied together with a string of bafs,

But if the weather is inclinable to be frosty or very wet, let the following method be practised to whiten some endive:

Draw up some of the best and largest plants in a dry mild day, and hang them up by their roots across some lines in a dry place for a day or two to drain off the wet from between their leaves.

Then let some barrows full of very dry and light earth be laid into a frame, observing to raise the earth to the top,

## 430 THE KITCHEN GARDEN. [Nov

top, at the back part of the frame, and let it come sloping to the front.

Then gather the leaves of the endive up evenly in your hand, and let the plants be buried in the above earth almost to the top of their leaves; and when the weather is very wet or frosty, keep the glasses constantly over them, and use other covering occasionally.

But for want of frames you may lay some earth in any dry open shed; raising the earth in a high ridge, and so lay the endive therein as above directed; observing in time of hard frost, to cover it with long litter.

If you practise the above methods, you may whiten endive in any of the winter months, provided you take care to lay in a sufficient quantity at the approach of severe weather.

But where there is not the conveniency of frames, &c, practise the following method:

Let part of a warm dry border under a south wall or other fence be dug, and as you dig throw up the earth in a high and sharp ridge lengthways the border, making the south side as steep as it will possibly stand.

Then get the endive and prepare them as above directed.

When this is done, the plants are then to be laid into the south side of the above ridge; observe to gather the leaves of every plant up close and regular, and put them into the side of the ridge of earth almost to the top of their leaves.

Remember that the plants are not here to be placed in an upright manner, but are to be placed as it were upon their sides, nearly in a horizontal position; and one or two rows may be put in lengthways the ridge.

The endive will in such a ridge blanch freely, and without the hazard of its rotting by much rain, for wet cannot lodge there.

But these plants, both in such ridges, and such as are in level ground, should be sheltered in severe frosts by a covering of peas-straw, fern, or some other dry long litter, for endive is not able to endure much frost.

### *Cardoons.*

Continue to earth up cardoons as they advance in height.

First gather their leaves up even and close, and tie them together with a hay-band; then let the earth be well broken, and laid up round each plant to a good height.

Let



Let this work be performed in a dry mild day, and when the leaves of the plants are perfectly dry, otherwise they will rot in the heart.

*Asparagus.*

Where the asparagus beds were not cleaned and earthen up last month, it must now be done.

This should be done the beginning of the month, and observe the following method: cut down the leaves or haulm of the asparagus close to the surface of the beds, and let this be directly carried away.

Then, with a sharp hoe, let every weed on the beds be cut up, and at the same time draw them all off into the alleys.

Then set the line, and with a spade cut, or mark out the alleys about eighteen or twenty inches wide; this done, let the alleys be dug out one moderate spade deep, and lay the earth neatly over the beds; and, as you go on, let the weeds which were drawn off the beds be buried in the alleys a proper depth, and let the edge of every bed be made full and strait.

*Artichokes.*

About the middle or towards the latter end of this month, it will be time to cut down the leaves of artichokes, and earth up the plants to protect them from severe frosts.

The leaves must be cut down close to the ground.

Then you may practise either of the following methods, in landing up the plants. The first is this: let trenches about twenty inches wide be marked out between all the rows, and let the said trenches be dug out a good spade deep, and lay the earth as you dig it out over the rows of plants, observing to cover the crowns of them at least six or eight inches thick.

But in landing up these plants, some gardeners, instead of digging out trenches as above, practise the following method:

The line to be set exactly along the middle of each of the spaces between the rows of plants, and with your spade cut a mark according to the line: by this you form as it were beds, four feet and half or five feet broad, with one row of plants standing along the middle of every such bed; then the ground is to be dug, but this must be done regularly

regularly bed by bed, digging close about and between all the plants, at the same time working or rearing the earth gradually from the above lines or marks on each side the row of plants into a ridge; the row of plants to be covered with, and to be exactly in the middle of the said ridge; the ridge to be made sloping on each side.

This is the only method to be taken to protect artichokes from frost; some indeed never land them up, but, instead, of that, lay some long dung over the plants; but this is not so good for protecting the plants, for it will not keep out the frost so well as a good ridge of earth.

But, notwithstanding, if the winter should prove uncommonly severe, it will also be proper to lay over every ridge a covering of straw or other dry long litter; and this, together with the ridge of earth, will effectually secure the artichoke.

In dressing the artichokes there is one thing proper to observe; and that is, when any of the strong plants now shew fruit, and you desire to save that fruit, they should not be cut down; but let the leaves be tyed up close with a hayband, and then lay the earth over the roots as above, and up close about the outides of the leaves, which will preserve the plant in a growing state, and will bring the fruit to perfection.

#### *Colliflower Plants.*

Let the colliflower plants which are in frames have the free air every day, when the weather is mild and dry, by taking the glasses quite off in the morning; but let the plants be covered with them every night.

When the weather is extremely wet, it will be proper to keep the glasses over them; but at the same time let the lights be raised a good height, to admit a large share of free air to the plants.

When dead leaves at any time appear on the plants, let them be taken off, and keep them perfectly clear from weeds.

The colliflowers which are planted under hand or bell glasses, must be treated as above; and, if you draw a little earth up round their stems, it will do them good.

Where colliflowers were not planted out under hand glasses last month, it may still be done in the beginning of this.

*Spinage.*



*Spinage.*

Spinage should now be kept perfectly clean from weeds; and, where the plants stand too close, let some of the smallest be taken up for use, so that every plant may stand singly; then the sun and air can come at the surface of the ground to dry it, and will then be comfortable to the plants and they will thrive the better.

When you gather spinage, let care be taken to cut only the large outside leaves, leaving the inner ones to grow larger, and they will be fit to gather in their turn.

*Carrots and Parsneps.*

The beginning of this month you should take up carrots and parsneps, or other kitchen roots, in order to lay them in sand; to preserve them for winter use.

If these roots were permitted to remain in the ground, they would canker and rot; besides, if severe frost should set in, the ground would be frozen so hard, that it would be difficult to take the roots up at the time they are wanted.

Take the advantage therefore of a dry mild day, and take the roots out of the ground; cut the tops off close, clean them from earth, and carry them into some convenient dry place.

Then lay a bed of dry sand on the floor about two or three inches thick; place the roots upon the sand close together, observing to lay the crowns of the roots outwards.

Cover the roots with sand two inches thick, then lay some more roots on that, and then more sand, and so proceed with a layer of sand and another of roots, till you have laid them all, and lay some dry straw over the whole.

*Potatoes.*

Where potatoes still remain in the ground, let them now be taken up as soon as possible before severe frosts begin; these roots cannot bear much frost, for such as are affected by it, immediately turn very watery, and are then not fit to eat.

Let these roots when taken up be well cleaned, and laid up in a dry room; and when the weather is severe, let them be covered with some dry straw, and let this be laid almost a foot thick over them.

U

These

These roots should be from time to time looked over, and all such as have any tendency to rottenness should be taken out, for such would infect those that are sound, and the infection would soon spread.

*Manure and trench Kitchen Ground.*

Now take advantage of dry days, and frosty weather, and bring in rotten dung from old hot-beds, or from dung-hills, and lay it upon such vacant pieces of kitchen-ground as want manure.

*The Method of trenching Ground.*

Likewise now dig or trench up all such pieces of ground as are vacant; and, in order that the ground may receive the true advantage of fallow, let every piece, as you dig or trench it, be laid up in narrow ridges.

The method of ridging up the ground in winter, should be practised in every soil and situation, it being of great advantage; this will improve the ground more than many could imagine; for by its being laid up in sharp ridges, the frosts, sun, and air, can then have more free access; all of which contribute greatly to the enriching and mellowing the ground; and the sooner this is done the better.

Therefore, according as the crops are cleared off the ground, let it be immediately dug or trenched up in ridges.

Let the ridges be dug about two or three spades broad, and lay them up rough, and as high and sharp as they will stand.

By digging the vacant pieces of ground in the winter season, it is not only an advantage to the soil but it also looks neat, and will greatly forward the business in the spring, when there is always a deal of other work in hand.

The ground being laid up in ridges, it is soon levelled down in the spring, when it is wanted for the reception of seeds or plants.

*Carrot Seed.*

Dig a warm border the beginning or middle of this month, and sow in it some carrot seed; and there will be a chance, from this early sowing, to have, very soon in the spring, some young carrots.

But sow only a small spot at this time, for there is not much dependance in having great success; but still it is proper to make trial of a little seed; and, if the winter proves



proves any thing mild, there will be a chance of having some increase.

*Onions.*

Take care now of the spring onions; where weeds appear let them be picked out with care.

*Hot-Beds to raise Asparagus in Winter.*

Now is the time to begin to make hot-beds to force asparagus: the method of making and managing these beds may be seen in the work of the kitchen garden in February and December.

---

The Fruit Garden.

*Pruning and nailing Vines.*

**V**INES, either against walls or in the vineyard, should now be pruned and nailed; and this may be done any time in this month.

In pruning vines, you must observe to leave in every part a proper supply of the last summer's shoots to bear fruit the next.

The old useless wood must now be cut out to make room for the bearing shoots or branches.

For the last summer's shoots which are now left, will in the spring produce from every eye or bud a young shoot, and on these young shoots the grapes are produced the same summer, for vines seldom produce bearing shoots from any but one year old wood.

Therefore the main article to be observed now is to leave a sufficient supply of the last summer's shoots in every part.

Choose the strongest and best situated shoots, with the shortest joints, and let each shoot be shortened according to its strength.

The general rule is to shorten the shoots to three, four, and five eyes or joints in length; which rule should be always observed according to the strength of the different shoots; that is, the shoots, in general, as they open, should be cut down to three or four eyes, and never leave the strongest shoots more than four, or at most five eyes, for

when the shoots are left longer, they only fill the vines in the ensuing summer with more shoots than you can find room to lay in; and, besides, the fruit upon such shoots, would be small and ill grown, and would not ripen kindly; therefore it is best to shorten the shoots to the length above mentioned; then each shoot, so shortened, will next summer produce three, or at most four good shoots, with each, two or three bunches of fruit upon them, and the fruit upon these shoots will be found to grow large, and will ripen well, and in due time, and one large bunch of grapes is at any time worth three small ones.

In shortening the shoots, mind to cut them about an inch above an eye, and make the cut sloping.

Let the branches or shoots in general be left ten or twelve inches a-part, or more, but that at least.

Take care to prune in such a manner as that there may always be a succession of young branches towards the bottom, to come in to supply the place of the old naked wood, which must be cut out yearly, as it becomes unserviceable.

Never suffer old naked branches to remain in any part of the vine where there is younger branches or shoots properly situated to come in to supply their place.

When you have finished pruning, let the branches be nailed up neatly, observing to lay them in straight and regularly, ten or twelve inches distant.

If you have left too many branches when you prune, let that be remedied in nailing by cutting out the superabundant wood in a regular manner.

#### *Prune Apricot Trees, &c.*

Prune apricot, peach, and nectarine trees, and this may be done any time in this month.

In pruning these trees you are to observe the same method as mentioned in the former month; the last summer's shoots are to be preserved in every part at proper distances, for these trees produce their fruit principally upon the former year's shoots.

The old naked branches which have no young shoots on them, should be either entirely cut out or shortened to some convenient branch that supports such shoots, observing always to cut them off close, leaving no stump, and make the cut smooth.

Let



Let it be a rule in pruning these trees, to let some of the old wood in every part be cut away every year, in the winter pruning, to make room for the last summer's shoots, a due supply of which should be left in every part at moderate distances to bear fruit next summer; and all such as are not wanted must be cut away quite close, leaving no spurs.

The young shoots which are now left must be at the same time shortened, more or less, according to the vigour of the tree, and strength of the different shoots; which is done in order to promote their producing a supply of new shoots next year, to bear fruit the year following.

In shortening the shoots of these trees, the same rule is to be observed now as directed in October.

Likewise observe that as soon as a tree is pruned it will be the best method to nail that before you prune another.

Nail all the branches and shoots perfectly straight and close to the wall, and at regular distances; six inches or thereabouts is the distance that the shoots and branches in general should be laid from one another.

#### *Transplant Peach-Trees.*

Now still transplant, where wanted, peach, nectarine and apricot-trees: let this be done in open weather.

Let the borders where these trees are to be planted be prepared in a proper manner.

Where an entire new plantation is to be made let the borders be trenched all the way, about two spades deep; and where an addition of new earth is wanted, let some be added at the same time: loam is best if it can be had, with a quantity of very rotten dung.

But where only a few trees are wanted in different places, in such case, that part of the border where the tree is to stand, need only to be trenched, adding dung and a barrow or two of good loam, or other fresh earth.

The trees should be planted at the distance of fifteen or sixteen feet from one another, and the stem of each tree should stand at least four inches from the wall.

#### *Prune Apple, Plum, and Pear-Trees against Walls and in Espaliers.*

Prune plum, apple and pear-trees, both against walls and in espaliers, this operation may be performed on these trees any time in this month.

In pruning the plum, apple and pear-trees against walls or espaliers, let them be examined with good attention, and let all very old and useless wood in every part of the tree be cut out.

But it must be observed, where a supply of young bearing wood is wanting in any part of these trees, that some of the best situated shoots of the last summer's growth, must now be left in every such place; these shoots are not to be shortened, but each must be laid in at full length; and, according as they advance in length, must still be trained to the wall or espalier, without being reduced in their length in any future pruning, either in summer or winter.

The reason for not shortening the shoots of these trees is this: let it be observed that the last summer shoots which are now laid in at full length, and not hereafter shortened, will in the second or third year after, begin to produce some thick short shoots or spurs, about an inch in length, and some not so long; and upon these shoots or natural spurs, and on no other, the fruit of these trees are always produced.

But, on the contrary, were the shoots which are laid in to bear, to be shortened or topped, as by many ignorantly practised, they would, in that case, produce no such shoots or spurs as above for fruit; but, instead of that, would, in the places where the spurs or blossom-buds would otherwise appear, send out numbers of strong and altogether useless shoots; and the trees would be continually crowded with useless wood, and not one branch would be in a condition to bear, so long as you keep shortening them, and the trees would not produce one fruit for ten in the other method of leaving, therefore, still train the shoots or branches as they advance in length to the wall or espalier without reducing them.

This plainly determines what method is to be taken in pruning these trees, to bring them to a condition to bear; it shews plainly that neither the young nor old branches, are, in the general course of pruning, to be shortened.

But in the course of pruning the above trees, the branches in general should be well examined with a curious eye; and, where there are any old naked branches, such as support scarce any bearing wood, let such be taken out, to make room to train the more proper bearing branches,



branches, and the supply of young wood in a regular manner.

When the old useless wood is cut out, examine all the remaining useful branches; and, where these any where stand too close, let some of them also be taken away, observing to clear out the most irregular grown, and such as can be best spared, and let no two branches grow a-cross one another.

And all the last summer's shoots which are not wanted for a supply of wood, must now be cut away; let these be cut off quite close, leaving no spurs but what are naturally produced.

Let the branches in general be left at the distance of six inches at least from one another.

As soon as one tree is pruned, let the branches be immediately nailed to the wall or tyed to the espalier; let them be laid in horizontally, and let every one be trained strait and close, and at regular distances.

#### *Prune Cherry-Trees.*

Cherry-trees may also be pruned now; either dwarfs against walls, or such as are standards.

In pruning the wall cherries the same method is to be practised as proposed above in pruning plums &c. All such old branches as support but little or no bearing wood is to be taken off, that there may be room to train the full bearing branches, and the supply of young wood, in a free and regular manner to the wall.

Likewise observe where a supply of new wood is wanting in any part, to leave for that purpose, in the proper places, some of the strongest of the last year's shoots; and also such of these shoots as are not wanted for the above purpose must now be cut out close.

The shoots of these trees, and the branches in general, must also be trained in without being shortened or topped.

For cherry-trees also produce their fruit principally upon a kind of spur; and the branches or shoots will begin to produce some of them in the second year, provided they are not shortened.

But in pruning morella cherry trees, in particular, always take care to leave a due supply of the last summer's shoots, and these should be left in every part of the tree at the distance of five or six inches; for this kind of cherry-

tree in particular produces its fruit principally upon the last year's shoots.

*Transplant Apple-Trees, &c.*

Transplant apple, pear, plum, and cherry-trees where they are wanting; and this may be done any time in the month when the weather is open.

Where the above trees are to be planted against walls or espaliers, do not forget to allow them proper room, for this has been often forgot in making new plantations; for how often do we see them planted so close together, as would induce one to think, that the person who planted them never entertained a thought of their ever growing any larger, for by the time the trees begin to bear tolerably, they have met and encumbered, and starved one another.

Therefore let this caution be observed: never plant fruit-trees of any kind too close, neither for walls, espaliers, nor standards.

The proper distance is this: let the trees which are to be planted against walls or espaliers be set at least fifteen feet distant, but eighteen or twenty will not be too much, particularly for apples and pears.

But as to plum and cherry-trees, fifteen or sixteen feet at most will be a proper distance.

Let the border, or at least the place where each tree is to be planted, be trenched up two spades deep, and let some very rotten dung be dug in; but where the earth of the border be not naturally good, let some fresh loam, if it can be obtained, be brought in, and work it well up with a little rotten dung, and part of the earth of the border.

But fresh loam will be particularly serviceable, if there are only two or three barrows full added to the place where the tree is to be placed: for most trees thrive well in such a soil.

*Planting Standard Fruit-Trees.*

Standard apples, and other fruit-trees of all sorts, may also be brought in and planted any time this month, in mild weather.

Where a plantation of standard trees is to be made, either as an orchard or in the garden, the trees should



be set at the distance of thirty feet every way from one another.

*Fig-Trees.*

Now go over the fig-trees, and pull off all those autumnal fruit which are now upon the branches, for they are useless, and if left on would injure the young tender branches.

At the same time let all the principal shoots be nailed up close to the wall, but it would not be advisable to prune these trees now; it is better to defer that until February or March, but it will be necessary to tack up all the best shoots to the wall, the better to secure them from frost and the power of the winds.

Likewise it will, in time of very hard frosts, be proper to shelter some of the best fig-trees by a covering of mats, to protect the young shoots which are to bear fruit next year.

*Prune Gooseberries.*

Prune gooseberries any time this month, and you may also prune currants.

These shrubs are often neglected in the article of pruning, but whoever will be at the pains to bestow a skillful pruning on these trees, he will find his account in it about the latter end of June and in July, in the largeness of the fruit.

For if these trees be kept thin of branches, and all old wood cut out as it becomes unserviceable, and young ones left in their place, the fruit of such trees will be much larger than what is commonly to be met with.

The branches in general should stand fair and clear of one another, at the distance of eight or nine inches or thereabouts; that is, at their extremities.

Suffer no suckers from the roots to stand, to come in for bearing branches, but let these in general be always cleared away every year.

*Plant Gooseberry and Currant-Trees.*

Gooseberry and currant-trees may still be brought in and planted where wanted; in planting these shrubs allow the same distance between plant and plant as directed in the former month.

As these trees grow up, mind always to train them with a clear and single stem, at least ten or twelve inches in height.

Likewise let all suckers be constantly taken up as they rise from the roots, for they disfigure the trees and starve the bearing branches.

#### *Prune Raspberries.*

Prune raspberries, this is still a proper time, and do it in the manner directed last month, and clear away the cuttings, then dig the ground between the plants.

Plantations of raspberries may still be made, but let this be done as soon in the month as possible.

These must be planted in an open spot; let the rows be four feet distant, and allow three feet between plant and plant in the row.

#### *Dressing the Strawberry Beds.*

Clean the strawberry beds; and, where it was not done last month, let them have such a dressing as there mentioned.

Strawberry plants, where wanting, may also still be planted; but these should be planted in the beginning of the month, otherwise they will not succeed.

The manner of planting these plants is mentioned in October.

#### *Plant Filbert-Trees, &c.*

Now is a good time to plant filbert-trees, and it is also a proper time to plant hazle nuts, where such plants are wanted.

Both of these shrubs will thrive in almost any situation where it is not too wet in winter: they are principally raised by suckers from the root.

The plants should be planted in rows, allowing twelve or fifteen feet between plant and plant in the row, and the rows should be twelve or fifteen feet distant.

#### *Plant Walnut-Trees.*

Now plant walnut-trees, and it is also a good season to plant chesnuts. These trees are more fit to be planted in parks or other open places, than in gardens; set these trees at least thirty feet distant from one another.

*Transf*



*Transplant Mulberry-Trees, &c.*

Mulberry, meddler, and quince-trees, may now be safely transplanted.

*Directions for Planting.*

In planting any kind of fruit-tree, take care always to let a hole be opened for each tree, wide enough to let the roots spread freely and equally each way, and let the bottom of the holes be always well loosened.

Likewise observe to let the roots of the trees be always pruned where needful; that is, cut off all broken parts, and shorten stragglers, and trim off their ends in general, for this makes them more freely produce new fibres.

The next caution is never to plant a tree too deep, never let the upper part of the root be more than three inches below the common surface of the ground.

And in planting the tree, take good care to place it perfectly upright in the hole, and let the earth be well broken, and throw it in equally about all the roots, and at the same time shaking the tree gently to cause the earth to fall in close among all the small roots and fibres, and, when the hole is filled up, let the surface of the earth be gently trodden round the plant.

*Prune Standard Fruit-Trees.*

Standard apple and pear-trees in the orchard or garden, should be examined at this time, and the very old and over abundant branches should be taken away.

Where any large branch grows in a rambling manner cross the rest, let it be cut out.

Where the branches stand too close, so as to interfere with each other, let the most irregular growers be cut off.

Let all dead and very old branches be cut away in every part of these trees.

By keeping the trees thin, and taking away all irregular growing and very old branches, it is the only way to have large and well tasted fruit, and also to have handsome and lasting trees.

Having cleared your trees from all useless branches, let the remaining ones be well cleared from moss if there be any on them.

## The Pleasure, or Flower Garden.

### *Clear the Borders.*

**N**OW clear the borders from all dead annual plants, pulling them up by the roots; such as African and French marigolds, laveteras, China asters, and all other of the like kinds.

Cut down also the stems or decayed flower stalks of perennial plants, and let the borders be very well cleared from leaves of trees and all sorts of rubbish.

After this let the surface of the borders be gone over with a Dutch hoe in a dry day, and then rake them smooth.

This prevents the growth of weeds, and renders the border neat for the winter season.

They will be also clear and ready to receive what other plants you think are wanting.

When the borders are perfectly clear, go round and see where any sort of perennial plants are wanting, and set down a stick for a mark.

### *Planting Perennial Plants.*

Many sorts of perennial plants may still be planted; such as the double scarlet lychnis, double rose-campion, double rocket, catchfly, campanula, batchelors buttons, and the like.

Likewise plant, where wanted, sweet-williams, wall-flowers, rock July flowers, columbines, Canterbury bells, tree-primrose, Greek valerian, and honesty.

This is also a good time to transplant perennial sun-flower, golden-rod, perennial asters, holly hocks, French honey-suckles, monkhood, and pionies.

Now you may likewise plant thrift, London pride, gentianella, double daisies, polyanthus, and primroses, with many other sorts.

In planting the different sorts, mind to let all the large or tall growing plants be placed backward in the border or clump, and set them a good distance from one another.

Likewise observe to intermix the different sorts in such a manner as there may be an agreeable variety and regular succession of flowers in every part.

*Plant*



*Plant Tulips, &c.*

This is still a proper time to plant tulips, ranunculuses, and anemones, but it should be done, if possible, before the middle of the month.

Tulips, if they are to be planted in beds, must be planted in rows nine inches asunder, and the same distance must be allowed between plant and plant in the row.

Let these roots be planted in such beds as lie tolerably dry all winter; for if the ground be too wet, the roots planted now would rot.

*Ranunculuses and Anemones.*

The ranunculuses and anemones should also be planted in beds of light earth, and let the beds be made rounding, that, when hasty rains fall, the water may run quickly off, for much wet would rot these roots.

Let the choicest kinds of these roots be planted in beds for the convenience of protecting them in winter, and in the spring, when they are in bloom.

In planting these roots, let the same distance and manner be observed as in last month.

But if you plant them in the borders, let them be put in small patches, four or five roots in a patch, and the patches be nine or ten feet distant.

These roots should not be planted more than two or three inches deep at most; the tulip roots not less than four, but about five inches is the proper depth to plant these and the like-sized roots.

*Plant Crocuses.*

Crocuses of different sorts may now be planted, and it is time all these sorts of roots were put into the ground.

These roots should be planted within six inches of the edge of the border, and it will be best to plant them in the manner mentioned last month.

Do not plant these roots deeper than two or three inches below the surface.

*Planting Narcissus's and other Bulbs.*

Narcissus's and jonquils, and all other bulbous roots that are still above ground, may now be planted, when time and weather will permit.

*Auriculas*

*Auriculas in Pots.*

The auriculas in pots, and the carnation layers which were planted in small pots, must now be well guarded from heavy rains and frost where either happens.

The pots should at this time be placed or plunged close together in a garden frame, if not done last month; and when the weather is unfavourable, let the plants be defended by putting on the glasses.

But where there is no frame to be had, let the pots be set close together, in a bed about four feet wide; and if the earth be dry, plunge them; then place hoops across, and in bad weather let mats be drawn over them.

Let these plants, in dry and open weather, be constantly uncovered, even on nights.

*Seedling Flowers.*

The boxes or pots of seedling flowers should be removed to a warm situation the beginning of this month, provided it was not done in October.

If these boxes or pots are plunged in a dry warm border, it will secure the young bulbs, or other plants, the better from hard frosts; and when the weather proves very severe, it will be adviseable also to cover them with long litter or with mats.

*Prune flowering Shrubs.*

Prune flowering shrubs and ever-greens, and dig the ground between and about the plants.

Cut out from these shrubs all strong rambling growing shoots, of the last summer's growth; also take out or shorten all straggling or irregular branches, and cut out all dead wood.

When the branches of any shrub stand too close, let some of the worst be taken away, leaving the rest at somewhat regular distances.

Let none of the branches of two or more shrubs interfere or mix together, but let every plant be kept single, which is always most pleasing to the eye.

When the shrubs are pruned, let the ground be then neatly dug one spade deep, and take up all suckers sent up from the roots of the shrubs.

*Transplant*



*Transplant hardy flowering Shrubs:*

Trpnsplanting may still be continued in open weather among the hardy kinds of flowering shrubs and trees.

Particularly roses, honey-suckles, syringas, lilacs, and laburnums, will still succeed very well.

You may also still transplant bladder fena, scorpion fena, althæa frutex, and spiræa frutex, with the double flowering cherry, jasmines, gelder rose, and many other hardy shrubs.

*The Care of new planted Trees.*

Take care now, if frosts should set in, to protect the roots of all new planted shrubs and trees, by laying mulch on the surface of the ground; but this is particularly to be understood of the more choice and tender kinds.

Place stakes, and tye up to them all such new planted trees and shrubs as stand in need of support: let this be done in due time, for it is a very material article; because, while the wind rocks them at the roots it prevents them putting out new fibres; or, at least, as soon as put out, where not secured with stakes, they are broken off, or much disturbed by the first high winds.

Therefore let a stout stake be drove down to every new planted tree or shrub, that the wind has evidently much power over, and let the principal stem be tyed to the stake in a neat and secure manner.

*Grass Walks and Lawns.*

Now let the grass walks and lawns be poled and rolled, for at this season the worms will throw up very fast, and make the grass every where very dirty.

The long pliable pole should therefore be often used, in order to break and scatter the worm-casts about; and the grass should afterwards be rolled with a wooden, or some other roller; which will not only render the surface firm and smooth, but will also make it extremely clean, for the scattered worm-casts will all stick to the roller.

This poleing and rolling, should, in order to keep the grass perfectly neat, be performed once a week, or thereabouts, during the winter season. Choose the driest days to do this work.

Now

Now also let the grass be thoroughly cleared every where from the leaves of trees; and as these are now mostly all down, let them be cleared away in every part of the garden.

#### *Gravel Walks.*

Gravel walks must still be kept neat; let them be well cleared from every appearance of a weed, and let moss be destroyed as well as possible; for now it will spread apace, this being the time of its growth.

Let these walks be also often rolled: take advantage of the driest days to do this, and it should be done, if possible, once every week.

Some people break up their gravel walks at this season, and throw the gravel up in ridges, to lie in that form all winter; but I think that has a disagreeable appearance in any garden, particularly in small gardens; it not only looks ill, but also the practice renders the walks unserviceable, at a time when a foot can hardly be set with pleasure in any other part of the garden.

It is done with an intent to destroy weeds, and I have often tried it, but never found it in the least answer that purpose.

#### *Digging the Clumps or Quarters among flowering Shrubs, &c.*

Forward now all digging that is to be done in this garden.

Let this be done, in particular, among the shrubs of every kind; for, by digging the ground between, it greatly encourages the plants, and the ground will lie clean, and appear neat all winter.

Prepare also the ground where you intend to plant any of the more tender kinds of shrubs in the spring.

#### *Box.*

Box for edgings to beds or borders may, where wanting, still be planted.

Now is also a good time to mend box edgings where there are any gaps or uneven places.

#### *Planting Forest-Trees.*

Forest-trees of all kinds may still be transplanted in open weather; take care as soon as they are planted, to stake



stake them properly, to secure them from the power of the wind.

Take up suckers of roses, and lilacs, and other shrubs, plant them in rows in an open spot, where they will make pretty plants in two years time, and may then be transplanted into the clumps or borders.

*Hyacinths and Tulips, &c.*

Take care now of the beds of the choicest kinds of hyacinths, tulips, ranunculuses and anemone roots, and shelter them in bad weather.

The beds wherein the most curious sorts of these roots are planted, should now be arched over with hoops; and, in heavy rains and sharp frosts, let mats or canvas be drawn over.

Never omit covering them in time of hard rains or snow; for these, if permitted to fall upon the beds, would get down and destroy many of the roots, or at least would prove injurious to the generality.

*Preparing Compost for Flowers.*

Begin now, where not done before, to break up, and turn the heaps of compost: in doing this, let the clods be well broken, that all the parts may be properly mixed.

**The Nursery.**

*Of Transplanting.*

**I**N the beginning, or, at least, some time in this month, finish all the transplanting that is to be done before spring; it is dangerous to transplant late in the month, because hard frost may set in before the plants have taken root.

*Preparations for new Plantations.*

Continue to dig and trench the ground where new plantations are to be made in February or March, and the ground will be finely mellowed by that time.

*Manuring*

*Manuring the Ground.*

When dung is wanted in any part of the nursery, take advantage of dry days, or frosty weather, and bring it in.

Where it is intended to lay any dung between rows of young trees, let it, as soon as laid down, be spread equally over the surface, that the rains may wash its virtue into the ground among the roots, which will be of no small benefit to the plants.

*The Care of new planted Trees.*

Now let all tall new planted trees be staked, and let them be tyed up to secure them from being blown to one side by violent winds.

Take also great care to protect from frost the roots of new planted trees and shrubs; but this must be particularly observed in the tender and choice kinds.

For the protection of these kinds, get some mulch, or some long litter, and let some of it be laid a good thickness over the surface of the earth between the plants, which will hinder the frost from entering to their roots.

*Securing Plants.*

The seedling exotick plants in beds should now be sheltered in sharp frosty weather: this may be done by placing some hoops across the beds; and, when the frost is very severe, let some good thick mats be drawn over the hoops.

Or you may lay some light substance, such as fern, or peas straw, about their stems and over their tops, observing to take this away as soon as the frost breaks.

Let all plants in pots be also now very well secured from frost.

To protect the roots of all kinds of potted plants, it will now be proper to plunge the pots to their rims in a dry warm lying spot of ground.



## The Green-House.

### *Water Green-House Plants.*

**E**VERY day look over your green-house plants to see which wants water.

These plants require but little at this season, but they must have some, and always give it to them in moderate quantities, and only to such as you see require it.

Let all dead leaves be picked off the plants, and also keep the floor of the house perfectly clear from such.

When the weather is mild, let the windows be opened every day about nine or ten o'clock in the morning, observing to open them less or more, as the air is less or more sharp.

Let the windows be shut again about three or four in the afternoon.

When the wind blows sharp against the windows, it will not be proper to open them.

---

## The Hot-House.

### *Pine-Apples.*

**T**HE pine-apples being now in the winter beds, the chief care at this season is to keep the fires regular, and never too strong; in mild open weather the fires need only be made at nights; but in sharp frosts a moderate fire must be kept night and day.

And you must also observe to give the plants water as often as they stand in need thereof.

### *Watering the Pines.*

Once in a week, or thereabouts, will be often enough to give these plants water at this season.

Let the water be given in moderate quantities, observing to use the tin pipe, which is mentioned in January, to convey the water to the plants.

Such of the young pines as are placed for the winter in dung, or bark-beds made in the open air, must now be treated with great care; that is, the glasses must be well covered

covered every night, and, in bad weather, with some good thick mats.

Likewise the outside of the frame should be lined quite round, a tolerable thickness, with dry hay, or such like dry litter; this will preserve the heat, and prevent the frost from entering the sides of the frame.

The sides of the bed should also be laid round with dry litter:

One thing more is to be observed in these pine beds which are made in the open air; and that is, if the beds are made of dung only, the heat will not be of any great duration, and therefore must be often examined: when it is found that the bed declines its heat, it must be renewed, by adding a lining of more new horse-dung to its sides; and this is to be repeated, during the winter season, as often as it shall be found necessary.

The plants in such beds must be allowed but very moderate quantities of water at any one time.



DECEMBER.



# DECEMBER.

## *Work to be done in the Kitchen Garden.*

### *Colliflower Plants.*

**L**OOK over your colliflower plants which are in frames, and pick off all decayed leaves, as they appear on them, for they are hurtful to the plants.

Every day, when the weather is mild and dry, let the glasses be taken off, that the plants may have the free air; let the lights be put on every night.

When the weather is very wet, keep the lights over them, but let them be raised a good height, at the back of the frame, to let in a large portion of air to the plants.

In severe frosty weather, keep the plants constantly covered with the glasses; and other covering (such as straw, fern, or other long litter) will also be very necessary to lay over the glasses and round the outsides of the frame.

The colliflower plants under hand or bell-glasses must be treated as above.

### *Lettuce Plants.*

The lettuce plants which are in frames should be uncovered every mild and dry day, for these plants must have the open air at all opportunities.

When the weather happens to be very wet, keep the glasses over the plants, and raise them a considerable height to admit a large share of free air to the plants: let the glasses be close every wet and cold night; but in very mild dry weather, let the glasses be off night and day.

Let all decayed leaves be taken off these plants as often as they appear, and keep them free from weeds.

In frosty weather let the plants be well protected therefrom, by keeping the glasses on, or a covering of mats over them.

*Lettuce*

*Lettuce Seed.*

You may now sow a little lettuce seed on a warm south border; if they succeed they will be useful in the spring. This may be done any time in the month when the weather is mild; and if you sow a little twice in the month you will have the greater chance of success.

*Small Sallad Herbs.*

Continue to sow several sorts of small salleting once in ten days or a fortnight, that there may be a proper supply for the table as often as it is required.

The best sorts are, the mustard, cresses, radish and rape: you may also sow some lettuce to cut while young.

Let these seeds be sown in a frame of dry light earth, as mentioned in November; but be sure, at this season, not to cover the seeds deeper with earth than just at much as will hide them.

In general, keep the glasses over them; but give air to the plants every day when the weather is mild, by raising the glasses on props: the plants may be quite exposed to the air in a very mild dry day, but be sure to keep the glasses close over them all night.

In severe weather these seeds must be sown in a slight hot-bed.

*Sow Radish Seeds.*

Any time this month, when the weather is open and dry, you may sow a few radishes to come early in the spring.

Let these be sown in a warm border under a wall; and when the plants are up, if the frost should be severe, you may cover them with some peas straw, fern, or other long litter.

But where radishes are desired very early, you may, about the middle, or towards the latter end of this month, sow some radish seed in frames.

The best sort for this purpose is the short-topped or London radish.

Sow the seed pretty thick, and cover it about a quarter of an inch deep, or rake it in: put on the glasses; and when the plants appear, let them have plenty of air, by taking the glasses off every day when the weather is mild, or by raising them a good height with props.

*Carrots.*



*Carrots.*

Where young carrots are desired early in the season, you may now, if not done last month, dig a piece of a warm border, and sow in it some carrot seed.

This may be done any time in the month when the weather is mild and dry, observing to sow the seed pretty thick, and immediately after to rake it in.

If the weather proves any thing favourable after Christmas, there will be a chance of having from this sowing a few young carrots pretty early.

*Peas.*

When the weather is open, let a spot of ground in a warm situation be got ready for some more peas, to succeed the former sowing.

Let the ground be raked smooth, and the stones drawn off; then draw some drills about a yard or three feet and a half asunder, scatter the peas therein pretty thick, and cover them over an inch or about an inch and a half deep with earth.

The hotspur peas are still the properest to be sown at this season, and you may sow them any time in this month, when the weather is mild; but to succeed those sown the former month, the middle of this month is the proper season for that work.

If you have any peas above ground, you should draw some earth to their stems, to protect them from frost and wet.

Let this be done in a dry mild day, and let the earth be broken fine before you draw it up to the plants.

*Beans.*

About the beginning, or towards the middle, of this month, prepare also some ground, in a sheltered situation, for a crop of small beans.

If you have not planted any before, let them be planted the beginning of the month, but if they are to succeed the former plantation, the middle of the month will be time enough.

Let some of the mazagan beans be planted now, for they will come in earliest.

These beans should be planted in rows, observing to plant them three or four inches distant in the row, and let the rows be two feet and a half asunder.

You

You should plant these beans about two inches deep in the ground.

If you have beans up, let care be taken to guard them from frost.

This is done by drawing earth up to their stems as they advance in height, observing to do it in a dry mild day, and when the surface of the earth is tolerably dry.

About the last week in this month you may plant a few Sandwich beans: they will come in at a right time, to succeed small early beans, which were planted the beginning or middle of the month.

These beans must be planted in rows three feet asunder, at five or six inches distant from each other, and about two inches and a half, or three inches deep.

### *Celery.*

Take advantage of the first dry and mild day to earth up the celery that requires it, and see that the plants are first perfectly dry.

Break the earth small, and let it be laid up to the plants, with care not to break their leaves, or bury the hearts of the plants, for that would rot them.

Observe, if possible, to earth up the plants within four or five inches of their tops, to guard them from the frost, and to blanch them a good length.

If the weather is like to be severe, it will be proper to cover some of your best celery plants with some long litter; such as peas-straw, fern, or the like.

This will protect the plants from frost, and will prevent the ground from being frozen: then you can take up the plants without difficulty, when they are wanted for the kitchen.

### *Endive.*

If the weather is mild and dry, you may tie up some of the largest endive plants to blanch them.

This should be done when the leaves of the plants are quite dry, otherwise they will rot in the heart.

The leaves should be gathered up even in your hand, and then tied together a little above the middle of the plant.

But if the weather is very wet or frosty, these plants will not blanch by this above method, for they are apt to rot.

There-



Therefore, take the opportunity of the first dry and mild day to draw up some of the finest plants, and hang them up in a dry place, by their roots, for a day or two, that the wet which is between their leaves may drain off.

Then let the plants be managed as directed in the last month.

#### *Cardoons.*

Earth up cardoons, to blanch them, and to preserve them from frost.

This work should be done when the weather is mild and dry, observing to tie the leaves even together with hay-bands; then let the earth be well broken, and laid up round each plant.

These plants should now be earthed up within a very little of their tops, if possible; and, in severe weather, some dry litter may be laid up round the best plants, which will keep the frost out.

#### *Artichokes.*

Where artichokes were not earthed up the last month, that work should be done, if possible, the beginning of this; or let some litter be laid over them.

First cut the leaves close to the surface of the ground, and clear them away; then let the earth be laid over the rows of the plants in the manner mentioned the last month.

But if the ground is frozen hard, so that you cannot dig between, or that you have not time to earth them, let some dry long litter be laid over and round the plants, to protect them from the effects of the frost.

#### *Mushrooms.*

Now take good care of the mushroom beds, to keep the frost and wet from them. To do this, let a good covering of clean straw be kept over every bed, not less than a foot in thickness.

After heavy rains, or snow, let the beds be examined; and, if you find the covering next the bed wet, let the wet straw be removed as soon as possible, and some dry be laid in its place.

#### *A hot-bed to force Asparagus.*

Make a hot-bed, to plant asparagus where it is required early.

Let the dung for that purpose be well prepared, by throwing it in a heap for ten or twelve days before you make the bed ; in that time it will be in right order.

The bed should be three feet and a half high, and two inches wider than the frame on every side.

When the bed has been made two or three days, level the top, and put on the earth ; but you are not, as yet, to put on the frame.

The earth must be laid of an equal depth all over the top of the bed ; it must be about six inches thick in every part, and the surface made perfectly even, banking up every kind of moist soil round the outside to keep the earth up.

When this is done the asparagus plants are to be immediately planted, close to each other, upon the surface of the earth. The method is this :

First, at one end of the bed let a small ridge of earth be raised upon the surface, about four or five inches high ; this done, get the roots, and begin to place them, observing to place the first course of plants close together, against the above little ridge of earth ; and so proceed, laying or placing them one against another, as close as you possibly can put them, from one end to the other of the bed ; do not, however, place the plants quite out to the full extent of the bed, but leave about the breadth of two or three inches all the way on each side of the bed, in order that there may be room to bank up some more earth also up against the outside roots.

Having placed the plants, let some moist earth be banked up against the outside roots on each side of the bed.

Then get some good light earth, with which the crowns of the roots are to be covered, observing to lay the earth equally all over them, about two inches thick ; pour over this two or three pots of water, to wash in the earth among the roots, and add a little more earth, so that all the crowns of the plants may remain equally covered about two inches thick ; which concludes the work for the present. The bed is to remain in this manner until the asparagus begins to appear through the covering of earth ; then lay on another parcel of earth the depth of three, or near four inches ; so that, in the whole, there may be the depth of between five and six inches of earth over the crowns of the roots.

When this is done then prepare to put on the frame and glasses.

But,



But, before you put on the above last parcel of earth, you must first fix some thick bands, or ropes of straw, round the upper part of the bed to secure the earth from slipping down, and which also serves for the frame to rest upon, which is to be done in the following manner: let some bands of straw be made, about two or three inches thick, and get some stakes about two feet long, sharpened at one end; with these stakes the band of straw is to be fastened round the upper part of the bed, in such a manner as that the upper part of the straw may be exactly level with the surface of the earth when the proper quantity is all laid on; and in fixing the said band be careful to thrust the stakes down into the dung of the bed; and, when this is done, let the frame and glasses be immediately put on, and rested on the band of straw.

Observe that, during the time which the bed is without the frame, if there should happen to be heavy rains or great snow, the bed, at such times, must be defended by a good thick covering of straw, or mats; or otherwise put on the frame and lights, at the first approach of such weather.

This is the proper management of a hot-bed, for raising or forcing early asparagus: and if that method is followed, the bed will soon begin to produce abundantly; for the plants will rise very thick in about a month or five weeks, and be of surprising quick growth.

The next thing to be observed, is, that, when the heat of the bed begins to decline, it must be renewed by applying a lining of new horse-dung to its sides. This will be required in about eighteen or twenty days after the bed is made; nor must you forget to cover the glasses every night with mats, or long litter; but this should be particularly observed when the plants begin to appear.

Note, In placing the plants on the bed, take care to set the crowns of the roots upright, and gather those of each plant close together; so that a bed for a three light frame may contain, at least, between two and three hundred roots in each light.

The plants for the above purpose of forcing, should not be less than three, nor more than four or five years old. See the work of the kitchen garden for February.

#### *Trenching and digging.*

Now forward, at all opportunities, the trenching and digging the vacant spots of ground in the kitchen-garden,

that you may not have that work to do in the spring, when there will be much of other business to be done, that could not be properly done before.

Also take the opportunity of dry, or frosty weather, and carry dung to the different parts of the garden where manure is wanted.

And let the ground be dug one or two spades deep as you see it necessary; observing to lay it up in ridges till the time you want to plant or sow it; which will mellow and enrich the ground greatly.

## The Fruit Garden.

### *Prune Apple and Pear Trees.*

**C**ONTINUE to prune dwarf apples and pears, against walls or espaliers, any time this month.

These trees are hardy, and you need not be afraid of the frost doing them the least damage through means of pruning them.

The same rule holds good now in pruning these trees as mentioned in November.

### *Pruning Vines.*

Vines against walls, or in the vineyard, may now likewise be pruned; and the same method is to be practised in pruning vines this month as in the last.

### *Prune Apricot Trees, &c.*

Peaches, nectarines, apricots, plums, and cherry-trees may also still be pruned; and it may be done any time in the month, without much danger of injuring the trees by the operation, even if the weather should be frosty.

These trees are rather tenderer than apples and pears; but, if the weather be not very severe, the pruning and nailing of them may be forwarded in any of the winter months, without running the least hazard of their being any ways damaged.

Let every tree, according as it is pruned, be immediately nailed up in a neat and regular manner.

### *Standard Fruit Trees.*

Now is the time to examine standard fruit trees, either in the garden, or in the orchard, to cut out all useless wood and ill growing branches.

most



Where the branches of these trees stand too close, let them be thinned, observing to cut out such as grow the most irregular; and where any large branch grows a-cross, or interferes much with any of the others, let such a branch be cut out.

Let the smaller branches, towards the upper part of the tree, be also examined; and, where they are crowded, let some of these also be cut away.

Keep these trees, that is, all kinds of standards, always moderately thin of branches, and let them be left at regular distances: thus they will not fail to produce abundantly, and the fruit will always be large and handsome.

#### *New planted Fruit Trees.*

Take care now of new planted fruit trees, and let their roots be well secured from frost.

This must be done by laying mulch, or some kind of long litter, on the surface of the ground about the trees; and let this be laid full as far, each way, as you think the roots extend.

Support all new-planted standard fruit trees, where wanting, with stakes: in doing this, let a piece of hay-band be put round that part of the tree where it is to be fastened to the stake.

This prevents the bark of the tree from being rubbed off when rocked by winds against the stake.

#### *Management of Fruit Tree Borders.*

Where any of the fruit-tree borders want manuring, or fresh earth, this is now a very good time to do that work.

For that purpose, get from a common, or elsewhere, a quantity of good fresh loamy earth, if it can be had, and some of the best thoroughly rotten dung, mixing both well together.

Let this be laid upon the border, dug in, and well worked up with the earth of the border. The sooner this is done the better, for this dressing will be of great service to the trees in general, as will be seen in a summer or two after; but particularly to such trees as are in a declining state.

The fresh earth, and the good rotten dung, will encourage the trees surprisingly, so as to produce large fruit, and they will be fair and well tasted.

In open weather, dig and prepare such borders, or other places, as are to be planted with fruit trees; for this being a leisure time, that work can be done in a proper manner.

In doing this work let those rules be observed which we gave in the two preceding months.

*Transplant Fruit-Trees.*

Fruit-trees, of most sorts, may still be transplanted, provided the weather be open; but, if the weather be frosty, that work must be deferred till another opportunity.

*Prune Gooseberry and Currant-Trees.*

Continue to prune gooseberry and currant-trees, and observe the same method of keeping the branches thin, and at regular distances, as directed in the former month.

In these trees suffer no branches to remain that grow across the others; and such as grow in a straggling manner should also be removed, or shortened, as it shall seem most proper; cut out all dead wood, and very old branches, and keep the hearts of the trees open.

Let all suckers from the roots of these shrubs be also entirely cleared away.

*Transplant Gooseberry and Currant-Trees.*

Gooseberry and currant-trees may still be transplanted into places where they are wanting; and this may be done any time in the month when open weather.

Let these shrubs, where they are to be planted round the quarters of the garden, be set about seven or eight feet distant from one another.

*Propagate Gooseberry and Currant-Trees.*

This is still a proper time to plant cuttings of gooseberries and currants, to raise a supply of young trees; the method of preparing and planting them is mentioned in October and the last month.

Note; Gooseberry and currant-trees may very easily be raised by suckers from the roots, of which these trees never fail to send up every year abundance; but the trees which are raised from suckers never produce near so large fruit as the trees raised from cuttings.

*Prune Raspberries.*

Prune raspberries, where it was not done in October or last month: in pruning these, the same method is now to be observed as in the two last months.



*Plant Raspberries.*

Now is also a pretty good time to plant raspberries, provided it be open weather; the manner of preparing these plants, and planting them, is also mentioned in the former months. All other sorts of fruit trees may still be transplanted in open weather.

*Examine the Fruit in the Fruitory.*

Examine the fruit, in the fruitery, now pretty often; let them be looked over with good attention once or twice every week: and all such as are rotten, or beginning to rot, be removed; for if these are permitted to lay, they would soon taint all the sound fruit near them.

In time of severe frost, let a good covering of clean wheat-straw be laid at least a foot thick over the fruit; and secure the windows of the fruit room.

---

### The Pleasure, or Flower Garden.

**T**AKE care now to protect the choice flower plants and roots from frosts, great snows, and heavy rains; all of which would damage many sorts of curious roots and plants.

The auricula plants, in particular, must now be well defended in very wet weather, great snows, and hard frosts.

If these plants are placed in frames, as was directed two months ago, let the glasses be kept constantly over them in bad weather; or if they are in a bed under hoops, let mats or canvas be drawn over them in such weather.

But when the weather is mild and dry, let the plants be constantly uncovered.

*Carnation Layers.*

The carnation layers of the curious sorts, which are in pots, should also be covered in hard rain, snow, and severe frost; but these plants must have the free air constantly when the weather is open, and not very wet.

*Protecting Hyacinths, Tulip Roots, Anemonies and Ranunculuses.*

The beds wherein the best hyacinth and tulip roots are planted, should, when the weather is severe, be covered, to prevent the roots from being damaged.

For that purpose provide some kind of long dry litter, (peas-straw, fern, or such like) and, when the frost is like to set in hard, lay a tolerable warm covering over the surface of the beds; but when the weather is less severe the litter must be removed.

Where any of these plants appear above ground, the beds should be arched over with hoops, and some large and thick mats be got ready to draw over them in hard weather.

The best ranunculuses, and anemonies which are planted in beds, should also have some protection when the frost is severe, and this must be done by covering the beds with litter.

*Care of Seedling Plants.*

Seedling flower plants, or roots, also demand care at this unfavourable season.

Such as are in pots or boxes, may now, if not done before, be protected somewhat by plunging the pots, tubs, or boxes, to their rims or tops, in a warm border; and, in hard frost, litter may be laid on the surface.

*New planted Shrubs.*

New planted shrubs should have their roots well protected in hard frosty weather, particularly the more tender kinds; this is to be done by laying mulch or long litter a good thickness on the surface of the ground about each plant.

This work is so necessary to such of the more tender kinds of shrubs and trees as were planted in autumn, that it should not be omitted now, if it was in the former month.

*Digging between Flowering Shrubs.*

Continue now, in open weather, to dig the ground between all kinds of flowering shrubs and evergreens.

*Pruning Shrubs.*

Now go over the flowering shrubs, and prune all such as stand in need of that discipline; but let this be done in a skilful manner, with a knife, and not with garden shears.

In



In doing this let all the very strong and long shoots of the last summer's growth be taken off quite close, and where the branches are crowded let some be thinned out in a regular manner.

All straggling branches should be taken off or shortened wherever they appear.

Every plant should be pruned, and trained, so that it may stand clear of another; never suffering the branches of different shrubs to intermix with each other, for that spoils the beauty of all.

When the shrubs are all pruned, let the ground be dug between the plants; and as you go on, take up all suckers, and shorten straggling shoots.

*Propagating Shrubs by Suckers from the Roots.*

The suckers of such shrubs as you would propagate may be taken up with care, and planted in rows in an open spot, where some will make good plants in two years.

The suckers of roses, lilacs, spiræas, and many other sorts may be taken up from the old plants in open weather, and planted out in rows fifteen inches asunder: some will make handsome plants in two years time.

*Preparing Ground for planting.*

Now dig, when the weather will permit, the borders, and all such places where any kind of shrubs, trees, or plants, are to be planted.

*Transplanting.*

Transplanting may still, in open weather, be continued among the hardy kind of flowering shrubs and forest-trees.

But as soon as any kinds are now planted, it will be proper to mulch them directly, to keep out the frost, if any should happen.

*Roll Grass and Gravel Walks.*

In mild weather let the grass walks and lawns be poled and rolled once a week at least.

Let the gravel walks be also kept very clean, and roll them now and then in dry mild weather.

*Preparing Compost.*

Break up and turn the heaps of compost, observing to mix the parts well together.

At this time you should also bring in fresh ingredients to make new compost heaps, for these should always lie the best part of a year before they are used for any purpose.

*The Care of Plants in Pots.*

Take good care now of all such hardy shrubs as are in pots. To protect the roots of the shrubs the better from frost, let the pots, if not done before, be plunged to their rims in a dry warm spot.

The pots of double rockets, double rose campion, double scarlet lychnis, double sweet-williams, and all other hardy perennial fibrous rooted plants in pots, should, where not done last month, be, the beginning of this, plunged to their rims in a dry warm spot of ground.

By plunging these plants in the earth it prevents the frost entering the sides of the pots to hurt their roots; and in very hard frosts it will be proper to lay some dry long litter over all their tops; but this must always be taken immediately off, when the frost is less severe.

Where there are any frames to spare, the pots with the above fibrous rooted plants may be placed in them, and defended occasionally, with glasses or other covering.

*Prune Forest-Trees.*

It is now a proper time to prune all sorts of forest-trees, for that may be performed in frosty weather when little other business can be done.

This is also a good time to plant thorn, or other hedges, for fences: where the hedges are thin or naked at bottom, they should now be laid down in such a manner as to render them thick in that part.

**The Nursery.**

**C**ONTINUE in open weather to dig the ground between the rows of trees and shrubs; take care of the roots of the plants, and let all weeds be buried properly.

Carry



Carry dung also to such plants as want it, and spread it of an equal thickness over the surface of the ground.

#### *New Planted Trees.*

Continue the care of the tender kinds of new planted trees: where they were not mulched in November, let some now be laid between the rows, and about their stems, to protect the roots from being hurt by severe frost.

Let the stems of all new planted tall trees be now properly supported with stakes, where it was omitted in the former month.

#### *Seedling Trees.*

Take care also of the seedling exoticks; they, while young, require some shelter in severe weather.

Let these be now protected in hard frosts, in the manner directed last month, but never suffer the covering of any kind to remain a day longer than there is an absolute occasion.

The beds of trees, seeds, berries and acorns, which were sown in October, or the beginning of last month, should, in severe weather, be covered with peas-straw, fern, or other dry long litter.

This should be practised before the frost has far penetrated into the ground; but in particular to the beds of acorns, for these very soon shoot after committed to the ground, and the frost would very much affect them.

#### *Trenching and digging.*

Forward the trenching of such pieces of ground as are to be planted with shrubs in the spring.

In doing this, let the ground be laid up in ridges: the frost will thus have more power to mellow, and rain less opportunity to overwet it; for the ridges will not detain rain like ground laid perfectly flat.

#### *Propagating Trees and Shrubs.*

You may still continue to make layers, and plant cuttings of hardy trees and shrubs.

## The Green-House.

**C**ONTINUE to take advantage of every fine day, when the weather is open, to admit fresh air to the plants in the Green-House; for this, notwithstanding the season, is a very necessary article for the benefit of the plants in general: if they are kept too close, it will not only occasion the leaves of the plants to change to a sickly colour, but also render them very tender and weak, and their leaves, by that means, will also be very apt to drop.

Therefore, every day, when the weather is mild, and the wind not sharp, let the windows be opened about nine or ten o'clock in the morning, and shut again about four in the afternoon, or sooner, if the air becomes too cold.

But never omit giving a large share of fresh air every sunny day in mild weather.

Note; It will not be proper to allow the Green-House any fresh air in foggy or very wet days; at such times let the house be kept quite close.

In severe frost the windows must never be opened.

In frosty weather great care must be taken to secure the door and windows of the Green-House in such a manner as the frost cannot enter that way to affect the plants.

Therefore, in the time of very sharp frosts, the window-shutters, if any, must be shut close every night; and, for the greater security, it will also be proper to nail up mats against all the shutters.

Likewise, when the frost happens to be very severe, it will, for the better protection of the plants, be advisable to make a small fire in a part of the Green-House that is most distant from the plants: this fire should be very moderate, and shifted to different parts of the house, always observing to move some of the plants from that part where the fire is placed.

But this fire should never be made in the Green-House, unless the frost is extremely severe; even then it must be very moderate, and never kept longer than there appears to be an absolute necessity.

### *Watering Green-House Plants.*

Water must be now and then given to the plants in the Green-House, for most of the woody kinds will require that assistance at due times.

But



But in watering these plants, make it always a rule at this season to give only a moderate quantity to each pot or tub at a time ; for if they are once over-watered at this season of the year, so as to render the earth very wet, it will remain so for a long time, most assuredly occasion the plants to drop their leaves, especially the orange and lemon trees, and totally destroy some of the more tender kinds.

For that reason let particular care be taken in watering, to do it with moderation, and to give the water only to such pots or tubs as are in want of that article.

The aloes, and other succulent plants, must now be very seldom and also very sparingly watered, for much moisture at this season would rot this kind of plants.

The Green-House plants in general should now be kept perfectly clear from decayed leaves, for this is necessary to preserve their health as well as beauty.

Therefore, as soon as any such leaves appear upon the plants, let them immediately be removed ; and also cut out any dead wood that may from time to time appear.

The Green-House floor should now be frequently cleared of those dead leaves which drop from the plants.

---

### The Hot-House.

**C**ONTINUE every evening, about three, four or five o'clock, according to the temperature of the weather, to make the Hot-House fire ; observing, as said last month, never to make the fire too strong, so as to render the heat of the wall of the flues anywise violent, for that would prove of bad consequence to the pines and other plants.

You are likewise now to observe, as advised last month, that in very severe weather the Hot-House fires must be continued night and day.

The person who attends the fire, should always, the last thing before he goes to bed, examine them and add more fuel if it is wanted ; though nothing is so proper for this purpose as coals or cinders, because of the regularity and duration of their heat, yet wood, turf, or peat will do.

The top glass of the Hot-House should at this season be covered every night either with shutters or mats ; but the readiest method of covering is with a large painted canvas cloth, such as might be made out of a large sail-cloth.

This

This should, if possible, be made to roll upon a pole full the length of the Hot-House, and about three inches thick; and by the means of pullies and a rope, contrived to draw or roll up, and let down, at pleasure; which is much more convenient than such large unweildy shutters as I have seen belonging to many Hot-Houses, and which require almost an hour's work every day to take down and put up.

#### *Watering.*

The pines and other plants in the Hot-House will still require to be now and then watered.

But in watering them, especially the pines, take care to do it moderately, and not oftener at this season than about once a week.

When there happens to come a fine sunny calm day, it will be proper to admit some fresh air into the Hot-House by sliding some of the glasses a little way open; but be sure to shut them again in due time, and especially if the weather alters.

Those young pine plants which are plunged in dung or bark beds made in the open air, must have a very careful attendance at this season; the heat of the bed must be duly kept up by applying a lining of new horse-dung to the sides, as often as the bed decreases much in its heat.

The glasses also must be covered every night, in bad weather, with mats or straw; and some straw or other dry litter should likewise be laid close round about the outsides of the frame.

#### *Kidney-Beans.*

In the beginning, or any time in this month, you may plant some kidney-beans in pots or in boxes, and place them in the Hot-House; by which means they will yield their produce at an early and acceptable time.

The method of planting them is mentioned in January.

#### *Cucumber Plants.*

You may likewise sow some cucumber seeds in pots, and plunge them in the bark, in the Hot-House, and the plants may be transplanted into boxes; this may be done for a tryal; which, if they succeed, will come in at a very early season.

I have observed, that cucumber plants succeed rather best in the Hot-House, when the boxes wherein they grow were



were erected within a foot or eighteen inches of the glass; that is, the top glass; and towards the highest or back part, just or nearly over the back alley.

But, however, where this cannot be conveniently done, let the boxes be placed in the manner mentioned in January.

You may likewise, any time in this or next month, place pots of rose-trees in the Hot-House, and also honey-suckles and such other small shrubs as you desire, by way of curiosity, to blow early.

### *Carnations, Pinks, &c.*

Pots of carnations and pinks, or any other such like kinds of flowers, may also be placed in the Hot-House to produce some early flowers.

Boxes or pots planted with early blowing tulips, may also be placed in the Hot-House any time this or next month, and any other kinds of bulbous roots that you desire to bring to early bloom.

### A LIST



A

# L I S T

O F

## SHRUBS AND TREES,

Cultivated in most of the common NURSERIES in  
ENGLAND; for the furnishing Noblemen and  
Gentlemen's Gardens and Plantations.

First of the deciduous Kinds, which are those that shed  
their Leaves in Winter.

Taller growing deciduous SHRUBS and TREES.

### *ACACIA.*

The triple thorned,  
Water.

*Asb.* common,

Flowering,

Manna,

White American,

Swamp.

*Crataegus*, mountain ash.

*Maples*, early budded,

Ash leaved,

Scarlet flowering,

Norway,

Sir Charles Wager's,

American mountain,

Montpelier,

With some other varieties.

*Hornbeam*, common,

Virginia hop,

American flowering,

Eastern.

*Medlar*, Great Dutch,

Nottingham or English,

New England.

*Chestnuts*, Spanish sweet,

Striped leaved Spanish.

*Chestnut*, the horse, common,

Scarlet flowering,

Yellow.

*Walnuts*, common,

Virginia black,

French,

Large furrowed.

*Hicory*, sweet,

Large,

*Birch*, common,

Canada,

Sugar.

*Beech*, common,

American.

*Sycamore*, plain leaved,

Striped leaved.

*Plane*, oriental,

Occidental,



Occidental, or Virginia,  
 Spanish, or middle.  
*Larch*, common,  
 American black,  
 Siberian.  
*Laburnum*, common,  
 Scotch,  
 Stripe leaved.  
*Liquid-Amber*, sweet gum.  
*Lac*, or varnish tree.  
*Lime*, common,  
 Red twigged,  
 Pennsylvanian.  
*Cypress*, deciduous American.  
*Catalpa*.  
*Poplars*, black,  
 White,  
 Carolina Poplar,  
 Aspen-Tree,  
 Abele-Tree.  
*Arbor Juda*, European,  
 American.  
*Alder*, common,  
 Parsley leaved,  
 Dwarf mountain,  
 Gold striped,

Silver striped,  
 American late flowering.  
*Elm*, English small leaved,  
 Dutch,  
 French,  
 Bloatch leaved.  
*Hamamelis*, American witch hazel.  
*Perjamon Plumb*, European.  
*Service*, wild,  
 True, or manured,  
 Arbutus leaved,  
 American.  
*Oak*, English,  
 Chestnut leaved,  
 Red mountain,  
 Willow leaved,  
 Scarlet,  
 Carolina Swamp,  
 Sassafras leaved,  
 Champaign dwarf,  
 Black,  
 White,  
 Oriental, with prickly cups,  
 Italian, the cut leaved,  
 With some other varieties.  
*Tacamabacca*, balsam tree.

## Deciduous SHRUBS of lesser Growth.

*AGNUS Castus*, or chaste tree,  
 Narrow leaved,  
 Broad leaved.  
*Almond*, common,  
 White flowering,  
 Early dwarf, single flower,  
 Double dwarf.  
*Althea Frutex*, striped,  
 Red,  
 White,  
 Blue,  
 Purple,  
 Pheasants eye.  
*Andromeda*, striped,  
 Evergreen,  
*Aralia*, or angelica tree.  
*Azalea*, with red flowers,  
 White.  
*Barberry*, common, red fruit,  
 Stoneless, red fruit,  
 White fruit,

*Bladder Nut*, three leaved,  
 Five leaved.  
*Broom*, the Spanish,  
 Double flowering,  
 Yellow Portugal,  
 White Portugal,  
 Luca.  
*Cephalanthus*, button wood.  
*Bramble*, double flowering,  
 American upright,  
 White fruited,  
 Dwarf,  
 Maiden.  
*Viburnum*, or way faring tree,  
 Common,  
 Stripe leaved,  
 American broad leaved,  
 With black fruit.  
*Halefia*.  
*Tupelo*.  
*Empetrum*, black berried heath.

- Lycium*, box-thorn.  
*Cbionanibus*, the fringe, or snow-drop tree.  
*Laurustinus*, the deciduous, African fly honey-suckle.  
*Melia*, the bead tree.  
*Xamboxylum*, tooth-ach tree.  
*Lavender*, the common, Broad leaved, or lavender spike, Canary.  
*Gale*, or sweet-willow.  
*Spiræ*, *Spiræ frutex*, Common red, Scarlet, White.  
*Scorpion Sena*.  
*Smilax*, broad leaves, Bloatched leaves.  
*Syringa*, common, Dwarf, double flowers.  
*Sumach*, scarlet, Large downey, Virginia, White, Elm leaved, Myrtle leaved, Lentiscus leaved, Carolina.  
*Toxicodendron*, poison tree, Ash leaved, Oak leaved.  
*Tamarisk*, the French, German.  
*Sassafras*.  
*Pistachia*, Jamaica birch.  
*Filbert*.  
*Hazel*.  
*Jesuits Bark-Tree*,  
*Frangula*, berry bearing alder.  
*Honey-Suckle*, early red Italian, Early white Dutch, Late red, Late Dutch, Long blowing, Large scarlet trumpet, Small trumpet, Oak leaved, Russian.  
*Jasmine*, the common white, Common yellow, Italian, With gold striped leaves, Silver striped leaves.  
*Hydrangia*, white flowers.  
*Hypericum Frutex*, dwarf, Broad leaved, Narrow leaved.  
*Hypericum*, or St. John's wort, Shrubby, Canary, Dwarf shrubby, stinking, Broad leaved, Eastern.  
*Lilac*, blue, White, Purple or Scotch, Persian, cut leaves, Persian, plain leaves, white flower, Persian, blue flower.  
*Ivy*, silver striped, Gold striped, Deciduous.  
*Robinia*, or false acacia, The common, Yellow flower, Scarlet flowering, or rose acacia, Caragana.  
*Lonicera*, upright honey-suckle, Red berried, Virginian, Tartarian.  
*St. Peter's wort*.  
*Mezereon*, the white, Early red, Late red, Purple.  
*Kidney-Bean tree*.  
*Barba Jovis*, bastard indigo.  
*Menispermum*, moon-seed.  
*Oleaster*, wild olive.  
*Peach*, double flowering.  
*Privet*, common, Silver striped, Yellow bloatched leaves.  
*Paliurus*, Christ's thorn.  
*Prinos*, winter-berry.  
*Periploca*, Virginia silk.  
*Flamula Jovis*, blue, White.  
*Itea*.  
*Ptelea*, or American shrub trefoil.  
*Rhamnus*, or buckthorn, Common, Sea buckthorn, Creeping evergreen, Yellow berried.  
*Rasperry*, the flowering.  
*Candleberry Myrtle*, Broad leaved,



Long leaved,  
 Fern leaved,  
 Oak leaved.  
**Cherry**, the double blossomed,  
 Cornelian,  
 Dwarf Canada.  
**Coecyria**, or Venetian sumach.  
**Cinquefoil Shrub**.  
**Colutea**, or bladder senna,  
 The common,  
 Oriental,  
 Ethiopian,  
 Pocock.  
**Clebra**, white flowering,  
 Dwarf.  
**Cashibury Bush**.  
**Bignonia**, trumpet flower,  
 Great flowered Virginia,  
 Lesser flowered.  
**Benjamin tree**.  
**Euonymus**, spindle-tree, or prick-  
 wood,  
 The common,  
 Broad leaved,  
 American broad leaved.  
**Cytisus-Secundus**.  
**Dog-Wood**, the common,  
 Virginia,  
 Great flowering,  
 Newfoundland.  
**Guelder-Rose**, the common,  
 Double, or snow-ball,  
 Carolina,  
 Gold blotched leaved,  
 Currant leaved.  
**Thorns**, double flowering,  
 Glastenbury,  
 Cockspur hawthorn,  
 Lord Inlay's haw,  
 Virginian maple leaved,  
 Gooseberry leaved.  
**L'Azerole**, the greater,  
 Carolina l'azerole,  
 Pyracantha leaved,  
 Arbutus leaved.  
**Neapolitan Medlar**,  
 Dwarf medlar.  
**Bastard Quince**.  
**Mespilus**, the spring flowering,  
 Lady Hardwicke's shrub.  
**Willows**, the weeping,  
 Yellow Dutch,  
 White Dutch,  
 Bay leaved sweet,

Striped palm.  
**Celtis**, or nettle-tree,  
 Black fruited,  
 Yellow fruited.  
**Pear-Tree**, with double flowers,  
 Twice flowering pear.  
**Bird Cherry**, the common,  
 Cluster,  
 Carolina.  
**Tulip-Tree**.  
**Bastaria**, alspice.  
**Roses**, early cinamon,  
 Double yellow,  
 Single yellow,  
 Red monthly,  
 White monthly,  
 Double white,  
 Moss provence,  
 Common provence,  
 Double velvet,  
 Single, ditto,  
 Dutch hundred leaved,  
 Blush, ditto,  
 Blush belgick,  
 Red, ditto,  
 Marbled,  
 Large royal,  
 York and Lancaster,  
 Red damask,  
 Blush, ditto,  
 White damask,  
 Austrian,  
 Double musk,  
 Royal virgin,  
 Rosa-Mundi, or striped red rose,  
 Frankfort,  
 Cluster blush,  
 Maiden blush,  
 Without thorn,  
 Common red,  
 Burnet leaved,  
 Scotch, the dwarf,  
 Striped Scotch,  
 Apple bearing,  
 Single American,  
 Rose of mukes,  
 Pennsylvanian,  
 Red cluster,  
 Burgundy rose.  
**Briar**, double red, sweet,  
 Double blush,  
 Yellow,  
 Egline briar.  
**Pomegranate**, single flowering,  
 Double.

|                                                                                                |                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Double,<br><i>Currant</i> , with gold and silver<br>bloated leaves,<br>With gooseberry leaves, | The Pennsylvanian.<br><i>Gooseberry</i> , the American, with<br>currant leaves. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

A LIST of EVERGREEN SHRUBS and TREES, now  
cultivated in most of the Nurseries in England, as  
ornamental PLANTS for the Decoration of Noble-  
men and Gentlemen's Gardens, Parks, &c.

First, of the taller EVERGREENS.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ARBORVITæ</i> , common,<br>Chin.,<br>American.<br><i>Arbutus</i> the strawberry-tree,<br>Common,<br>Double flowering,<br>Red flowering.<br><i>Cedars</i> , Virginia red,<br>Virginia white,<br>Of Goa,<br>Phœnicia,<br>Lycia.<br><i>Cedar of Lebanon</i> ,<br><i>Cork-Tree</i> .<br><i>Cypress</i> , common,<br>Malta,<br>Male spreading,<br>Portugal.<br><i>Firs</i> , common spruce,<br>Red spruce,<br>White spruce,<br>Black spruce,<br>Silver fir,<br>Balm of gilead fir,<br>Hemlock.<br><i>Pines</i> , Scotch, commonly called<br>Scotch fir, | <i>Pinaster</i> ,<br>New England, or Weymouth,<br>Cluster,<br>Stone or manured,<br>Frankincense,<br>Fox-tail,<br>Swamp,<br>Jersey,<br>Siberian stone pine,<br>Two and three leaved Ame-<br>rican,<br>Dwarf mountain.<br><i>Holly</i> , common green,<br>Variegated and striped, many<br>varieties,<br>Carolina dahoon holly.<br><i>Magnolia</i> , laurel leaved,<br>Lesser, bay leaved.<br><i>Laurels</i> , common,<br>Portugal,<br>Alexandrian,<br><i>Oak</i> , the evergreen,<br>Kermes,<br>Holm, or holly leaved.<br>Gall bearing.<br><i>Yew-Tree</i> . |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Of EVERGREEN SHRUBS.

|                                                                                                   |                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ALATERNUS</i> , common,<br>Bloated leaved,<br>Jagged leaved, plain,<br>Jagged leaved, striped, | Silver striped,<br>Gold striped.<br><i>Bay</i> , common,<br>Carolina. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|

*Cistus*,



# A LIST OF PLANTS. 477

- Cistus*, or rock rose,  
 Gum *cistus*, with spotted flow-  
 ers,  
 With plain white flowers,  
 Purple sage leaved,  
 Male, with long hoary leaves,  
 Male Portugal,  
 Bay leaved gum,  
 With hairy willow leaves,  
 Black Poplar leaved,  
 Waved leaved,  
 With some other varieties.  
*Cytisus*, Neapolitan,  
 Canary,  
 Siberian and Tartarian.  
*Coronilla*, narrow leaved,  
 Broad leaved.  
*Euonymus*, evergreen Virginia.  
*Junipers*, common,  
 Swedish,  
 Sclavonian,  
 Canada.  
*Hartwort* of Ethiopia.  
*Horse-Tail*, shrubby.  
*Honey-Suckle*, evergreen.  
*Kalmia*, olive leaved,  
 Broad leaved,  
 Thyme leaved.  
*Laurustinus*, common,  
 Broad, or shining leaved,  
 Rough leaved,  
 Oval leaved.  
*Knee-Holm*, knee-holly, or butchers  
 broom.  
*Spurge*, or wood laurel.  
*Phillyrea*, the true,  
 Broad leaved,  
 Privet leaved,  
 Prickly leaved,  
 Olive leaved,  
 Gold edged,  
 Silver edged,  
 Rosemary leaved.  
 Privet, evergreen Italian,  
 - Gold and silver striped.  
*Purslain-Tree*, shrubby purslain.  
*Pblemis*, or Jerusalem sage,  
 Narrow leaved,  
 Broad leaved.  
 Rose, the evergreen.  
*Rhododendron*, dwarf rose bay.  
*Savin*, common,  
 Striped leaved,  
 Silver striped.  
*Stone-Crop Shrub*.  
*Widow-Wail*.  
*Virginia groundsel tree*.  
*Germander Shrubby*, of Crete.  
*Jasmine*, Italian.  
*Lotus* of Montpellier.  
*Pyracantha*.  
*Medicago*, moon trefoil.  
*Bignonia*, the evergreen.  
*Tutsen*, or park leaves.  
*Rag-Wort*, the sea.  
*Southernwood*, the common,  
 Dwarf, large yellow flowers.  
*Wormwood*, the lavender leaved.

A LIST of FRUITS, being a chosen Collection of  
 the best Sorts of their several Kinds; mentioning  
 only such as merit Culture.

**A**PPLES, Juneating,  
 Codlin,  
 Golden pippin,  
 Kentish pippin,  
 Holland, ditto,  
 Nonpareil,  
 Royal russet,  
 Wheeler's russet,  
 Golden russet,

Dutch codlin,  
 Kentish codlin,  
 Cat's head,  
 Golden rennet,  
 French pippin,  
 Winter pearmain,  
 Loan's pearmain,  
 Cluster pearmain,

Spencer's pippin,  
 Scarlet pearmain,  
 Fearn's pippin,  
 Lemon pippin,  
 Winter greening,  
 White costin,  
 Aromatic russet,  
 Queening, the winter,  
 Summer,  
 Calvel, red,  
 White, ditto,  
 Quince apple,  
 Margate,  
 Flanders pippin,  
 Kirkin, or kirton pippin,  
 Winter greening,  
 Stone pippin,  
 Masgille,  
 Praise worthy,  
 Italian apple,  
 None such,  
 Kitchen rennet.  
*Pears*, little muscat,  
 Green chissel,  
 Catharine,  
 Jargonell,  
 Windsor,  
 Grosse blanquette,  
 Beury de roy,  
 White beury,  
 Winter beury,  
 Grosse muscat,  
 Orange bergamot,  
 Hamden's bergamot,  
 Autumn, ditto,  
 Great russet,  
 Winter boncretien,  
 Summer boncretien,  
 Spanish, ditto,  
 Autumn, ditto,  
 Mefieur Jean,  
 La Marquise,  
 Devionett,  
 Winter russet,  
 Crefan,  
 Colmar,  
 Vergoleuse,  
 St. Germain,  
 Lent, St. Germain,  
 Swan egg,  
 Chaumontelle.  
*Baking Pears*, black pear of Worcester,  
 Parkinson's warden,

Uvedales, St. Germain,  
 Double flower,  
 Cadillac,  
*Plumbs*, green gage,  
 Orleans,  
 Early Morocco,  
 Drop d'or,  
 White bonum magnum,  
 Red bonum magnum, or imperial,  
 Royal dauphin,  
 Perdrigon, blue,  
 Perdrigon, white,  
 Queen mother,  
 Fotheringham,  
 Roche corbon,  
 La royal,  
 Apricot plumb,  
 Azure native, or blue gage.  
*Peaches*, nutmeg red,  
 White, ditto,  
 Early Ann,  
 Red Magdolen,  
 White, ditto,  
 Nivette,  
 Noblest,  
 Early Newington,  
 Old Newington,  
 French mignone,  
 Admirable,  
 Chancellor,  
 Millet's mignone,  
 Incomparable,  
 Bell-garde,  
 Royal George,  
 Pavie royal,  
 Bourdina,  
 Montauban,  
 Violet,  
 Hemskirk,  
 Catharine,  
 Portugal.  
*Apricots*, early masculine,  
 Turkey,  
 Bruxelles,  
 Roman,  
 Breda,  
 Orange,  
 Algiers,  
 Royal,  
 Transparent,  
 Bloatched.  
*Nectarines*, early nutmeg,  
 Newington,



- Red Roman,**  
**Violet,**  
**Scarlet,**  
**Elruge,**  
**Temple,**  
**Brunion,**  
**Italian.**  
**Cherries, early May,**  
**May dukes,**  
**Arch-duke,**  
**Harrison's duke,**  
**Carnation,**  
**White heart,**  
**Black heart,**  
**Bleeding heart,**  
**Adams's crown heart,**  
**Turky,**  
**Amber,**  
**Kentish,**  
**Flemish,**  
**Portugal,**  
**Late English,**  
**Morella,**  
**Coroun.**  
**Figs, common blue,**  
**Early long blue,**  
**Large white,**  
**Large Genoa,**  
**Brunswick,**  
**Marseilles,**  
**Cyprian,**  
**Brown ischia,**  
**Brown Malta.**  
**Grapes, white sweet water,**  
**Black sweet water,**  
**Black July,**  
**Black cluster,**  
**White Muscadine,**  
**White chrystal,**  
**Black Muscadine,**  
**Black Burgundy,**  
**White Chasselas,**  
**Frontiniac, red, black, white,**  
**Claret,**  
**Red Hamburg,**  
**Black Hamburg.**  
**Mulberries, the white,**  
**Red,**  
**Black.**  
**Medlars, the Dutch,**  
**Nottingham, or English.**  
**Quince, the Portugal,**  
**Apple quince,**  
**Pear quince.**  
**Walnuts, the thin shelled,**  
**French,**  
**Double,**  
**Late.**  
**Chestnuts, the manured, or Spanish**  
**sweet.**  
**Filberts, large thin shelled filbert,**  
**Small, ditto,**  
**Common hazel nut,**  
**Barcelona nut, large.**  
**Gooseberries, small early red,**  
**Smooth green,**  
**Hairy green,**  
**Large Dutch red,**  
**Common hairy red,**  
**Black,**  
**Large yellow,**  
**Large amber.**  
**Currants, common red,**  
**Champaign red,**  
**Large white or grape,**  
**Common white.**  
**Raspberry, red fruit,**  
**White fruit,**  
**Double bearing, producing fruit**  
**twice in the summer.**  
**Strawberries, the scarlet,**  
**The red wood,**  
**White wood,**  
**Hautboy,**  
**Chili, very large fruit,**  
**Pine-apple strawberry, a greenish**  
**coloured fruit, of a rich fla-**  
**avour.**  
**Alpine, prolific, or everlasting**  
**strawberry, called so from its**  
**long bearing, which is com-**  
**monly from June till No-**  
**vember; and, if mild weather,**  
**till near Christmas.**

A LIST of hardy Perennial and Biennial FLOWER PLANTS, cultivated in England, as ornamental Plants for Pleasure Gardens.

- ASTER**, or star-wort,  
 Common star-wort, called Michaelmas daisies,  
 Blue Italian star-wort,  
 Gatesby's star-wort,  
 Dwarf narrow leaved star-wort,  
 Midsummer star-wort,  
 Autumnal white star-wort, with broad leaves,  
 Virginia star-wort, with spiked blue flowers,  
 Early large blue star-wort,  
 Rose star-wort,  
 Latest star-wort, with narrow leaves, and large blue flowers,  
 Tallest, new England star-wort.  
 There are several other species of star-worts of less note.
- Apocynum*, dogs-bane,  
 Red flowering,  
 Orange coloured,  
 Syrian,  
*Arum*, Italian, large veined leaves.  
*Asclepias*, swallow-wort,  
 White,  
 Yellow,  
*Astragalus*, milk vetch.  
*Alyssum*, white,  
 Yellow,  
 Violet.
- Batchellors Button*,  
 Double red,  
 Double white.
- Borage*, the Eastern, or Constantinople.  
 Double ragged Robin.
- Campanula*, or bell-flower,  
 Double blue,  
 Double white,
- Canterbury Bells*,  
 Blue,  
 White.
- Cakile*, marsh marigold, double flower.
- Cassius* of Maryland.
- Carnations*, or July flowers,  
 Common double,  
 Finely variegated double, many varieties.
- Pinks*, double pheasant's eye,  
 Dobson,  
 Deptford,  
 Cob,  
 Painted lady,  
 Damask,  
 Matted,  
 Old man's head,  
 White shock.
- Sweet-William*, the double red,  
 Double purple,  
 Double rose,  
 Common red,  
 Variegated, or painted lady.
- Wall-Flowers*, double bloody,  
 Double yellow,  
 Double white,  
 Single, of each colours.
- Stock July Flowers*, the Brompton, double,  
 Queen double,  
 Purple double,  
 White double,  
 Striped double,  
 Scarlet double,  
 Single of each sort.
- French Honey-Suckle*, red,  
 White,
- Tree-Primrose*, broad leaved,  
 Red stalked,  
 Dwarf.
- Cyanus*, broad leaved,  
 Narrow leaved:
- Lychnis*, or campion,  
 Single scarlet lychnis,  
 Double scarlet lychnis,
- Rose-Campion*, single,  
 Double.
- Hepaticas*, single white,  
 Single blue,  
 Single red,

Double



# A LIST OF PLANTS. 481

- Double red,  
 Double blue.  
*Lenaria*, toad flax, large purple.  
*Bee Larkspur*.  
*Praxanella*, white,  
 Red.  
*Gentiana*, great yellow,  
*Gentianella*, blue,  
*Globularia*, blue daisy.  
*Fox-Glove*, red,  
 White,  
 Iron coloured.  
*Perennial Sun-flower*,  
 Double yellow.  
*Cyclamen*, red,  
 White.  
*Golly Locks*.  
*Cheone*, white,  
 Red.  
*Lilly of the Valley*, common,  
 Double flowering.  
*Solomon's Seal*, single,  
 Double.  
*Filipendula*, or drop-wort.  
*Columbines*, common, blue,  
 Double red,  
 Double white,  
 Double striped,  
 Early flowering Canada.  
*Thalictrum*, feathered columbines.  
*Pulsatilla*, blue pasque-flower.  
*Holly-Hocks*, double red,  
 Double white,  
 Double yellow.  
*Orobis*, Venetian vetch.  
*Saxafrage*, double white,  
*Veronica*, upright blue.  
 Dwarf blue,  
 Hungarian,  
 Blush.  
*Golden-Rod*, many varieties.  
*Valerian*, red garden valerian,  
 White garden.  
*Rudbeckia*, American sun-flower,  
 Dwarf Carolina,  
 Red flowered,  
 Fennel leaved,  
 Crowfoot leaved,  
 Passion leaved.  
*Pulmonaria*, lung-wort,  
 Common,  
 American.  
*Monarda*, purple,  
 Scarlet.  
*Ephemeron*, spider-wort, or flower  
 of a day,  
 White,  
 Blue.  
*Jacea*, American knap-weed.  
*Primrose*, double yellow,  
 Double scarlet,  
 White.  
*Polyanthus*, many varieties.  
*Anriculas*, many varieties.  
*Violets*, double blue,  
 Double white.  
*Violet*, the major.  
*London Pride*, or none so pretty.  
*Day Lilly*, red,  
 Yellow.  
*Fumatory*, the yellow,  
 Purple.  
*Aconite*, Monks-hood, or wolfs-bane,  
 Blue monks-hood,  
 Yellow,  
 White,  
 Whole some wolfs-bane.  
*Hellebore*, or bears foot,  
 Common black hellebore,  
 Green flowered.  
*Christmas Rose*.  
*Winter Aconite*.  
*White Hellebore*.  
*Geranium*, cranes-bill,  
 Bloody cranes-bill,  
 Blue,  
 Roman,  
 Bladder cupped.  
*Daisies*, common double red gar-  
 den daisy,  
 White,  
 Double variegated,  
 Cocks-comb daisies, white and  
 red,  
 Hen and chicken, white and  
 red.  
*Ferula*, fennel giant.  
*Ranunculus*, or crow foot,  
 Double yellow crow foot,  
 Double white mountain ranun-  
 culus.  
 Turbant ranunculus,  
 Turkey ranunculus.  
*Peony*, double red,  
 Double purple.  
*Lychmidea*, several pretty varieties.  
*Silpbium*, bastard chrysanthemum.  
*Iris*, flower de luce, or flag,  
 Y The

The German violet coloured,  
 Variegated, or Hungarian, purple and yellow,  
 Chalcedonian iris,  
 Greater Dalmatian iris.  
 There are several other varieties of iris s, all very hardy plants.  
*Cardinal Flower*, scarlet,  
 Blue.  
*Rockets*, double white,  
*Balm of Gilead*, sweet-scented.  
*Everlasting Pea*.  
*Eupatorium*, several varieties.  
*Scabious*, purple,  
 White.

*Eringo*, blue,  
 White,  
 Mountain purple and violet.  
 There are some other varieties.  
*Snap-Dragon*, or calves snout,  
 Red,  
 White,  
 Variegated.  
*Moth Mullien*.  
*Angelica*.  
*Aspodelus*, king's spear.  
*Lupines*, perennial, blue flower.  
*Ononis*, reft harrow,  
 Large yellow flower.

A LIST of such Biennial and Perennial PLANTS as may be raised from Seed, and which merit Places in a Garden as ornamental PLANTS.

*WALL Flowers*, the bloody,  
 double and single.  
 Common yellow, double and single,  
 White.  
*Stock July Flowers*, the Brompton,  
 The queen,  
 White,  
 Purple,  
 Scarlet,  
 Striped.  
*Sweet-Williams*, the painted lady,  
 Deep red,  
 Common variegated.  
*India Pink*, double and single.  
*Carnation*, different varieties, arising from seed.  
*Pinks*.  
*Rose-Campion*, single.  
*Scarlet Lychnis*, the single.  
*Valerian*, the Greek,  
 White,  
 Red.  
*Bee Larkspur*, the blue,  
 Purple.  
*Tree Primrose*.  
*Pan-Gloss*, the red,  
 White,  
 Iron coloured.

*French Honey-Suckle*, the red,  
 White.  
*Holly-Hocks*, the red,  
 Yellow,  
 White.  
*Rockets*.  
*Canterbury Bells*, the blue,  
 White.  
*Snap Dragon*.  
*Veronicas*, the Hungarian,  
 The Welch,  
 Long spiked.  
*Honeysy*, or satin flower.  
*Columbines*, the double striped,  
 many varieties, arising from seed.  
*Canada columbines*.  
*Campanula*, the pyramidal, with blue flowers,  
 Common, or peach-leaved, with blue flowers,  
 The same, with white flowers.  
*Monks-Hood*, wolfs-bane, or aconite,  
 The blue,  
 Yellow,  
 White.  
*Polyanthus*, many varieties, arising from seed.  
*Auricular*,

# A LIST OF PLANTS.

483

*Auriculas*, many varieties, arising from seed.

*Pionie*, double and single.

*Globe Thistle*.

*Tree Mallow*.

*Clary*, the purple,

Red topped.

*Globularia*, or blue daisie.

*Horned Poppy*.

*Gentian*, the Virginia.

*Dragons Head*, the purple.

*Sweet Scabious*.

*Pulsatilla*, palque-flower.

*Nettle leaved Bell-flower*, the blue,

White.

*Balm of Gilead*.

*Alyssum* or *Alysson*, the white,

Yellow.

*Agremone*.

*Cyclamens*, or sow-bread.

*Acanthus*, or bears breech.

*Aloe*, flag leaved.

A LIST of Annual Flower PLANTS; that is, such as come up, flower, produce Seeds, and die the same Year, and which must therefore be raised every Year from Seed; and the Sorts here mentioned are proper as ornamental PLANTS for Flower Gardens.

We divide them into three different Heads or Classes; that is, the tender and more curious Kinds, the hardier and more common Kinds, the hardiest and most common Kinds.

The first following are the more curious and tenderer Kinds.

## FIRST CLASS.

**AMARANTHUS**, Tricolor,  
Bicolor.

*Cocks-Comb*, *Amaranthus*,

The red,

Purple,

Yellow,

Dwarf.

*Globe Amaranthus*, the striped,

Red,

White.

*Stramonium*, the double purple,

Double white.

*Melongena*, or egg-plant, the purple,

White.

*Balsamines*, or balsam, the double purple,

Double scarlet,

Double striped.

*Ice Plant*, or diamond ficoides,

*Sensitive Plant*.

*Humble Plant*.

The above all require to be raised and brought forward in hot-beds, See the articles of tender or curious annuals, in February, March, April, May and June.



## SECOND CLASS OF ANNUALS.

The following are somewhat hardier than the foregoing, but in order to have them to flower in any tolerable Time in the Summer, they should be first raised in a moderate Hot-bed, and afterwards transplanted into the Borders, Beds, or Pots, &c. See the Articles of hardier Annuals, in March, April and May.

- |                                       |                                                       |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>A</b> FRICAN Marigold, the orange, | Love Apple, with red fruit,                           |
| Yellow,                               | With yellow fruit.                                    |
| Straw coloured.                       | Cassia, the long red podded,                          |
| French Marigold, the striped,         | Long yellow podded,                                   |
| The Yellow,                           | Red, short, thick, roundish pods,                     |
| Sweet scented,                        | With heart-shaped pods.                               |
| China Aster, the double red,          | Basil, the common, or sweet scented,                  |
| Double purple,                        | Bush basil.                                           |
| Double white.                         | Zinnia.                                               |
| Marvel of Peru, the red striped,      | Tree Amaranthus.                                      |
| Yellow striped,                       | Princes feather amaranthus,                           |
| Long tubed.                           | Love lies bleeding amaranthus.                        |
| Chrysanthemum, double white,          | Ten-week stock July Flower,                           |
| Double yellow.                        | The double red,                                       |
| Sweet Sultan, the yellow,             | Double white,                                         |
| White,                                | Double purple.                                        |
| Red.                                  | White annual Wall-flower, or Prussian ten-week stock, |
| Indian Pink, double,                  | With double and single flowers.                       |
| Single.                               | The double of this sort makes a pretty appearance.    |
| Palma Christi, the common,            |                                                       |
| With very broad leaves.               |                                                       |

Note, The ten-weeks will grow if sown on a warm border towards the end of March, and should be afterwards transplanted; but by sowing and bringing them forward in a hot-bed, they will flower sooner by a month or six weeks.

The china-aster, chrysanthemums, sultan, African and French marigolds, will also grow in a warm border of natural earth, if sown in April, and afterwards transplanted; but they will not flower so soon by a month or six weeks as when sown and properly forwarded in a moderate hot-bed.

THIRD CLASS OF ANNUALS.

The following are hardy ANNUALS, requiring no assistance of artificial Heat, but should all, or at least most of them, be sown in the Places where it is designed they shall flower. See the Articles of HARDY ANNUALS, in March, April and May.

- |                                                                 |                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>A</b> DONIS Flower, or <i>A. adonis</i> , the red flowering, | The purple,                                        |
| The yellow.                                                     | White.                                             |
| Candy Tuft, the large,                                          | Winged Peas.                                       |
| Purple,                                                         | <i>Nigella</i> , or devil in a bush, the           |
| White.                                                          | long blue, or Spanish,                             |
| Larkspur, the double rose,                                      | The white.                                         |
| Double branched,                                                | <i>Lobelia Catchfly</i> .                          |
| Large blue double,                                              | Dwarf Lycchnis.                                    |
| Double white.                                                   | <i>Venus Navel-wort</i> .                          |
| Lupines, the rose,                                              | <i>Venus Looking-glass</i> .                       |
| Large blue,                                                     | Virginia Stock.                                    |
| Small blue,                                                     | <i>Noli me tangere</i> , or touch me not,          |
| Yellow,                                                         | Snails.                                            |
| White,                                                          | Caterpillars.                                      |
| Scarlet,                                                        | Hedge-Hogs.                                        |
| Sun-Flower, the tall double,                                    | Corn-Flower.                                       |
| Double dwarf.                                                   | Cyanus, the red,                                   |
| Lavatera, red,                                                  | White.                                             |
| White.                                                          | Blue.                                              |
| Poppy, the double carnation,                                    | <i>Bekedere</i> , or summer cypress.               |
| Double corn.                                                    | <i>Xeranthemum</i> , or eternal flower,            |
| <i>Convolvulus Major</i> ,                                      | red and white.                                     |
| Minor.                                                          | Garden or common Marigold, the                     |
| Striped,                                                        | comon single,                                      |
| Scarlet.                                                        | Double orange,                                     |
| Harck-Weed, the yellow,                                         | Double lemon coloured.                             |
| Purple,                                                         | <i>Mignonette</i> , or <i>Raflesia</i> , the sweet |
| Spanish.                                                        | scented,                                           |
| <i>Nasturtium</i> , the large,                                  | The upright.                                       |
| Small.                                                          | Purple Clary.                                      |
| Tangier Peas.                                                   | <i>Dracopis</i> , the purple,                      |
| Sweet Peas, the painted lady,                                   | Blue.                                              |
|                                                                 | <i>Capnoides</i> , or bastard fumitory.            |

# A List of the Sorts and several Varieties of Kitchen-Garden or Esculent PLANTS.

**ASPARAGUS**, the Dutch,  
Battersea.

**Artichoke**, Globe, the best sort,  
French.

**Artichoke**, the Jerusalem.

**Beans**, early Mazagan, smallest,

Early Portugal, or Lisbon, small,

Small Spanish,

Broad ditto,

Nonpareil,

Long podded,

Windlor,

Toker,

Sandwich,

White blossomed,

Mumford,

Willow leaved,

**Dwarf**, being of very humble  
growth, growing from six to  
ten or twelve inches high.

**Pear**, early golden hotspur, earliest,

Charlton hotspur,

Master hotspur,

Ormerots hotspur,

Essex ridding,

Nonpareil,

Spanish morotto,

Large marrowfat,

Dwarf ditto,

Large sugar,

Dwarf ditto,

**Leadman's dwarf**, being of very  
low growth,

Green roneival,

White ditto,

Crown, or-rose,

Egg,

Sickle,

Union.

The four last of which are cul-  
tivated chiefly for curiosity.

**Kidney-Beans**, early liver coloured  
dwarf, two sorts,

Early white dwarf, the Bat-  
tersea,

Speckled dwarf,

Tawney dwarf,

Large Dutch runners,

Scarlet runners,

Largest white runners, with pods  
like the scarlet, a great bearer  
and a fine eating bean,

Canterbury white.

**Turneps**, early Dutch white, the  
best sort for gardens,

Common, large white,

Yellow, very good eating,

Red round, for curiosity,

Green round,

Long,

French,

Hanover.

**Colliflower**, the early,  
Late.

**Broccoli**, purple,

Green,

White, or colliflower,

Red.

**Cabbage**, early sugar-loaf,

Early Dutch,

Yorkshire early,

Battersea early,

Either of the above four for the  
first crop.

Long sided,

Large sugar-loaf,

Large hollow,

Large round, flat-headed,

Red Dutch.

The last mentioned, if of the true  
sort, is all over of a very deep  
or dull red, with very thick  
leaves; the bastard, or degene-  
rated sorts, are of a pale or  
faint red with thinner leaves,  
and the veins of which are  
whitish.

Russia,

Musk.

**Turnep-rooted Cabbage**.

**Coleworts**, the common.

Scotch.

But coleworts are now, for family  
uses, generally raised from seeds  
of any of the sorts of the best  
kinds



# A LIST OF PLANTS.

287

kinds of white cabbage.  
*Sea Colewort.*  
*Cucumber*, early short prickly,  
 Long prickly,  
 White Turkey,  
 Green Turkey,  
 Smyrna.  
*Onions*, the Stramburgh,  
 Silver skinned,  
 Portugal.  
 Either of the above three for  
 the main crop.  
 Spanish red,  
 White Spanish,  
 Welch onion.  
 These last never bulb, so are  
 only sown in August, or very  
 early in the spring, for spring  
 use.  
*Leek*, London,  
 French.  
*Radish*, early short-top,  
 Salmon, or scarlet,  
 Sandwich,  
 Small round Naples, white  
 rooted.  
*Turnep-rooted Radish*, the black, or  
 black Spanish radish,  
 White Spanish, or turnep-  
 rooted radish.  
*Lettuces*, green cost,  
 White ditto,  
 Red ditto,  
 Common cabbage,  
 Brown Dutch cabbage,  
 White Dutch,  
 Silesia,  
 Imperial,  
 Capuchin,  
 Roman large,  
 Curled,  
 Black Spanish,  
 Lap, or common open lettuce, to  
 sow in the spring, to cut up  
 young for sallads.  
*Celery*, Italian, or common upright,  
 Solid leaved,  
 Turnep-rooted, called celeriac.  
*Endive*, green curled, best for the  
 main crop,  
 White curled,  
 Roman,  
*Spinage*, prickly, proper for the  
 winter crop. See August.

Round leaved, or smooth seeded,  
 for the spring and summer  
 crops,  
 French, different from the above,  
 but very good to eat.  
*Savoy*, green curled, for the main  
 crop,  
 Yellow,  
 Dutch,  
*Borecole*, green,  
 Red.  
*Parsley*, common, plain leaved,  
 Curled leaved.  
*Hamburg Parsley*, having large  
 roots, which is that part of the  
 plants to be eaten.  
*Cardoons*, for its large leaves in  
 soups, when blanched like  
 celery.  
*Fenochia*, a plant for soup.  
*Purslain*, the golden,  
 Green.  
 Both for sallads.  
*Cress*, the common,  
 Curled,  
 Broad leaved,  
*Mustard*, brown,  
 White.  
*Sorrel*, the common,  
 French,  
 Candy.  
*Corn Salad*, or Lamb's lettuce, to  
 be sown for winter and spring  
 use.  
*Beet*, red, cultivated for its roots,  
 White,  
 Green.  
 The two last of which are culti-  
 vated for their leaves in soups.  
*Chervil*, for sallads and soups.  
*Potatoes*, the white kidney,  
 Round red, the best sort for the  
 full crop.  
*Parsneps*.  
*Carrots*, orange, the best,  
 Red,  
 Early horn.  
*Scorzonera*, for its roots.  
*Shallots*.  
*Garlick*, common, or small rooted,  
 Large rooted.  
*Roccambole*.  
*Salsafy*.  
*Skerrots*.

*Rampion.*

The last three for their roots.

*Gourds.*

*Pumpkins.*

*Squashes.*

The above three are all of the gourd kind, and of which are many curious varieties; the seeds may be had at the nur-

fery men's and seed shops.

*Melons, canterleup,*

*Romana.*

There are many more varieties of melons, but the above two are the best sorts, and what are generally cultivated for the main crops.

*Water Melons.*

Sweet and Pot HERBS.

**MARIGOLD**, double,  
Single.

*Savory*, the winter,  
Summer.

*Marjorum*, sweet,  
Pot.

*Thyme*, common,  
Lemon,  
Silver tipped.

*Hyssop*, common,  
Variegated.

*Sage*, red, best for common use,  
Green,

*Fennel*, small leaved.

*Mint*, spear, proper sort for all kitchen uses,

*Pepper*, for distilling.

*Orange*, principally for curiosity.

*Basil*, the garden.

*Pennyroyal.*

*Double Chamomile.*

*Fennel.*

*Dill.*

*Lavender.*

*Rosemary.*

*Basil*, the sweet,  
Bush.

Both of which are tender plants and raised only in hot-beds, like capicum or love-apple, &c.

*Orach.*

*Clary.*

*Borage.*

*Burnet.*

*Tarragon.*

*Tansy.*

*Bugloss.*

*Cardus Benedictus*, for tea, by way of medicine.

*Nep. Nepeta*, or cat thyme.

This is the thyme the cats are so fond of, for when they come near it, they will roll and tumble about, and eat and tear the herb to pieces.

A List of some of the best Sorts of Green-House PLANTS.

**ALOES**, the large American,  
Large stripe leaved,  
Mitre,  
Sword,  
Tongue,  
Upright triangular,  
Succotrine,

Cob-web,  
Partridge breast,  
Cushion,  
Large pearl,  
Pearl tongue,  
Soap like,  
Keel shaped,

Zelon,

# ATLIS T O P L A N T S.

**Zelon,**  
**Fan,**  
**Cat chapped.**  
**Arums,**  
**Ambeofia,**  
**Anthyllis,** Jupiter's beard.  
**Aristolis,** wind-feed, several varieties.  
**After,** the African shrubby.  
**Antbespermum.**  
**Apocynum Fruticosum.**  
**Apium Macedonicum.**  
**Asparagus,** two or three varieties.  
**Bofea,** golden-rod tree.  
**Bupibalmum,** some varieties.  
**Campanula,** bell-flower,  
**The Dutch,**  
**American.**  
**Chrysocoma,** goldy locks.  
**Convolvulus,** the silvery.  
**Celastrus,** staff-tree.  
**Cliffortia,** the major,  
**Minor.**  
**Caper.**  
**Cistus,** rock-rose, several sorts.  
**Coly Ceders,** fix or eight sorts.  
**Cyclamen,** the Perfiap,  
**Sweet-scented.**  
**Coronilla,** jointed podded.  
**Crassula,** fix or eight sorts.  
**Cytifus,** tree-trefoil.  
**Degetalis,**  
**Diofma,** several sorts.  
**Dracocephalon.**  
**Euphorbia,** major,  
**Minor.**  
**Geraniums,** Cranes bill,  
**The scarlet,**  
**Balm scented,**  
**Scarlet horse shoe,**  
**Pink, ditto,**  
**Sorrel leaved,**  
**Nutmeg,**  
**Striped leaved,**  
**Rose-scented,**  
**Vine leaved,**  
**Jug leaved,**  
**Hollow leaved.**

**Gnapbaliu,** some varieties.  
**Grewia,**  
**Heliotropium,** the sweet-scented.  
**Hypericum,** the Chinese.  
**Hermania,** several sorts.  
**Jasmines,** the Azorian,  
**Catalonian,**  
**Yellow Indian,**  
**Isia,** the Chinese.  
**Jufficia,** two sorts.  
**Kiggelaria.**  
**Leonurus,** lions-tail.  
**Lemons.**  
**Oranges.**  
**Citrons.**  
**Candy Tuft Tree.**  
**Lotus,** birds foot trefoil, two or three sorts.  
**Lycium,** box-thorn.  
**Lentifcus.**  
**Lavetera Lufitanica.**  
**Melia.**  
**Mefembryanthemums,** many sorts.  
**Myrtles,** many sorts.  
**Oleander,** red,  
**White.**  
**Olive.**  
**Opuntia Indian Fig,** some varieties.  
**Ofceaspermum,** hard seeded sun-flower.  
**Ononis,** rest hartow.  
**Phyllis,** the heath leaved.  
**Physalis,** winter cherry.  
**Sage,** the shrubby African.  
**Scabious,** the shrubby.  
**Silver-Tree.**  
**Sempervivum,** several sorts.  
**Sideroxylum,** or iron wood.  
**Sedum,** the variegated,  
**Plain.**  
**Solanum,** night-shade, several sorts.  
**Amomum Plini,** or winter cherry.  
**Romum Amoris.**  
**Stapelia,** some varieties.  
**Tetragonia,** the herbacious.  
**Tucrium.**  
**Germander-Tree.**  
**Tanacetum Frutafcen.**



I N D E X



# I N D E X.

## A

- A** RTICHOKES, Page 14, 147, 299, 335, 431, 457.  
Apples, Pears, &c. 15, 65, 116, 214, 261.  
Auriculas, 24, 69, 123, 170, 231, 278, 309, 346, 373, 408, 446, 463.  
Anemonies, &c. 25, 125, 165, 222, 269, 350, 373, 445.  
Asparagus, 45, 99, 103, 146, 256, 334, 392, 431, 457.  
Angelica, 56, 336.  
Annual flowers, 66, 68, 120, 160, 227, 231, 266, 306, 344.  
Apricots, 17, 59, 114, 158, 215, 260, 279, 368.  
Asters, perennial, &c. 69.  
—— China, 229.  
Arbutus. See Strawberry-tree.  
Amomum Plinii. See Winter-cherry.  
Aromatic plants, 209, 339, 391.  
Autumn flowering bulbs, 270.  
African marigolds, 229.  
Amaranthuse, 229.  
Aloes, 240, 356.  
Autumnal crocus, 225.  
African sage, 285, 319.  
Arbutus laurel, 415.  
Alaternus, 415.  
Acorns, 423.  
April, 142.  
Amber, 285.

August, 328.

Althæa, 414.

## B.

Balm of Gilead, page 173.

Blossom, 158.

Beans, 13, 55, 105, 152, 206, 257, 385, 427, 455.

Beets, 54, 254.

Barage, 56, 107.

Burnet, 56, 107.

Box, 72, 176, 277, 352, 375, 420, 448.

Bugloss, 107.

Baum, 107.

Batchelors-buttons, 69, 409.

Budding, 159, 264, 304, 312, 344, 355, 364.

Broccoli, 94, 149, 204, 255, 290, 329, 390.

Bore-cole, 98, 148, 205, 255.

Borders, 119, 126, 217, 353, 444.

Balsams, 227.

Biennial flower plants, 125.

Belladonna lily, 269.

Budded trees, 343.

Bulbous roots, 225, 232, 309, 349, 375, 411.

Bulbous iris, 351.

Bays, 178, 415.

Beech mast, 425.

Basil, 106.

## C.

Cucumbers, page 11, 38, 40, 44, 90, 91, 142, 192, 248, 299, 340, 470.

Carrots, 7, 54, 99, 150, 201, 253, 293, 330, 395, 431, 455.

Colliflowers, 9, 50, 93, 148, 203, 252, 292, 238, 331, 363, 388, 432, 453.

Cabbages, 10, 52, 94, 147, 202, 257, 290, 365, 389.

Celery, 11, 52, 105, 149, 211, 250, 299, 365, 394, 429, 456.

Carnations, &c. 25, 69, 90, 124, 166, 226, 272, 306, 347, 373, 408, 463, 471.

Crocusses, 27, 224, 445.

Clary, 56, 107.



- Cardus, 56, 336.  
 Coriander, 57, 106.  
 Chervil, 57, 106.  
 Cherries, 65, 116, 261, 499.  
 Currants, 73, 118, 405.  
 Chamomile, 69, 107, 409.  
 Chives, 108.  
 Capsicum, 109, 151, 198, 229.  
 Cardoons, 111, 259, 300, 366, 394, 430, 457.  
 Chrysanthemums, 27, 123, 229.  
 Catchfly, 68, 69, 409.  
 Columbines, 69, 409.  
 Canterbury-bells, 69, 409.  
 Campanulas, 69, 409.  
 Cedar of Lebanon, 135.  
 Cypress, 135, 178.  
 Coxcombs, 135.  
 Candy tuft, 68, 231.  
 Caterpillars, 231.  
 Convolvulus, 68, 231.  
 Crown imperials, 268, 413.  
 Colchiums, 225.  
 Cyclamens, 270.  
 Colewort, 295, 338, 363.  
 Clearing the ground, 301.  
 Clip hedges, 311, 352, 376.  
 Cistus, 285, 319, 415.  
 Cresses. See Small fallading.  
 Cedars, 178.

## D.

- Deciduous shrubs and trees, page 379.  
 Dressing beds and borders, 66, 70.  
 Dill, 107.  
 Digging the borders, 374, 448.  
 Daisies, double, 69, 73, 409.  
 Double rockets, 232.  
 Double balsams, 305.  
 Double stramoniums, 266.  
 Double sweet-williams, 307.  
 Double scarlet lychnis, 232.  
 Defending the wall-fruit, 344.  
 Dung the ground, 395.

Decayed flower stems, 312, 377.  
December, 453.

## E.

Endive, page 12, 208, 250, 291, 337, 366, 391, 429,  
456.  
Edgings, 130, 310.  
Evergreens, 71, 128, 135, 174, 178, 277, 354, 415.  
Exotic trees, 128, 134, 139, 280.  
Egg-plant, 227, 229.  
Evergreen oaks, 178, 415.

## F.

Flower-garden, page 24, 66, 120, 160, 222, 266, 305,  
344, 371, 408, 444, 463.  
Fruit-garden, 15, 59, 113, 155, 213, 260, 302, 341, 368,  
396, 435, 460.  
Flowering-shrubs, 28, 31, 34, 71, 128, 174, 178, 277,  
446.  
Fruit-trees, 32, 64, 155, 379.  
Fibrous-rooted flowering plants, 69, 116, 125, 271, 345,  
377.  
Forest-trees, 31, 75, 132, 354, 417, 448, 466.  
Fennel, 336.  
Fig-trees, 114, 303, 343, 441.  
Foxgloves, 69, 409.  
Feverfew, 69, 107, 409.  
Firs, 135, 178, 282, 416.  
Flowering plants in the Hot-house, 39.  
French marygold, 229.  
Flos adonis, 68, 231.  
Fritellarias, 412.  
Ficoideffes, 271.  
Filbert-trees, 442.  
French honey-suckles, 410.  
Fruiterie, 463.  
Flies, 369.  
February, 40.

## G.

Greenhouse, page 35, 84, 137, 182, 239, 282, 318, 355,  
381, 425, 451, 468.

Garlick,

# I X N D I E X

Garlick, 57, 110, 197, 338.  
 Gooseberry, 20, 73, 118, 405.  
 Grafting, 66, 76, 133, 159, 182.  
 Grass walks and lawns, 30, 72, 175, 235, 270, 310, 353,  
 376, 421, 447.  
 Greek valerian, 69, 409.  
 Golden-rod, 69, 410.  
 Gentianella, 69, 409.  
 Gravel walks, 30, 72, 131, 176, 235, 278, 310, 353, 376,  
 448.  
 Guinea-pepper. See Capficums.  
 Golden-rose, 414.  
 Gourds, 196.  
 Globes, 196.  
 Glass-cases, 329.  
 Guernsey lily, 269.  
 Grafted trees, 280, 315.  
 Geraniums, 285.  
 Granadilles, 287.  
 Gathering seeds, 300, 340, 354.  
 Gather apples and pears, 370, 398.

## H.

Hot-house, page 36, 86, 88, 140, 185, 243, 288, 324,  
 357, 382, 425, 451, 469.  
 Hyacinths, &c. 25, 27, 70, 125, 165, 221, 270, 391,  
 449, 464.  
 Hyssop, 57, 107, 339.  
 Horse-raddish, 57.  
 Honey-suckles, 69, 90, 414.  
 Hollihocks, 69, 410.  
 Hepaticas, 69, 409.  
 Herbs for drying, 300, 338.  
 ——— for distilling, 300, 338.  
 Hot-bed, 1, 92, 435.  
 Hazel-nut, 442.  
 Horse-chefnut, 414.  
 Honefty, 445.  
 Hollies, 415.  
 Haws, 422.  
 Hawthorn, 414, 422.  
 Hips, 422.

Hardy-



# I N D E X

Hardy-trees and shrubs, 414, 423, 466.  
Hawkweed, 68.

Inarching, 83, 182, 185, 287.

Jerusalem artichokes, 112.

Juniper, 135, 178.

Insects, 156, 217, 304.

Indian pink, 229.

— figs, 240.

Inoculating. See Budding.

Jonquils, 27, 268, 412, 445.

Jasmines, 317, 414.

Iris, 27, 411.

January, 1.

June, 245.

July, 290.

## K.

Kitchen-garden, page 1, 40, 91, 142, 245, 290, 328, 359, 427.

Kidney beans, 37, 49, 89, 111, 146, 197, 255, 291, 470.

## L.

Lettuces, page 5, 53, 95, 144, 199, 251, 294, 336, 362, 387, 429, 453.

Leeks, 55, 96, 149, 254, 300.

Loveage, 56.

London pride, 69, 409.

Lemons, 137, 283, 318, 323, 381.

Love apples, 110, 198, 229.

Lupines, 68, 231.

Lobels, 68, 231.

Lychnis, 68, 69, 231.

Lavatera, 68, 231.

Lychnidea, 409.

Lavender, 108, 339.

Lavender shrubs, 108, 339.

Layers of Greenhouse shrubs, 287.

Lily, 411.

Laurastine, 417.

Lilacs.

# I N D E X.

Lilacs, 414.  
 Laurels, 424.  
 Larkspur, 68.  
 Laburnums, 414.

## M.

Melons, page 1, 40, 45, 91, 142, 189, 245, 297, 340.  
 Mint, 9, 109, 209, 259, 392.  
 Mushrooms, 14, 49, 353, 457.  
 Marigolds, 56, 107.  
 Marjoram, 57, 107, 339.  
 Myrtles, 85, 138, 184, 285, 319.  
 Monkshood, 69, 409, 411.  
 Mastich, 339.  
 Marvel of Peru, 229, 266.  
 Mignonette, 229.  
 Manure the ground, 434, 450.  
 Mulberry-trees, 444.  
 Medlar-trees, 445.  
 Mustard. See Small Sallading.  
 Martagons, 413.  
 Mallow, 68.  
 May, 189.  
 March, 91.  
 Michaelmas daifies, 410.  
 Magnolias, 415.  
 Maple, 425.

## N.

November, page 427.  
 Nursery, 31, 73, 133, 178, 237, 279, 312, 354, 378, 431,  
 449, 466.  
 Nasturtium, 108, 285.  
 Nectarines, 17, 59, 114, 158, 215, 260, 279, 368.  
 New grafted and budded trees, 159, 180, 221, 239.  
 New planted trees, 66, 219, 263, 447, 461, 464.  
 Narcissus, 27, 412, 445.  
 New plantations, 237, 450.  
 New planted trees, 22.

## O.

Onions, page 55, 96, 149, 202, 254, 292, 296, 329, 338,  
 367, 435.

Oranges,

Oranges, 85, 137, 140, 184, 242, 283, 318, 323, 357,  
381, 425.  
Orach, 107.  
Oriental mallow, 68, 231.  
October, 386.

## P.

Pleasure-garden. See Flower-garden.  
Parsley, page 9, 57, 106, 110.  
——— Hamburg, 56, 202.  
Peas, 13, 56, 105, 153, 207, 257, 386, 427, 455.  
Plums and cherries, 16, 45, 214, 261.  
Peaches, nectarines, and apricots, 17, 59, 114, 158, 215,  
260, 279, 368.  
Pruning various sorts of trees, 22, 59, 159, 397, 424,  
464.  
——— gooseberry-trees, 62, 403, 441, 463.  
——— currant-trees, 62, 403, 462.  
——— raspberry-trees, 63, 407, 442, 462.  
——— peaches, 59, 114, 436.  
——— nectarines, 59, 114, 436.  
——— apricots, 59, 114, 436.  
——— apples, 60, 401, 437, 460.  
——— pears, 60, 401, 437, 460.  
——— plums, 60, 437, 460.  
——— cherries, 60, 401, 439, 460.  
——— vines, 62, 435, 460.  
——— figs, &c. &c. 113.  
——— flowering shrubs, 28, 31, 70, 75.  
——— forest-trees, 31.  
——— standard fruit-trees, 62.  
——— plums, 401.  
Pears, 16, 45, 65, 114, 261.  
Plantations, preparations for, 22, 31, 449, 465.  
Planting fruit-trees, 440.  
——— cuttings of gooseberry and currant-trees, 35, 402.  
——— currants, 441.  
——— gooseberry-trees, 441.  
——— flowering shrubs, 29, 71.  
——— box and thrift, 30.  
Polyanthus, 69, 309, 409.  
Plum stones, &c. 75, 106.  
Purslane, 106, 152.



- Penny-royal, 107.  
 Pinks, 69, 73, 170, 274, 471.  
 Perennial plants, 125, 167, 345, 444.  
 ——— flower plants, 234.  
 Primrose, 69.  
 Pot-herbs, 107, 150, 208, 258, 301.  
 Physical herbs, 107, 150, 301.  
 Pumpkins, 196.  
 Perficarias, 229.  
 Poppy, dwarf, 68, 231.  
 Palma-christi, 266.  
 Pyramidal campanulas, 269.  
 Pomegranates, 281.  
 Perennial, 69.  
 Persian iris, 412.  
 Portugal laurel, 415.  
 Pyracanthas, 415.  
 Phillyreas, 24, 415.  
 Preparing ground for planting and sowing, 355, 370.  
 Propagating flowering-shrubs by cuttings, 34, 73.  
 Propagating by layers, 34, 74, 238, 417, 421.  
 Pines, 36, 87, 135, 140, 178, 185, 253, 325, 357, 382, 451.  
 Potatoes, 57, 111, 153, 433.  
 Paper frames for melons, 246.  
 Parsneps, 54, 99, 150, 201, 253, 433.  
 Pionies, 411.  
 Privets, 414.

Q.

Quince-trees, page 443.

R.

- Radishes, page 6, 53, 98, 145, 210, 330, 395, 428, 454.  
 Ranunculuses, 25, 70, 125, 165, 222, 269, 372, 445, 464.  
 Raspberries, 21, 119.  
 Rosemary, 107.  
 Rue, 107.  
 Rose-campion, 69, 409.

Rockets,

# I X N D E X.

- Rockets, 69, 409.  
 Roses, 129, 280, 316, 413, 419.  
 Rape. See Small Sallading.  
 Strawberries, page 22, 38, 63, 120, 160, 221, 265, 371,  
 406, 442.  
 Seedling flowers, 28, 237, 419, 446.  
 Scorzonera, 56, 110, 152, 202.  
 Salsafy, 56, 110, 152, 202.  
 Savory, 57, 107, 339.  
 Shallots, 110, 297, 338.  
 Standard fruit-trees, 443, 460.  
 Stocks, ten week, 67, 231.  
 ——— double, 27.  
 ——— to bud and graft upon, 423.  
 Sorrel, 107.  
 Smallage, 107.  
 Sage, 301, 339.  
 Southernwood, 107.  
 Skirrets, 83.  
 Sweet-williams, 27, 69, 274, 409.  
 Stock-july-flowers, 229, 234.  
 Scarlet lychnis, 69, 310, 409.  
 Scabiouses, 409, 229.  
 Sunflowers, perennial, 410.  
 ——— dwarf, 68.  
 ——— annual, 231.  
 Snails, 216, 266, 304.  
 September, 359.  
 Shrubbery, 128.  
 Scallions, 110.  
 Saxifrage, 69, 346, 409.  
 Strawberry-tree, 135.  
 Seedling-trees and shrubs, 33, 136, 281.  
 Savoy, 52, 95, 147, 202, 209, 257, 299, 329.  
 Shifting plants into larger pots, 183, 249, 322.  
 Seed-beds, 179.  
 Sweet fultan, 231.  
 Snail-flowers, 231.  
 Sweet-scented peas, 68.  
 Startwort, 69.  
 Sedum, 240.

Stremonium,

# I N D E X

Stremonium, 227.  
 Snow-drop, 224.  
 Spring crocus, 229.  
 Support flowering plants, 276, 312.  
 Succulent plants, 286, 320, 336.  
 Seedling exotics, 288, 450, 467.  
 Succession pine apple plants, 289, 426.  
 Sweet herbs, 150, 338.  
 Spinage, 8, 53, 96, 146, 200, 294, 228, 367, 390, 433.  
 Small fallading, 8, 49, 105, 145, 200, 292, 335, 368,  
 391, 428, 454.  
 Syringas, 414.

Tulips, &c. page 25, 26, 70, 124, 165, 222, 268, 371,  
 445, 449.  
 Thyme, 57, 81, 107.  
 Turf, 72, 130.  
 Thrift, 69, 72, 176, 352.  
 Turneps, 105, 152, 200, 253, 293, 341, 368.  
 Tarragon, 107.  
 Tansey, 107.  
 Tree-primrose, 69, 409.  
 Tube-roses, 169, 233.  
 Tree seeds, 178.  
 Tamatos. See Love-apple.  
 Tricolors, 305.  
 Tangier peas, 68, 231.  
 Tree-amaranthuse, 306.  
 Tobacco plant, 266.  
 Trimming flowering plants, 311, 353, 377.  
 Turnep-rooted raddish, 145, 295.  
 Trench ground, 434, 459, 467.  
 Torch thistle, 320.  
 Transplanting, 180, 355, 449.  
 ——— forest trees, &c. 31, 76.  
 ——— flowering shrubs, 30, 31, 75, 135, 378.  
 ——— cabbages, 10, 52.  
 ——— seedling plants, 271.  
 ——— pines, or firs, 316.  
 ——— celery, 334.

Transplanting



Transplanting perennial flower plants, 127, 168, 303, 352, 374.

\_\_\_\_\_ carnations, 70.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ layers, 74, 417, 422.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ evergreens, 135, 379.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ stocks to bud and graft upon, 76, 380.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ peach-trees, 437.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ nectarine, 437.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ apricots, 437.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ apple, 440.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ pear, 440.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ plum, 440.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ cherry, 444.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ mulberry, 443.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ meddler, 443.

V.

Vines, 20, 119, 136, 156, 219, 263, 303, 341, 369, 435.  
 Violets, 69, 409.  
 Virginia stocks, 231.  
 Venus navel wort, 68, 231.  
 Venus looking-glass, 68, 231.  
 Vineyards, 262.

W.

Wall-flowers, double, &c. page 27, 232, 409.  
 Wormwood, 108.  
 Watering, 141, 179, 183, 281, 317.  
 Winter cherry, 140.  
 Wall-trees, 115, 213, 302, 342.  
 Weeding, 154, 177, 181, 212, 235, 281, 311, 317, 337, 354.  
 Walnut-trees, 442.  
 Wall-fruit, 159, 261.  
 Wasps, 304, 369.

Y.

Yewberries, 422.



